Manual No.'13•PAC-SM-195
updated September 28 , 2018

MITSUBISHI HEAVY INDUSTRIES

SERVICE MANUAL

STANDARD INVERTER PACKAGED AIR-CONDITIONERS

(Split system, air to air heat pump type)

CEILING CASSETTE-4WAY TYPE
FDT71VNPVF1
FDT90VNPVF1

CEILING SUSPENDED TYPE
FDEN71VNPVF1
FDEN90VNPVF1

DUCT CONNECTED-HIGH STATIC PRESSURE TYPE
FDU71VNPVF1
FDU90VNPVF1

DUCT CONNECTED-LOW/MIDDLE STATIC PRESSURE TYPE
FDUM71VNPVF1
FDUM90VNPVF1

FLOOR STANDING TYPE
FDF71VNPVD1
FDF90VNPVD1

WALL MOUNTED TYPE
SRK71VNPZM

MITSUBISHI HEAVY INDUSTRIES THERMAL SYSTEMS, LTD.

CONTENTS

■ How to read the model name

Example: FDT 90 VNP VF1

- VF1 — Series code
- VNP — Applicable power source···See the specification
- 90 — Product capacity
- FDT — Model name
  - FDT : Ceiling cassette-4way type
  - FDEN : Ceiling suspended type
  - FDU : Duct connected-High static pressure type
  - FDUM : Duct connected-Low / Middle static pressure type
  - FDF : Floor standing type
  - SRK : Wall mounted type
  - FDC : Outdoor unit

1. OUTLINE OF OPERATION CONTROL BY MICROCOMPUTER

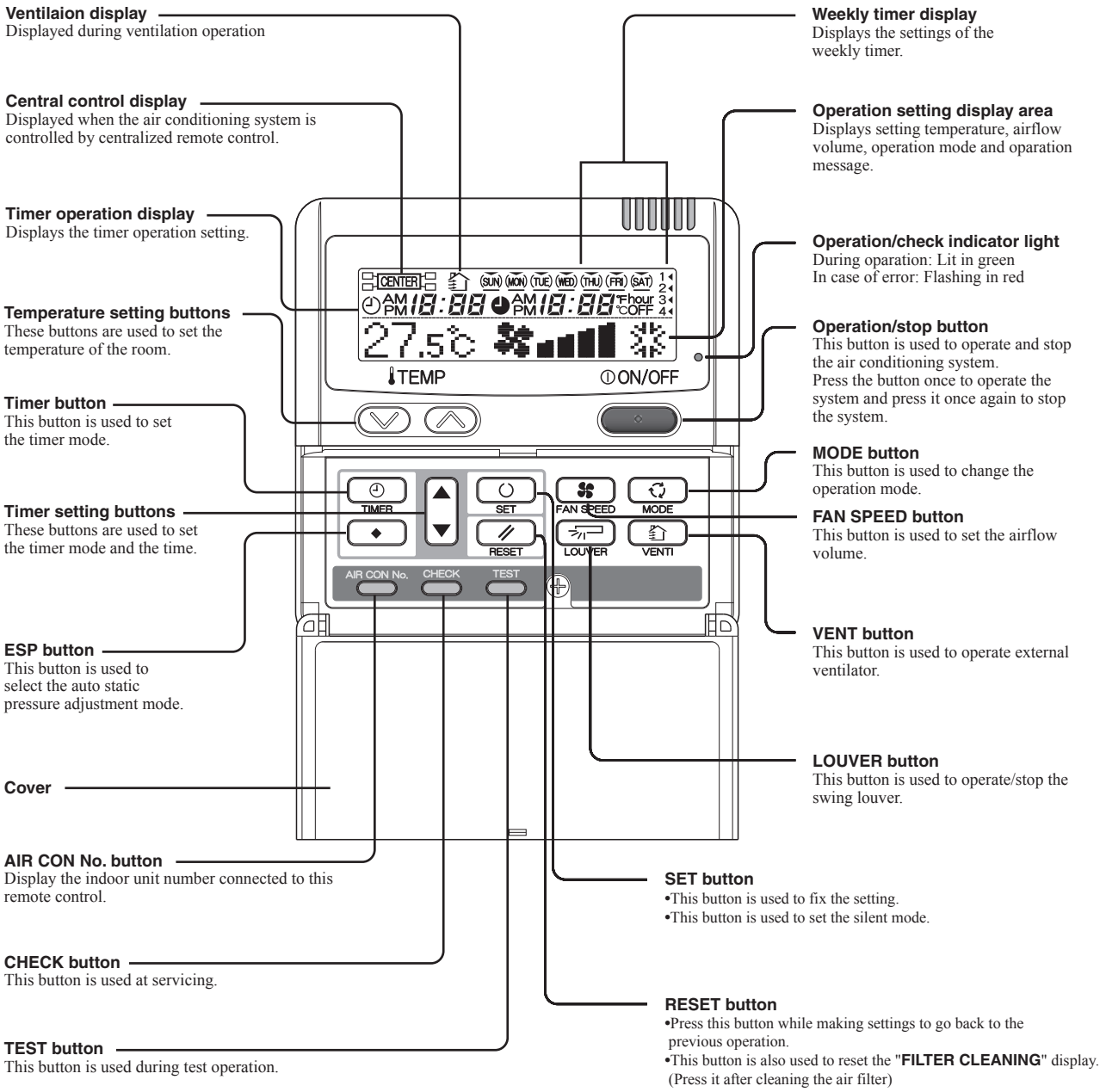
1.1 Remote control

(1) Wired remote control

Model RC-E5

The figure below shows the remote control with the cover opened. Note that all the items that may be displayed in the liquid crystal display area are shown in the figure for the sake of explanation
Characters displayed with dots in the liquid crystal display area are abbreviated.

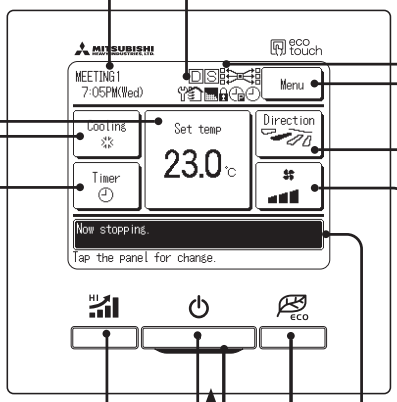
The figure below shows the remote control with the cover opened.



∗ All displays are described in the liguid crystal display for explanation.

Model RC-EX1A

All icons are shown for the sake of explanation.



⑦ **Clock, R/C name display**
Displays the current time and the name of R/C

⑪ **Change set temp button**
Displays the temperature which is set currently.Tap this button to change the set temperature.

⑩ **Change operation mode button**
Displays the operation mode which is selected currently. Tap this button to change the operation mode.

⑭ **Timer button**
Displays simplified contents of the timer which is set currently.
(When two or more timers are set, contents of the timer which will be operated immediately after is displayed.)
Tap this button to set the timer.

② **switch (High Power switch)**
Pushing this button starts the high power operation.

① **switch (Run/Stop switch)**
One push on the button starts operation and another push stops operation.

⑥ **USB port (mini-B)**
USB connector (mini-B) allows connecting to a personal computer.
For operating methods, refer to the instruction manual attached to the software for personal computer (eco-touch remote control RC-EX1, utility software).

⑤ **LCD display (With backlight)**
A tap on the LCD lights the backlight.
The backlight turns off automatically if there is no operation for certain period of time.
Lighting period of the backlight lighting can be changed.
If the backlight is ON setting, when the screen is tapped while the backlight is turned off, the backlight only is turned on.(Operations with switches ①,② and ③ are excluded.)

⑧ **Icon display**
Each icon is displayed when one of following settings is going on.(It is referring to the following figure for details.)

⑨ **Menu button**
When setting or changing other than the following ⑩-⑭, tapthemenubutton.When menu items are displayed, select one and set.

⑫ **Flap direction button**
Displays the flap direction which is selected currently.
Tap this button to change the flap direction.

⑬ **Fan speed change button**
Displays the fan speed which is selected currently.
Tap this button to change the fan speed.

⑮ **Message display**
Status of air conditioner operation and messages of the R/C operations etc.are displayed.

③ **switch (Energy Saving switch)**
Pushing this button starts the energy-saving operation.

④ **Operation lamp**
This lamp lights in green (yellow-green) during operation. It changes to red if any error occurs.

Touch panel system, which is operated by tapping the LCD screen with a finger, is employed for any operations other than the ① Run/Stop, ② High power and ③ Energy-saving switches.

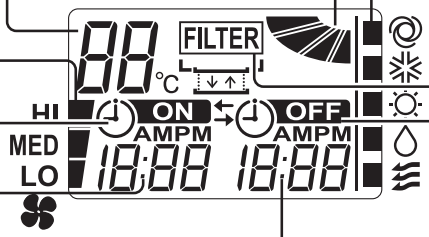
⑧ Icon display
Each icon is displayed when one of following settings is going on.

When the demand control is effective.	When setting is made from the sub R/C.	When the central control (Optional) is running.
When the periodical inspection is necessary.	During the ventilation operation	When ”filter sign” is up.
When the Permission/ Prohibition setting is made.	When the weekly timer is set.	When the peak-cut timer is set

(2) Wireless remote control

(a) RCN-E1R

Indication section



ROOM TEMP display
Indicates set temperature.

FAN SPEED display
Indicates the selected airflow volume

ON-TIMER display
Indicates when ON-TIMER is set.

ON TIMER setting time display
Indicates the ON-TIMER setting time. Nothing displayed when ON-TIMER is not set.

AIR FLOW display
Indicates the status of swing louver.

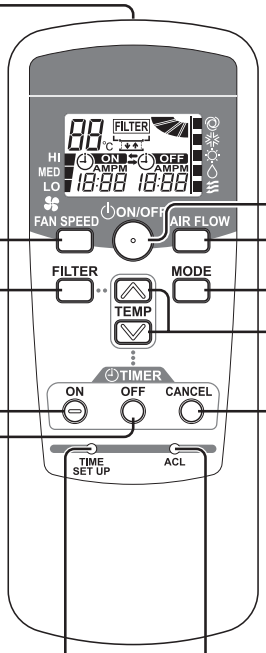
OPERATION MODE display
Indicates selected operation with ■.

FILTER display
Indicates for two seconds when FILTER button is pressed.

OFF-TIMER display
Indicates when OFF-TIMER is set.

OFF-TIMER setting time display
Indicates OFF-TIMER setting time. Indicates the current time when the OFF-TIMER is not set.

Operation section



Transmitter
Sends signal to the air conditioner.

FAN SPEED button
Every time this button is pressed, the mode is switched as below.

→HI→MED→LO

FILTER button
Used to reset (turn off) the filter sign. Press the button only after completing the filter cleaning.

ON TIMER button
Sets ON TIMER operation.

OFF TIMER button
Sets OFF TIMER operation.

TIME SET UP switch
Sets current time.

ON/OFF button
When this is pressed once, the unit starts to operate and when this is pressed once again, it stops operating.

AIR FLOW button
Used to swing the louver.

OPERATION MODE select button
Every time this button is pressed, ■ displays switch as below.

→ (AUTO) → (COOL) → (HEAT) → (DRY) → (FAN) →

ROOM TEMP/TIME SETTING button
Sets room temperature by pressing ∧ or ∨ button. Sets time when setting the time.

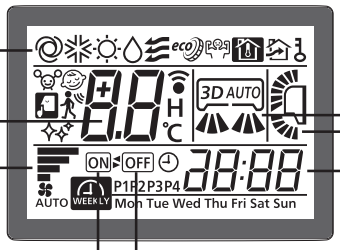
TIMER CANCEL button
Used to cancel the TIMER SETTINGS.

RESET switch
Used to reset the microcomputer.

* All displays are described in the liquid crystal display for explanation

(b) SRK series only

Indication section



OPERATION MODE display
Indicates selected operation with.

ROOM TEMP display
Indicates set temperature.

FAN SPEED display
Indicates the selected airflow volume

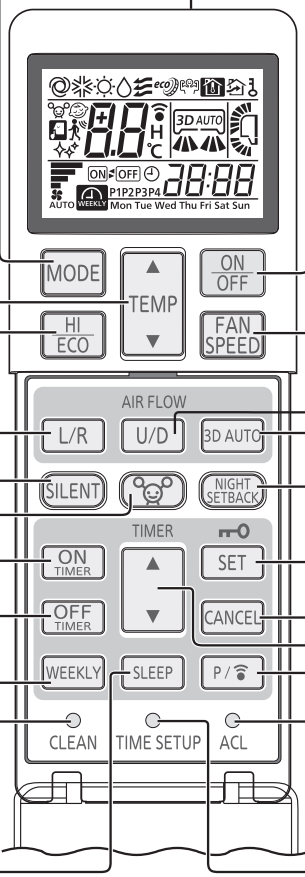
ON-TIMER display
Indicates ON-TIMER is set.

AIR FLOW display
Indicates the status of swing louver.

TIMER setting time display
Indicates TIMER setting time.

OFF-TIMER display
Indicates OFF-TIMER is set.

Operation section



OPERATION MODE select button
Each time the button is pressed, the mode changes.
(AUTO) → (COOL) → (HEAT) → (DRY) → (FAN) →

TEMPERATURE button
This button sets the room temperature.

HI/ECO button
This button changes the HIGH POWER/ ECONOMY operation.

AIR FLOW (LEFT/RIGHT) button
This button changes the air flow (left/ right) direction.

SILENT button
This button changes the SILENT operation.

ALLERGEN CLEAR button
This button selects ALLERGEN CLEAR operation.

ON TIMER button
This button selects ON TIMER operation.

OFF TIMER button
This button selects OFF TIMER operation.

WEEKLY button
This button switches the WEEKLY TIMER to ON/OFF.

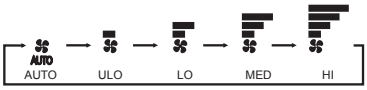
CLEAN switch
This switch selects the CLEAN operation.

SLEEP button
This button selects SLEEP operation.

Transmission section

ON/OFF (luminous) button
Press to start operation, press again to stop.

FAN SPEED button
Each time the button is pressed, the fan speed changes.



AIR FLOW (UP/DOWN) button
This button changes the air flow (up/ down) direction.

3D AUTO button
This button sets 3D AUTO operation.

NIGHT SETBACK button
This button sets NIGHT SETBACK operation.

SET/Child Lock button
Use this button to set the timer and Child Lock.

CANCEL button
This button cancels the ON timer, OFF timer, and SLEEP operation.

TIMER button
This buttions is used for setting the current time and timer function.

PROGRAM button
This button sets WEEKLY TIMER.

ACL switch
Switch for resetting microcomputer.

TIME SET UP switch
This switch is for setting the time.

•The above illustration shows all controls, but in practice only the relevant parts are shown.

1.2 Operation control function by the wired remote control

Model RC-E5

(1) Switching sequence of the operation mode switches of remote control

(2) CPU reset

This functions when "CHECK" and "ESP" buttons on the remote control are pressed simultaneously. Operation is same as that of the power supply reset.

(3) Power failure compensation function (Electric power supply failure)

- This becomes effective if "Power failure compensation effective" is selected with the setting of remote control function.
- Since it memorizes always the condition of remote control, it starts operation according to the contents of memory no sooner than normal state is recovered after the power failure. Although the auto swing stop position and the timer mode are cancelled, the weekly timer setting is restored with the holiday setting for all weekdays.
  After recovering from the power failure, it readjusts the clock and resets the holiday setting for each weekday so that the setting of weekly timer becomes effective.
- Content memorized with the power failure compensation are as follows.

Note (1) Items (f), (g) and (h) are memorized regardless whether the power failure compensation is effective or not while the setting of silent mode is cancelled regardless whether the power failure compensation is effective or not.

(a) At power failure – Operating/stopped
If it had been operating under the off timer mode, sleep timer mode, the state of stop is memorized. (Although the timer mode is cancelled at the recovery from power failure, the setting of weekly timer is changed to the holiday setting for all weekdays.)

(b) Operation mode

(c) Airflow volume mode

(d) Room temperature setting

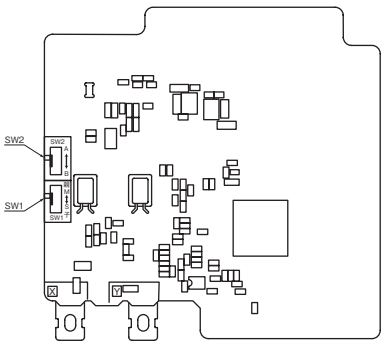
(e) Louver auto swing/stop
However, the stop position (4-position) is cancelled so that it returns to Position (1).

(f) "Remote control function items" which have been set with the remote control function setting ("Indoor function items" are saved in the memory of indoor unit.)

(g) Upper limit value and lower limit value which have been set with the temperature setting control

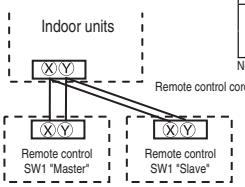
(h) Sleep timer and weekly timer settings (Other timer settings are not memorized.)

[Parts layout on remote control PCB]



Master/ slave setting when more than one remote controls are used

A maximum of two remote controls can be connected to one indoor unit (or one group of indoor units.)



Switch	Setting	Contents
SW1	M	Master remote control
	S	Slave remote control

Note (1) Don't change SW2 because it is not used normally.

Caution

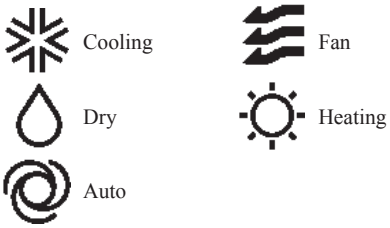
When using multiple remote controls, the following dispiays or settings cannot be done with the slave remote control. It is available only with the master remote control.

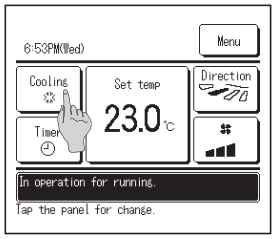
①Louver position setting (set upper or lower limit of swinging range)
②Setting indoor unit functions
③Setting temperature range
④Operation data display
⑤Error data display
⑥Silent mode setting
⑦Test operation of drain pump
⑧Remote control sensor setting

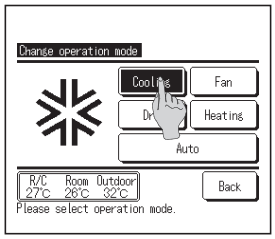
Model RC-EX1A

(1) Switching sequence of the operation mode switches of remote control

(a) Tap the change operation mode button on the TOP screen.
(b) When the change operation mode screen is displayed, tap the button of desired mode.
(c) When the operation mode is selected, the display returns to the TOP screen.
Icons displayed have the following meanings.



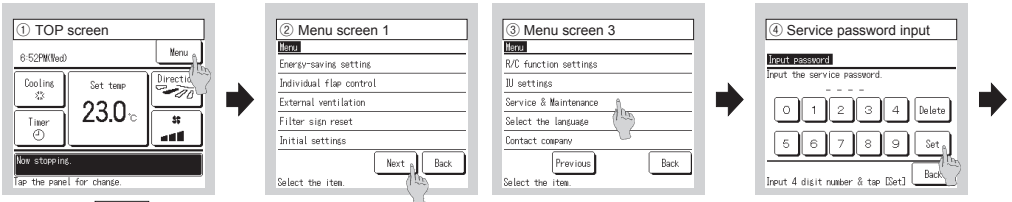




Notes(1) Operation modes which cannot be selected depending on combinations of IU and OU are not displayed.
(2) When the Auto is selected, the cooling and heating switching operation is performed automatically according to indoor and outdoor temperatures.

(2) CPU reset

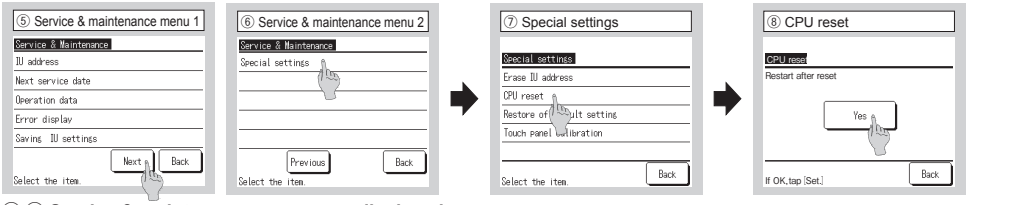
Reset CPU from the remote control as follows.



①Tap the Menu button on the TOP screen.

②,③ Main menu screen is displayed.
Tap the "Service & Maintenance" on the menu screen.

④Display the service password input screen.
Enter the service password (4-digit number).



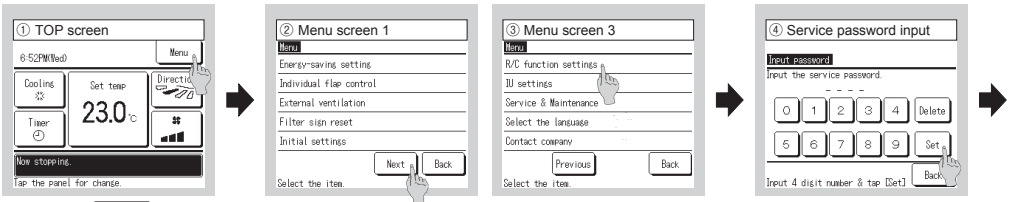
⑤,⑥ Service & maintenance menus are displayed.

⑦ Special settings
CPU reset : Microcomputers of IU and OU connected are reset (State of restoration after power failure).

⑧ CPU reset
All microcomputers on the R/C operated, other R/Cs, IUs and OUs are reset (State of restoration after power failure).
Tap [Yes] to reset CPU

(3) Power failure compensation function (Electric power supply failure)

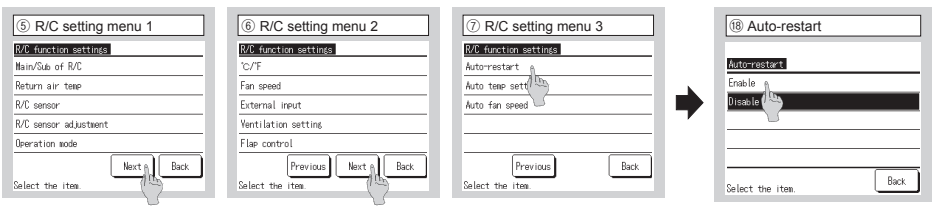
Enable the Auto-restart function from the remote control as follows.



①Tap the Menu button on the TOP screen.

②,③ Main menu screen is displayed.
Tap the "Service & Maintenance" on the menu screen.

④Display the service password input screen.
Enter the service password (4-digit number).



⑤,⑥,⑦ Display the R/C setting menu screens.

Enable : It returns to the state be fore the supply power failure as soon as the power is restored (After the end of the primary control at the power on).
Disable : It stops after the restoration of power supply, regardless the state of operation before the power failure.

⑱ Auto-restart
Set the state of operation to be started when the power supply is restored after a power failure.

- Since it memorizes always the condition of remote control, it starts operation according to the contents of memory no sooner than normal state is recovered after the power failure. Although the auto swing stop position and the timer mode are cancelled, the weekly timer setting is restored with the holiday setting for all weekdays.
  After recovering from the power failure, it readjusts the clock and resets the holiday setting for each weekday so that the setting of weekly timer becomes effective.
- Content memorized with the power failure compensation are as follows.

  Note (1) Items (f), (g) and (h) are memorized regardless whether the power failure compensation is effective or not while the setting of silent mode is cancelled regardless whether the power failure compensation is effective or not.

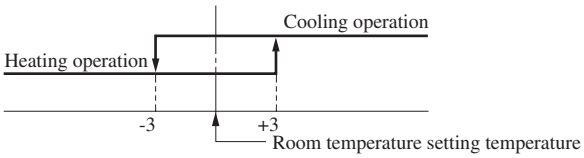
  (a) At power failure – Operating/stopped
  If it had been operating under the off timer mode, sleep timer mode, the state of stop is memorized. (Although the timer mode is cancelled at the recovery from power failure, the setting of weekly timer is changed to the holiday setting for all weekdays.)
  (b) Operation mode
  (c) Airflow volume mode
  (d) Room temperature setting
  (e) Louver auto swing/stop
  However, the stop position (4-position) is cancelled so that it returns to Position (1).
  (f) "Remote control function items" which have been set with the remote control function setting ("Indoor function items" are saved in the memory of indoor unit.)
  (g) Upper limit value and lower limit value which have been set with the temperature setting control
  (h) Sleep timer and weekly timer settings (Other timer settings are not memorized.)

1.3 Operation control function by the indoor control

1.3.1 FDT, FDEN, FDU, FDUM, FDF series

(1) Auto operation

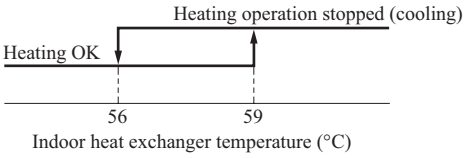
(a) If “Auto” mode is selected by the remote control, the heating and the cooling are automatically switched according to the difference between outdoor air temperature and setting temperature and the difference between setting temperature and return air temperature. (When the switching of cooling mode ↔ heating mode takes place within 3 minutes, the compressor does not operate for 3 minutes by the control of 3-minute timer.) This will facilitate the cooling/heating switching operation in intermediate seasons and the adaptation to unmanned operation at stores, etc (ATM corner of bank).



Notes (1) Temperature range of switching cooling/heating mode can be changed by RC-EX1A from ±1.0 ～ ±4.0.

(2) Room temperature control during auto cooling/auto heating is performed according to the room temperature setting temperature. (DIFF: ±1 deg)

(3) If the indoor heat exchanger temperature rises to 59°C or higher during heating operation, it is switched automatically to cooling operation. In addition, for 1 hour after this switching, the heating operation is not performed, regardless of the temperature shown at right.



(b) The following automatic controls are performed other than (a) above. (FDT, FDU, FDUM series only)

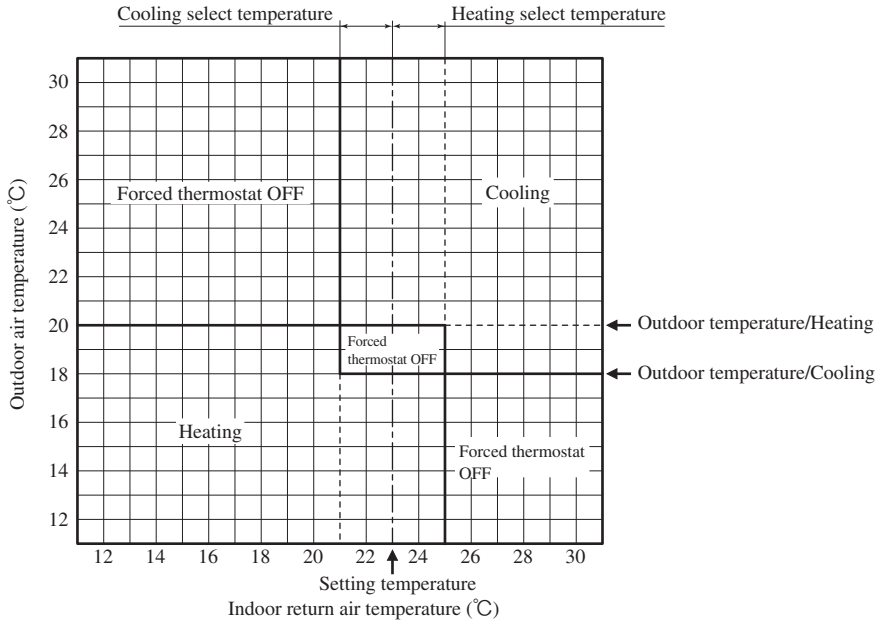
(i) Cooling or heating operation mode is judged according to the conditions of the "Judgment based on Setting temperature + Cooling select temperature and Indoor return air temperature" and the "Judgment based on Outdoor temperature".

1) In "Setting temperature - Cooling select temperature < Indoor return air temperature" and "Outdoor temperature/Cooling < Outdoor return air temperature" ⇒ Operation mode: Cooling

2) "Setting temperature + Heating select temperature > Indoor return air temperature" and "Outdoor temperature/Heating > Outdoor air temperature" ⇒ Operation mode: Heating

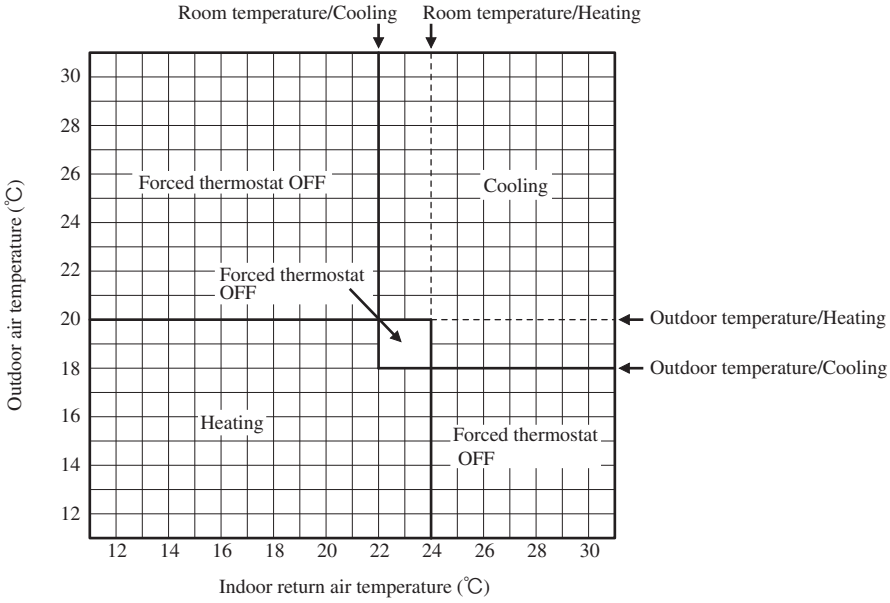
3) The outdoor air temperature of the above judgment conditions is sampled at every 10 minutes.

4) In the range where the above cooling and heating zones are overlapped ⇒ Forced thermostat OFF



(ii) Regardless of the setting temperature, the cooling or heating operation mode is judged according to the "Judgment based on Room temperature/Cooling or Heating and Outdoor temperature/Cooling or Heating".

1) In case of "Room temperature/Cooling < Indoor return air temperature" and "Outdoor temperature/Cooling < Outdoor air temperature" ⇒ Operation mode: Cooling
2) In case of "Room temperature/Heating > Indoor return air temperature" and "Outdoor temperature /Heating > Outdoor air temperature" ⇒ Operation mode: Heating
3) The outdoor air temperature of the above judgment conditions is sampled at every 10 minutes.
4) In the range where the above cooling and heating zones are overlapped ⇒ Forced thermostat OFF



(2) Operations of functional items during cooling/heating

Operation / Functional item	Cooling		Fan	Heating			Dehumidify
	Thermostat ON	Thermostat OFF		Thermostat ON	Thermostat OFF	Hot start (Defrost)	
Compressor	○	×	×	○	×	○	○/×
4-way valve	×	×	×	○	○	○(×)	×
Outdoor unit fan	○	×	×	○	×	○(×)	○/×
Indoor unit fan	○	○	○	○/×	○/×	○/×	○/×
Drain pump (3)	○	×(2)	×(2)	○/×(2)			Thermostat ON: ○ Thermostat OFF: ×(2)

Note (1) ○: Operation ×: Stop ○/×: Turned ON/OFF by the control other than the room temperature control.
(2) ON during the drain motor delay control.
(3) Drain pump ON setting may be selected with the indoor unit function setting of the wired remote control.

(3) Dehumidifying operation

Return air temperature thermistor [ThI-A (by the remote control when the remote control thermistor is enabled)] controls the indoor temperature environment simultaneously.

(a) Operation is started in the cooling mode. When the difference between the return air temperature and the setting temperature is 2°C or less, the indoor unit fan tap is brought down by one tap. That tap is retained for 3 minutes after changing the indoor unit fan tap.

(b) If the return air temperature exceeds the setting temperature by 3°C during dehumidifying operation, the indoor unit fan tap is raised. That tap is retained for 3 minutes after changing the indoor unit fan tap.

(c) If the thermostat OFF is established during the above control, the indoor unit fan tap at the thermostat ON is retained so far as the thermostat is turned OFF.

(4) Timer operation

(a) RC-E5

(i) Sleep timer

Set the duration of time from the present to the time to turn off the air-conditioner.

It can be selected from 10 steps in the range from "OFF 1 hour later" to "OFF 10 hours later". After the sleep timer setting, the remaining time is displayed with progress of time in the unit of hour.

(ii) OFF timer

Time to turn OFF the air-conditioner can be set in the unit of 10 minutes.

(iii) ON timer

Time to turn ON the air-conditioner can be set. Indoor temperature can be set simultaneously.

(iv) Weekly timer

Timer operation (ON timer, OFF timer) can be set up to 4 times a day for each weekday.

(v) Timer operations which can be set in combination

Item / Item	Timer	OFF timer	ON timer	Weekly timer
Timer		×	○	×
OFF timer	×		○	×
ON timer	○	○		×
Weekly timer	×	×	×	

Note (1) ○: Allowed ×: Not

(2) Since the ON timer, sleep timer and OFF timer are set in parallel, when the times to turn ON and OFF the airconditioner are duplicated, the setting of the OFF timer has priority.

(b) RC-EX1A

(i) Sleep timer

Set the time from the start to stop of operation. The time can be selected in the range from 30 to 240 minutes (in the unit of 10-minute).

Note (1) Enable the "Sleep timer" setting from the remote control. If the setting is enabled, the timer operates at every time.

(ii) Set OFF timer by hour

Set the time to stop the unit after operation, in the range from 1 to 12 hours (in the unit of hour).

(iii) Set ON timer by hour

Set the time to start the unit after the stop of operation, in the range from 1 to 12 hours (in the unit of hour). It is allowed also to set simultaneously the indoor temperature, operation mode, air flow rate and warm-up enabled/disabled.

(iv) Set ON timer by clock

Set the time to start operation. The time can be set in the unit of 5-minute. This setting can be activated only once or at every time. It is allowed also to set simultaneously the indoor temperature, operation mode, air flow rate and warm-up enabled/disabled.

Note (1) It is necessary to set the clock to use this timer.

(v) Set OFF timer by clock

Set the time to stop operation. The time can be set in the unit of 5-minute. This setting can be activated only once or at every time.

Note (1) It is necessary to set the clock to use this timer.

(vi) Weekly timer

Set the ON or OFF timer for a week. Up to 8 patterns can be set for a day. The day-off setting is provided for holidays and non-business days.

Note (1) It is necessary to set the clock to use the weekly timer.

(vii) **Combination of patterns which can be set for the timer operations**

	Sleep time	Set OFF timer by hour	Set ON timer by hour	Set OFF timer by clock	Set ON timer by clock	Weekly timer
Sleep time		×	×	○	○	○
Set OFF timer by hour	×		×	×	×	×
Set ON timer by hour	×	×		×	×	×
Set OFF timer by clock	○	×	×		○	×
Set ON timer by clock	○	×	×	○		×
Weekly timer	○	×	×	×	×	

Note (1) ○: Allowed ×: Not

(5) Remote control display during the operation stop

When the operation is stopped (the power supply is turned ON), it displays preferentially the "Room temperature", "Center/ Remote", "Filter sign", "Inspection" and "Timer operation".

(6) Hot start (Cold draft prevention at heating)

(a) Operating conditions

When either one of following conditions is met, the hot start control is performed.

(i) From stop to heating operation
(ii) From cooling to heating operation
(iii) Form heating thermostat OFF to ON
(iv) After completing the defrost control (only on units with thermostat ON)

(b) Contents of operation

(i) Indoor fan motor control at hot start

1) Within 7 minutes after starting heating operation, the fan mode is determined depending on the condition of thermostat (fan control with heating thermostat OFF).

a) Thermostat OFF
i) Operates according to the fan control setting at heating thermostat OFF.
ii) Even if it changes from thermostat OFF to ON, the fan continues to operate with the fan control at thermostat OFF till the heat exchanger thermistor (ThI-R1 or R2, whichever higher) detects 35°C or higher.
iii) When the heat exchanger thermistor (ThI-R1 or R2, whichever higher) detects 35°C or higher, the fan operates with the set airflow volume.

b) Thermostat ON
i) When the heat exchanger thermistor (ThI-R1 or R2, whichever higher) detects 25°C or lower, the fan is turned OFF and does not operate.
ii) When the heat exchanger thermistor (ThI-R1 or R2, whichever higher) detects 25°C or higher, the fan operates with the fan control at heating thermostat OFF.
iii) When the heat exchanger thermistor (ThI-R1 or R2, whichever higher) detects 35°C or higher, the fan operates with the set airflow volume.

c) If the fan control at heating thermostat OFF is set at the "Set airflow volume" (from the remote control), the fan operates with the set airflow volume regardless of the thermostat ON/OFF.

2) Once the fan motor is changed from OFF to ON during the thermostat ON, the indoor fan motor is not turned OFF even if the heat exchanger thermistor detects lower than 25°C.

Note (1) When the defrost control signal is received, it complies with the fan control during defrosting.

3) Once the hot start is completed, it will not restart even if the temperature on the heat exchanger thermistor drops.

(ii) During the hot start, the louver is kept at the horizontal position.

(iii) When the fan motor is turned OFF for 7 minutes continuously after defrosting, the fan motor is turned ON regardless of the temperatures detected with the indoor heat exchanger thermistors (ThI-R1, R2).

(c) Ending condition

(i) If one of following conditions is met during the hot start control, this control is terminated, and the fan is operated with the set airflow volume.

1) Heat exchanger thermistor (ThI-R1 or R2, whichever higher) detects 35°C or higher.
2) It has elapsed 7 minutes after starting the hot start control.

(7) Hot keep

Hot keep control is performed at the start of the defrost control.

(a) Control

(i) When the indoor heat exchanger temperature (detected with ThI-R1 or R2) drops to 35°C or lower, the speed of indoor fan is changed to the lower tap at each setting.
(ii) During the hot keep, the louver is kept at the horizontal position.

(b) Ending condition

When the indoor fan is at the lower tap at each setting, it returns to the set airflow volume as the indoor heat exchanger temperature rises to 45°C or higher.

(8) Auto swing control (FDTC, FDT and FDEN only)

(a) RC-E5

(i) Louver control

1) Press the "LOUVER" button to operate the swing louver when the air conditioner is operating.
"SWING" is displayed for 3 seconds and then the swing louver moves up and down continuously.

2) To fix the swing louver at a position, press one time the "LOUVER" button while the swing louver is moving so that four stop positions are displayed one after another per second.
When a desired stop position is displayed, press the "LOUVER" button again. The display stops, changes to show the "STOP 1" for 5 seconds and then the swing louver stops.

3) Louver operation at the power on with a unit having the louver 4-position control function
The louver swings one time automatically (without operating the remote control) at the power on.
This allows inputting the louver motor (LM) position, which is necessary for the microcomputer to recognize the louver position.

Note (1) If you press the "LOUVER" button, the swing motion is displayed on the louver position LCD for 10 second. The display changes to the "SWING" display 3 seconds later.

(ii) Automatic louver level setting during heating
At the hot start with the heating thermostat OFF, regardless whether the auto swing switch is operated or not (auto swing or louver stop), the louver takes the level position (In order to prevent the cold start). The louver position display LCD continues to show the display which has been shown before entering this control.

(iii) Louver-free stop control
When the louver-free stop has been selected with the indoor function of wired remote control "POSITION", the louver motor stops when it receives the stop signal from the remote control. If the auto swing signal is received from the remote control, the auto swing will start from the position where it was before the stop.

Note (1) When the indoor function of wired remote control "POSITION" has been switched, switch also the remote control function "POSITION" in the same way.

(b) RC-EX1A

(i) Louver control

1) To operate the swing louver when the air conditioner is operating, press the "Direction" button on the TOP screen of remote control. The wind direction select screen will be displayed.

2) To swing the louver, touch the "Auto swing" button. The lover will move up and down. To fix the swing louver at a position, touch one of [1] - [4] buttons. The swing lover will stop at the selected position.

3) Louver operation at the power on with a unit having the louver 4-position control function
The louver swings one time automatically (without operating the remote control) at the power on.
This allows the microcomputer recognizing and inputting the louver motor (LM) position.

(ii) Automatic louver level setting during heating
At the hot start and the heating thermostat OFF, regardless whether the auto swing switch is operated or not (auto swing or louver stop), the louver takes the level position (in order to prevent blowing of cool wind). The louver position display LCD continues to show the display which has been shown before entering this control.

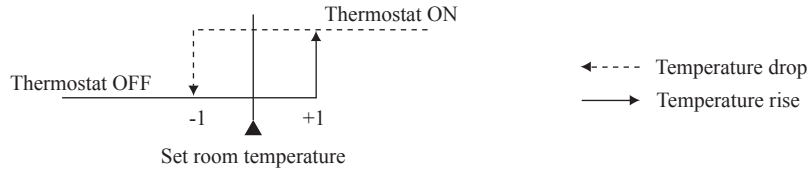
(iii) Louver free stop control
If you touch the "Menu" → "Next" → "R/C settings" buttons one after another on the TOP screen of remote control, the "Flap control" screen is displayed. If the free stop is selected on this screen, the louver motor stops upon receipt of the stop signal from the remote control. If the auto swing signal is received from the remote control, the auto swing will start from the position before the stop.

(9) Thermostat operation

(a) Cooling

(i) Thermostat is operated with the room temperature control.

(ii) Thermostat is turned ON or OFF relative to the set room temperature as shown below.

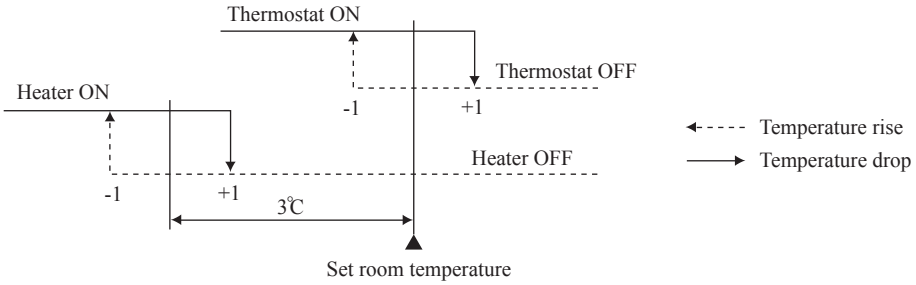


(iii) Thermostat is turned ON when the room temperature is in the range of -1 < Set temperature < +1 at the start of cooling operation (including from heating to cooling).

(b) Heating

(i) Thermostat is operated with the room temperature control.

(ii) Thermostat is turned ON or OFF relative to the set room temperature as shown below.



(iii) Thermostat is turned ON when the room temperature is in the range of -1 < Set point < +1 at the start of cooling operation (including from cooling to heating).

(c) Fan control during heating thermostat OFF

(i) Following fan controls during the heating thermostat OFF can be selected with the indoor function setting of the wired remote control.

① Low fan speed (Factory default), ② Set fan speed, ③ Intermittence, ④ Fan OFF

(ii) When the "Low fan speed (Factory default)" is selected, the following taps are used for the indoor fans.

- For AC motor : Lo tap
- For DC motor : ULo tap

(iii) When the "Set fan speed" is selected, it is operated with the set fan speed also in the thermostat OFF condition.

(iv) If the "Intermittence" is selected, following controls are performed:

1) If the thermostat is turned OFF during the heating operation, the indoor unit moves to the hot control and turns OFF the indoor fan if the heat exchanger thermistors (both ThI-R1 and R2) detect 25°C or lower.
2) Indoor fan OFF is fixed for 5 minutes. After the 5 minutes, the indoor fan is operated at Lo or ULo for 2 minutes. In the meantime the louver is controlled at level.
3) After operating at Lo or ULo for 2 minutes, the indoor fan moves to the state of 1) above.
4) If the thermostat is turned ON, it moves to the hot start control.
5) When the heating thermostat is turned OFF, the remote control displays the temperature detected at the fan stop and revises the temperature later when the indoor fan changes from Lo or ULo to stop.
   The remote control uses the operation data display function to display temperatures and updates values of temperature even when the indoor fan is turned OFF.
6) When the defrosting starts while the heating thermostat is turned OFF or the thermostat is turned OFF during defrosting, the indoor fan is turned OFF. (Hot keep or hot start control takes priority.) However, the suction temperature is updated at every 7-minute.
7) When the heating thermostat is turned ON or the operation is changed to another mode (including stop), this control is stopped immediately, and the operating condition is restored.

(v) When the "Fan OFF" is selected, the fan on the indoor unit of which the thermostat has been turned OFF, is turned OFF. The same occurs also when the remote control sensor is effective.

(d) Fan control during cooling thermostat OFF (FDT, FDU, FDUM series only)

(i) Following fan controls during the cooling thermostat OFF can be selected with the indoor function setting of the wired remote control.

① Low fan speed, ② Set fan speed (Factory default), ③ Intermittence, ④ Fan OFF

(ii) When the "Low fan speed" is selected, the following taps are used for the indoor fans.

・ For DC motor : ULo tap

(iii) When the "Set fan speed" is selected, it is operated with the set fan speed also in the thermostat OFF condition.

(iv) If the "Intermittence" is selected, following controls are performed:

1) If the thermostat is turned OFF during the cooling operation, the indoor unit fan motor stope.

2) Indoor fan OFF is fixed for 5 minutes. After the 5 minutes, the indoor fan is operated at ULo for 2 minutes. In the meantime the louver is controlled at level.

3) After operating at ULo for 2 minutes, the indoor fan moves to the state of 1) above.

4) If the thermostat is turned ON, the fan starts operation at set fan speed.

5) When the cooling thermostat is turned OFF, the remote control displays the temperature detected at the fan stop and revises the temperature later when the indoor fan changes from ULo to stop.

By using operation data display function at wireless remote control, the tempenature as displayad and the value is updated including the fan stops.

6) When the cooling thermostat is turned ON or the operation is changed to another mode (including stop), this control is stopped immediately, and the operating condition is restored.

(v) When the "Fan OFF" is selected, the fan on the indoor unit of which the thermostat has been turned OFF, is turned OFF. The same occurs also when the remote control sensor is effective.

(10) Filter sign

As the operation time (Total ON time of ON/OFF switch) accumulates to 180 hours (1), "FILTER CLEANING" is displayed on the remote control. (This is displayed when the unit is in trouble and under the centralized control, regardless of ON/OFF)

Note (1) Time setting for the filter sign can be made as shown below using the indoor function of wired remote control "FILTER SIGN SET". (It is set at TYPE 1 at the shipping from factory.)

Filter sign setting	Function
TYPE 1	Setting time: 180 hrs (Factory default)
TYPE 2	Setting time: 600 hrs
TYPE 3	Setting time: 1,000 hrs
TYPE 4	Setting time: 1,000 hrs (Unit stop) (2)

(2) After the setting time has elapsed, the "FILTER CLEANING" is displayed and, after operating for 24 hours further (counted also during the stop), the unit stops.

(11) Compressor inching prevention control

(a) 3-minute timer

When the compressor has been stopped by the thermostat, remote control operation switch or anomalous condition, its restart will be inhibited for 3 minutes. However, the 3-minute timer is invalidated at the power on the electric power source for the unit.

(b) 3-minute forced operation timer

(i) Compressor will not stop for 3 minutes after the compressor ON. However, it stops immediately when the unit is stopped by means of the ON/OFF switch or by when the thermister turned OFF the change of operation mode.

(ii) If the thermostat is turned OFF during the forced operation control of heating compressor, the louver position (with the auto swing) is returned to the level position.

Note (1) The compressor stops when it has entered the protective control.

(12) Drain pump control

(a) This control is operated when the inverter frequency is other than 0 Hz during the cooling operation and automatic cooling and dehumidifying operations.

(b) Drain pump ON condition continues for 5 minutes even when it enters the OFF range according to (i) above after turning the drain pump ON, and then stops. The 5-minute delay continues also in the event of anomalous stop.

(c) The drain pump is operated with the 5-minute delay operation when the compressor is changed from ON to OFF.

(d) Even in conditions other than the above (such as heating, fan, stop, cooling thermostat OFF), the drain pump control is performed by the drain detection.

(e) Following settings can be made using the indoor function setting of the wired remote control.

(i) ❄ 〔Standard (in cooling & dry)〕: Drain pump is run during cooling and dry.

(ii) ❄ AND ☀ 〔Operate in standard & heating〕: Drain pump is run during cooling, dry and heating.

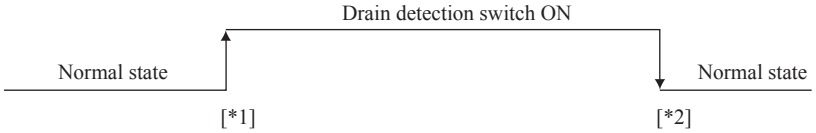
(iii) ❄ AND ☀ AND ≡ 〔Operate in heating & fan〕: Drain pump is run during cooling, dry, heating and fan.

(iv) ❄ AND ≡ 〔Operate in standard & fan〕: Drain pump is run during cooling, dry and fan.

Note (1) Values in 〔 〕 are for the RC-EX1A model.

(13) Drain motor (DM) control

(a) Drain detection switch is turned ON or OFF with the float switch (FS) and the timer.



[∗1] Drain detection switch is turned "ON" when the float switch "Open" is detected for 3 seconds continuously in the drain detectable space.

[∗2] Drain detection switch is turned "OFF" when the float switch "Close" is detected for 10 seconds continuously.

(i) It detects always from 30 seconds after turning the power ON.

1) There is no detection of anomalous draining for 10 seconds after turning the drain pump OFF.

2) Turning the drain detection switch "ON" causes to turn ON the drain pump forcibly.

3) Turning the drain detection switch "OFF" releases the forced drain pump ON condition.

(b) Indoor unit performs the control A or B depending on each operating condition.

	Indoor unit operation mode				
	Stop (1)	Cooling	Dry	Fan (2)	Heating
Compressor ON		Control A			
Compressor OFF	Control B				

Note (1) Including the stop from the cooling, dehumidifying, fan and heating, and the anomalous stop
(2) Including the "Fan" operation according to the mismatch of operation modes

(i) Control A

1) If the float switch detects any anomalous draining condition, the unit stops with the anomalous stop (displays E9) and the drain pump starts. After detecting the anomalous condition, the drain motor continues to be ON.

2) It keeps operating while the float switch is detecting the anomalous condition.

(ii) Control B

If the float switch detects any anomalous drain condition, the drain motor is turned ON for 5 minutes, and at 10 seconds after the drain motor OFF it checks the float switch. If it is normal, the unit is stopped under the normal mode or, if there is any anomalous condition, E9 is displayed and the drain motor is turned ON. (The ON condition is maintained during the drain detection.)

(14) Operation check/drain pump test run operation mode

(a) If the power is turned on by the dip switch (SW7-1) on the indoor PCB when electric power source is supplied, it enters the mode of operation check/drain pump test run. It is ineffective (prohibited) to change the switch after turning power on.

(b) When the communication with the remote control has been established within 60 seconds after turning power on by the dip switch (SW7-1) ON, it enters the operation check mode. Unless the remote control communication is established, it enters the drain pump test run mode.

Note (1) To select the drain pump test run mode, disconnect the remote control connector (CNB) on the indoor PCB to shut down the remote control communication.

(c) Operation check mode

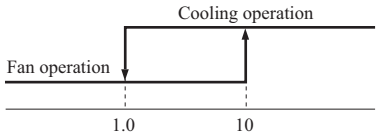
There is no communication with the outdoor unit but it allows performing operation in respective modes by operating the remote control.

(d) Drain pump test run mode

As the drain pump test run is established, the drain pump only operates and during the operation protective functions by the microcomputer of indoor unit become ineffective.

(15) Cooling, dehumidifying frost protection

(a) To prevent frosting during cooling mode or dehumidifying mode operation, the of compressor speed is reduced if the indoor heat exchanger temperature (detected with ThI-R) drops to 1.0 °C or lower at 4 minutes after the start of compressor operation. If the indoor unit heat exchanger temperature is 1.0 °C or lower after 1 minutes, the compressor speed is reduced further. If it becomes 2.5 °C or higher, the control terminates. When the indoor heat exchanger temperature has become as show below after reducing the compressor speed, it is switched to the fan operation. For the selection of indoor fan speed, refer to item 2).



(b) Selection of indoor fan speed

If it enters the frost prevention control during cooling operation (excluding dehumidifying), the indoor unit fan speed is switched.

(i) In cases of FDEN

1) When the indoor unit return air temperature (detected with ThI-A) is 23°C or lower, this control is invalidated and, as 2 hours elapse after starting the frost prevention control, it is terminated.
2) If it is detected again within 15 minutes from the start of frost prevention control, the indoor fan speed is raised by 1 tap to increase the indoor unit fan speed. If it is detected within further 15 minutes, the indoor unit fan speed is raised by 1 tap more.
Note (1) Indoor unit fan speed can be increased by up to 2 taps.
3) "FAN SPEED SW VALID/INVALID"of this control is selectable with the function setting of remote control.

(ii) In the case of FDT, FDU, FDUM, FDF

1) When the indoor return air detection temperature (detected with ThI-A) is 23°C or higher and the indoor heat exchanger temperature (detected with ThI-R) detects the compressor frequency drop start temperature A°C+1°C, of indoor unit fan speed is increased by 20rpm.
2) If the phenomenon of 1) above is detected again after the acceleration of indoor unit fan, indoor unit fan speed is increased further by 20rpm.
Note (1) Indoor unit fan speed can be increased by up to 2 taps.

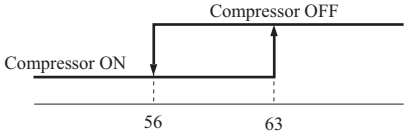
• Compressor frequency drop start temperature

Item \ Symbol	A
Temperature - Low (Factory default)	1.0
Temperature - High	2.5

Note (1) Frost prevention temperature setting can be selected with the indoor unit function setting of the wired remote control.

(16) Heating overload protection

(a) If the indoor heat exchanger temperature (detected with ThI-R) at 63°C or higher is detected for 2 seconds continuously, the compressor stops. When the compressor is restarted after a 3-minute delay, if a temperature at 63°C or higher is detected for 2 seconds continuously within 60 minutes after initial detection and if this is detected 5 times consecutively, the compressor stops with the anomalous stop (E8). Anomalous stop occurs also when the indoor heat exchanger temperature at 63°C or higher is detected for 6 minutes continuously.



(b) Indoor unit fan speed selection

If, after second detection of heating overload protection up to fourth, the indoor fan is set at Me and Lo taps when the compressor is turned ON, the indoor fan speed is increased by 1 tap.

(17) Anomalous fan motor

(a) After starting the fan motor, if the fan motor speed is 200min^{-1} or less is detected for 30 seconds continuously and 4 times within 60 minutes, then fan motor stops with the anomalous stop (E16).

(b) If the fan motor fails to reach at -50(FDU: -500) min^{-1} less than the required speed, it stops with the anomalous stop (E20).

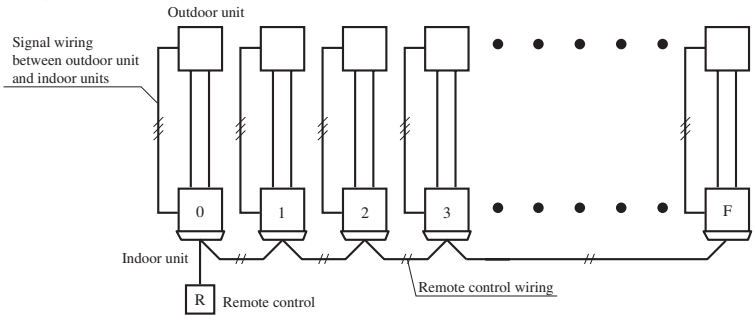
(18) Plural unit control – Control of 16 units group by one remote control

(a) Function

One remote control switch can control a group of multiple number of unit (Max. 16 indoor units). "Operation mode" which is set by the remote control switch can operate or stop all units in the group one after another in the order of unit No.(1). Thermostat and protective function of each unit function independently.

Notes (1) Unit No. is set by SW2 on the indoor unit control PCB. Unit No. setting by SW2 is necessary for the indoor unit only.

SW2: For setting of 0 – 9, A – F



(2) Unit No. may be set at random unless duplicated, it should be better to set orderly like 0, 1, 2…, F to avoid mistake.

(b) Display to the remote control

(i) Center or each remote control basis, heating preparation: the youngest unit No. among the operating units in the remote mode (or the center mode unless the remote mode is available) is displayed.

(ii) Inspection display, filter sign: Any of unit that starts initially is displayed.

(iii) Confirmation of connected units

1) In case of RC-E5 remote control

Pressing "AIR CON No." button on the remote control displays the indoor unit address. If "▲" "▼" button is pressed at the next, it is displayed orderly starting from the unit of youngest No.

2) In case of RC-EX1A remote control

If you touch the buttons in the order of "Menu" → "Next" → "Service & Maintenance" → "IU address" on the TOP screen of remote control, the indoor units which are connected are displayed.

(iv) In case of anomaly

1) If any anomaly occurs on a unit in a group (a protective function operates), that unit stops with the anomalous stop but any other normal units continue to run as they are.

2) Signal wiring procedure

Signal wiring between indoor and outdoor units should be made on each unit same as the normal wiring. For the group control, lay connect with sires wiring between rooms using terminal blocks (X, Y) of remote control.

Connect the remote control communication wire separately from the power supply wire or wires of other electric devices (AC220V or higher).

(19) High ceiling control

When sufficient air flow rate cannot be obtained from the indoor unit which is installed at a room with high ceiling, the air flow rate can be increased by changing the fan tap. To change the fan tap, use the indoor unit function "FAN SPEED SET" on the wired remote control.

Fan tap		Indoor unit airflow setting			
		▮▮▮ - ▮▮ - ▮ - ▯	▮▮▮ - ▮▮ - ▮	▮▮▮ - ▮	▮▮▮ - ▮▮
FAN SPEED SET	STANDARD	PHi - Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Lo	Hi - Me
	HIGH SPEED1, 2	PHi - PHi - Hi - Me	PHi - Hi - Me	PHi - Me	PHi - Hi

Notes (1) Factory default is STANDARD.

(2) At the hot-start and heating thermostat OFF, or other, the indoor unit fan is operated at the low speed tap of each setting.

(3) This function is not able to be set with wireless remote controls or simple remote control (RCH-E3)

(20) Abnormal temperature thermistor (return air/indoor heat exchanger) wire/short-circuit detection

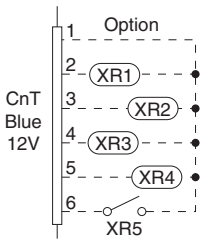
(a) Broken wire detection
When the return air temperature thermistor detects -50°C or lower or the heat exchanger temperature thermistor detect -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously, the compressor stops. After a 3-minute delay, the compressor restarts but, if it is detected again within 60 minutes after the initial detection for 6 minutes continuously, stops again (the return air temperature thermistor: E7, the heat exchanger temperature thermistor: E6).

(b) Short-circuit detection
If the heat exchanger temperature thermistor detects 70°C or higher for 5 seconds continuously at 2 minutes and 20 seconds after the compressor ON during cooling operation, the compressor stops (E6).

(21) External input/output control (CnT or CnTA)

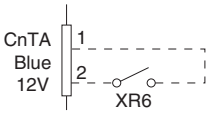
Be sure to connect the wired remote control to the indoor unit. Without wired remote control remote operation by CnT is not possible to perform.

・CnT



①Operation output (CnT-2: XR1)
②Heating output (CnT-3: XR2)
③Thermostat ON output (CnT-4: XR3)
④Error output (CnT-5: XR4)
⑤Remote operation input (CnT-6: Volt-free contact)

・CnTA (FDT, FDU, FDUM only)



Note (1) CnTA function can be changed by RC-EX1A.

■ Priority order for combinations of CnT and CnTA input.

		CnTA					
		① Operation stop level	② Operation stop pulse	③ Operation permission/prohibition	④ Operation permission/prohibition pulse	⑤ Cooling/heating selection level	⑥ Cooling/heating selection pulse
CnT	① Operation stop level	CnT ①	CnT ①	CnT ① +CnTA ②	CnT ①	CnT ① /CnTA ⑤	CnT ① /CnTA ⑥
	② Operation stop pulse	CnT ②	CnT ②	CnT ② +CnTA ③	CnT ②	CnT ② /CnTA ⑤	CnT ② /CnTA ⑥
	③ Operation permission/prohibition level	CnT ③ >CnTA ①	CnT ③ >CnTA ②	CnT ③ +CnTA ③	CnT ③	CnT ③ /CnTA ⑤	CnT ③ /CnTA ⑥
	④ Operation permission/prohibition pulse	CnT ④	CnT ④	CnT ④ +CnTA ③※	CnT ④	CnT ④ /CnTA ⑤	CnT ④ /CnTA ⑥
	⑤ Cooling/heating selection level	CnT ⑤ /CnTA ①	CnT ⑤ /CnTA ②	CnT ⑤ /CnTA ③※	CnT ⑤ /CnTA ④	CnT ⑤	CnT ⑤
	⑥ Cooling/heating selection pulse	CnT ⑥ /CnTA ①	CnT ⑥ /CnTA ②	CnT ⑥ /CnTA ③	CnT ⑥ /CnTA ④	CnT ⑥	CnT ⑥

Note (1) Following operation commands are accepted when the operation prohibition is set with CnTA as indicated with *.
Individual operation command from remote control, test run command from outdoor unit and operation command from optional device, CNT input.

Reference: Explanation on the codes and the combinations of codes in the table above
1. In case of CnT "Number", the CnT "Number" is adopted and CnTA is invalidated.
2. In case of CnTA "Number", the CnTA "Number" is adopted and CnT is invalidated.
3. In case of CnT "Number"/CnTA "Number", the CnT "Number" and the CnTA "Number" become independent functions each other.
4. In case of CnT "Number" + CnTA "Number", the CnT "Number" and the CnTA "Number" become competing functions each other.
5. In case of CnT "Number" > CnTA "Number", the function of CnT "Number" supersedes that of CnTA "Number".
6. In case of CnT "Number" < CnTA "Number", the function of CnTA "Number" supersedes that of CnT "Number".

(The "Number" above means ① - ⑥ in the table.)

(a) Output for external control (remote display)

Following output connectors (CnT) are provided on the indoor control PCB for monitoring operation status.

① **Operation output:** Outputs DC12V signal for driving relay during operation
② **Heating output:** Outputs DC12V signal for driving relay during heating operation
③ **Thermostat ON output:** Outputs DC12V signal for driving relay when compressor is operating.
④ **Error output:** Outputs DC12V signal for driving relay when anomalous condition occurs.

(b) Remote operation input

Remote operation input connector (CnT-6 or CnTA) is provided on the indoor control PCB.

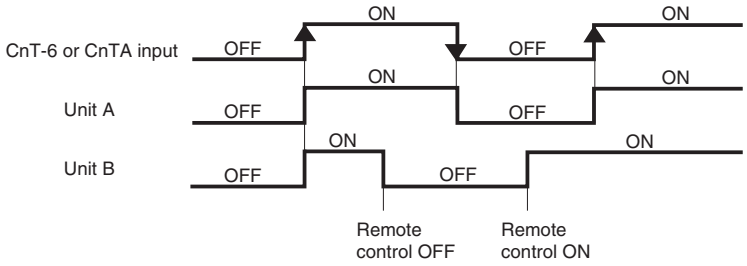
However remote operation by CnT-6 or CnTA is not effective, when "Center mode" is selected by center controller.

In case of plural unit (twin, triple, double twin), remote operation input to CnT-6 or CnTA on the slave indoor unit is invalid.

Only the "LEVEL INPUT" is acceptable for external input, however when the indoor function setting of "Level input (Factory default)" or "Pulse input" is selected by the function for "External input" of the wired remote control, operation status will be changed as follows.

(i) In case of "Level input" setting (Factory default)

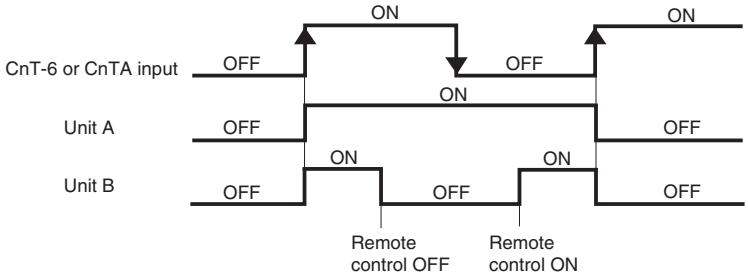
Input signal to CnT-6 or CnTA is OFF→ON …… unit ON
Input signal to CnT-6 or CnTA is ON→OFF …… unit OFF
Operation is not inverted.



Note: The latest operation has priority
It is available to operate/stop by remote control or center control

(ii) In case of "Pulse input" setting (Local setting)

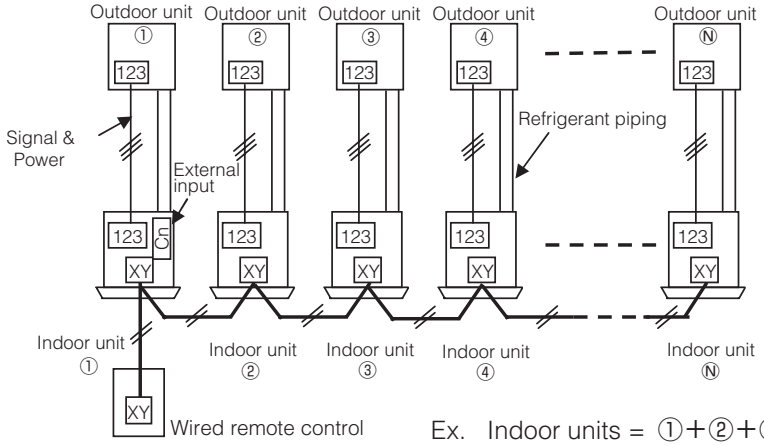
It is effective only when the input signal to CnT-6 or CnTA is changed OFF→ON, and at that time unit operation [ON/OFF] is inverted.



(c) Remote operation

(i) In case of multiple units (Max. 16 indoor units group) are connected to one wired remote control

When the indoor function setting of wired remote control for "External control set" is changed from "Individual (Factory default)" to " For all units", all units connected in one wired remote control system can be controlled by external operation input.



Ex. Indoor units = ①+②+③+④+……Ⓝ ≦16 units

	Individual operation (Factory default)		All units operation (Local setting)	
CnT-6 or CnTA	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
	Only the unit directly connected to the remote control can be operated.	Only the unit directly connected to the remote control can be stopped opeartion.	All units in one remote control system can be operated.	All units in one remote control system can be stopped operation.
	Unit ① only	Unit ① only	Units ① – Ⓝ	Units ① – Ⓝ

When more than one indoor unit (Max. 16 indoor units) are connected in one wired remote control system:

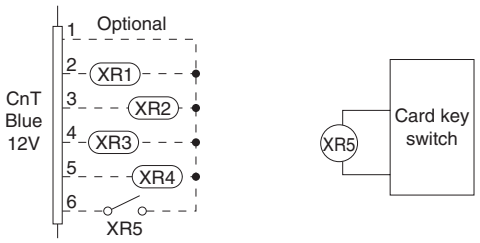
(1) With the factory default, external input to CnT-6 or CnTA is effective for only the unit ①.
(2) When setting "For all unit" (Local setting), all units in one remote control system can be controlled by external input to CnT-6 or CnTA on the indoor unit ①.
(3) External input to CnT-6 or CnTA on the other indoor unit than the unit ① is not effective.

(22) Operation permission/prohibition

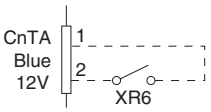
(In case of adopting card key switches or commercially available timers)

When the indoor function setting of wired remote control for "Operation permission/prohibition" is changed from "Invalid (Factory default)" to " Valid", following control becomes effective.

・CnT



・CnTA (FDT, FDU, FDUM only)



Note (1) CnTA function can be changed by RC-EX1A.

	Normal operation (Factory default)		Operation permission/prohibition mode "Valid" (Local setting)	
CnT-6 or CnTA	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
	Operation	Stop	Operation permission*1	Operation prohibition (Unit stops)

*1 **Only the "LEVEL INPUT" is acceptable for external input**, however when the indoor function setting of "Level input (Factory default)" or "Pulse input" is selected by the function for "External input" of the wired remote control, operation status will be changed as follows.

In case of "Level input" setting	In case of "Pulse input" setting
Unit operation from the wired remote control becomes available*(1)	Unit starts operation *(2)

*(1) In case that "Operation permission/prohibition mode" setting is "Valid" and "External input" setting is "Level input (Factory default)";

① When card key switch is ON (CnT-6 or CnTA ON: Operation permission), start/stop operation of the unit from the wired remote control becomes available.

② When card key switch is OFF (CnT-6 or CnTA OFF: Operation prohibition), the unit stops operation in conjunction with OFF signal, and start/stop operation of the unit from the wired remote control becomes not available.

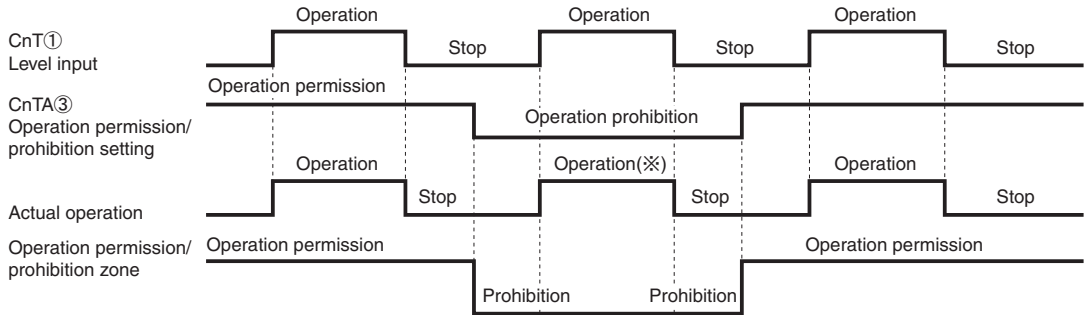
*(2) In case that "Operation permission/prohibition mode" setting is "Valid" and "External input" setting is "Pulse input (Local setting)";

① When card key switch is ON (Operation permission), the unit starts operation in conjunction with ON signal. and also start/stop operation of the unit from the wired remote control becomes available.

② When card key switch is OFF (Operation prohibition), the unit stops operation in conjunction with OFF signal, and start/stop operation of the unit from the wired remote control becomes not available.

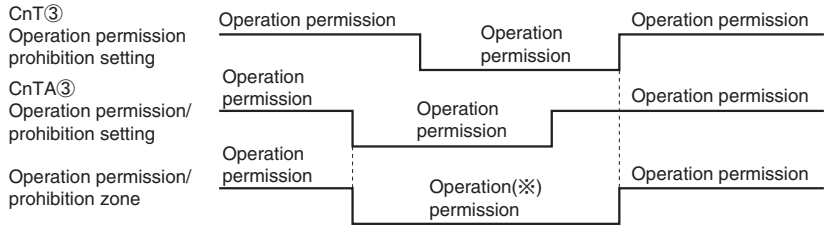
(3) This function is invalid only at "Center mode" setting done by central control.

(a) In case of CnT ① Operation stop level > CnTA ③ Operation permission/prohibition level



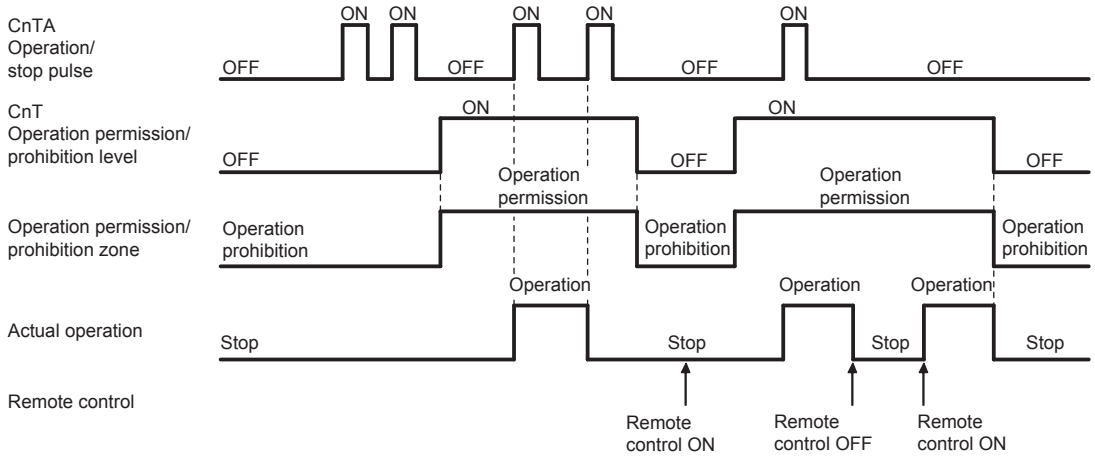
(※) CnT level input supersedes CnTA operation prohibition.

(b) In case of CnT ③ Operation permission/prohibition level + CnTA ③ Operation permission/prohibition level



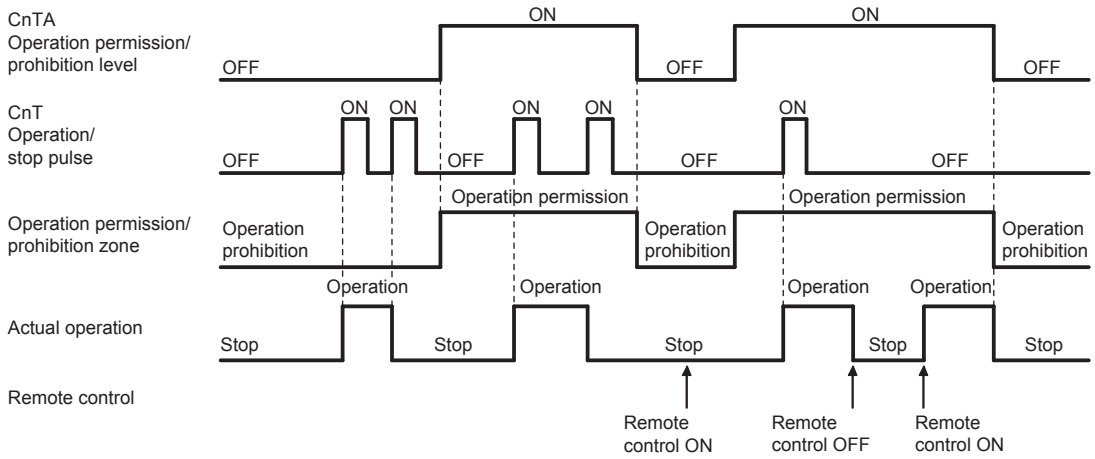
(※) Operation prohibition zone is determined by the OR judgment between CnT Operation prohibition zone and CnTA Operation prohibition zone.

(c) In case of CnT ③ Operation permission/prohibition level > CnTA ② Operation/stop pulse



Note (1) If it is prohibited by CnT, all "Operation" and "Stop" commands are not accepted.

(d) In case of CnT ② Operation/stop pulse + CnTA ③ Operation permission/prohibition level



(23) Selection of cooling/heating external input function

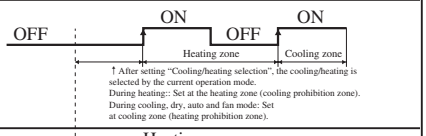
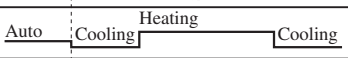
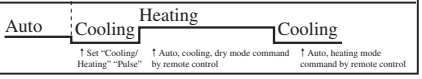
(a) When "External input 1 setting: Cooling/heating" is set for the indoor unit function from remote control, the cooling or heating is selected with CnT-6 or CnTA.

(b) When the External input 1 method selection: Level input is set for the indoor unit function:
- CnT-6 or CnTA: OPEN → Cooling operation mode
- CnT-6 or CnTA: CLOSE → Heating operation mode

(c) When the External input 1 method selection: Pulse input is set for the indoor unit function:
If the external input is changed OPEN → CLOSE, operation modes are inverted (Cooling → Heating or Heating → Cooling).

(d) If the cooling/heating selection signal is given by the external input, the operation mode is transmitted to the remote control.

■ Selection of cooling/heating external input function

External input selection	External input method	Operation	
External input selection Cooling/heating selection	⑤ Level	External terminal input (CnT or CnTA)	
		Cooling/heating	
		Cooling/heating (Competitive)	
	⑥ Pulse	External terminal input (CnT or CnTA)	
		Cooling/heating	
		Cooling/heating (Competitive)	

Notes (1) Regarding the priority order for combinations of CnT and CnTA, refer to Page 22.

(24) Fan control at heating startup

(a) Start conditions

At the start of heating operation, if the difference of setting temperature and return air temperature is 5°C or higher after the end of hot start control, this control is performed.

(b) Contents of control

(i) Sampling is made at each minute and, when the indoor unit heat exchanger temperature (detected with ThI-R) is 37°C or higher, present number of revolutions of indoor unit fan speed is increased by $10min^{-1}$.

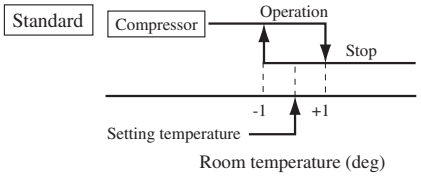
(ii) If the indoor unit heat exchanger temperature drops below 37°C at next sampling, present number of revolutions of indoor unit fan speed is reduced by $10min^{-1}$.

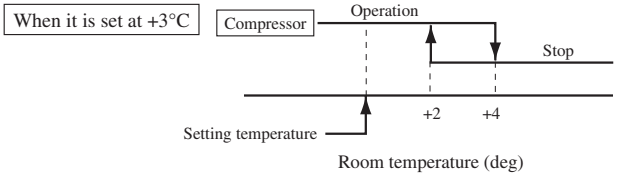
(c) End conditions

Indoor fan speed is reduced to the setting airflow volume when the compressor OFF is established and at 30 minutes after the start of heating operation.

(25) Room temperature detection temperature compensation during heating

With the standard specification, the compressor is turned ON/OFF with the thermostat setting temperature. When the thermostat is likely to turn OFF earlier because the unit is installed at the ceiling where warm air tends to accumulate, the setting can be changed with the wired remote control indoor unit function "☼SP OFFSET". The compressor and the heater are turned ON/OFF at one of the setting temperature +3, +2 or +1°C in order to improve the feeling of heating. The setting temperature, however, has the upper limit of 30°C.





(26) Return air temperature compensation

This is the function to compensate the deviation between the detection temperature by the return air temperature thermistor and the measured temperature after installing the unit.

(a) It is adjustable in the unit of 0.5°C with the wired remote control indoor unit function "RETURN AIR TEMP".

• +1.0°C, +1.5°C, +2.0°C • -1.0°C, -1.5°C, -2.0°C

(b) Compensated temperature is transmitted to the remote control and the compressor to control them.

Note (1) The detection temperature compensation is effective on the indoor unit thermistor only.

(27) High power operation (RC-EX1A only)

It operates at with the set temp. fixed at 16°C for cooling, 30°C for heating and maximum indoor fan speed for 15 minutes maximum.

(28) Energy-saving operation (RC-EX1A only)

It operates with the setting temperature fixed at 28°C for cooling, 22°C for heating or 25°C for auto. (Maximum capacity is restricted at 80%.)

(29) Warm-up control (RC-EX1A only)

Operation will be started 5 to 60 minutes before use according to the forecast made by the microcomputer which calculates when the operation should be started in order to warm up the indoor temperature near the setting temperature at the setting time of operation start.

(30) Home leave mode (RC-EX1A only)

When the unit is not used for a long period of time, the room temperature is maintained at a moderate leval, avoiding extremely hot or cool temperature.

(a) Cooling or heating is operated according to the outdoor temperature (factory setting 35°C for cooling, 0°C for heating) and the set temp. (factory setting 33°C for cooling, 10°C for heating)

(b) Set temp and indoor fan speed can be set by RC-EX1A.

(31) Auto temp. setting (RC-EX1A only)

Setting temperature is adjusted automatically at the adequate temperature the center set temp. is 24°C by correcting the outdoor air temperature.

(32) Fan circulator operation (RC-EX1A only)

When the fan is used for circulation, the unit is operated as follows depending on the setting with the remote control.

(a) If the invalid is selected with the remote control, the fan is operated continuously during the fan operation. (mormal fan mode)

(b) If the valid is selected with the remote control, the fan is operated or stopped when on the difference of the remote control temperature sensor and the indoor unit return air temperature sensor becomes bigger than 3°C.

(33) The operation judgment is executed every 5 minutes (RC-EX1A only)

Setting temperature Ts is changed according to outdoor temperature

This control is valid with cooling and heating mode. (NOT auto mode)

(a) Operate 5 minutes forcedly.

(b) Setting temperature is adjusted every 10 minutes.

(i) Cooling mode.
Ts = outdoor temperature − offset value

(ii) Heating mode.
Ts = outdoor temperature − offset value

(c) If the return air temperature lower than 18°C or return air temperature becomes lower than 25°C, unit goes thermo OFF.

(34) Auto fan speed control (RC-EX1A only)

In order to reach the room temperature to the set temperature as quickly as possible, the airflow rate is increased when the set temperature of thermostat differs largely from the return air temperature. According to temperature difference be tureen set temperature and return air temperature, indoor fan tap are controlled automalically.

・ Auto 1: Changes the indoor unit fan tap within the range of Hi ↔ Me ↔ Lo.

・ Auto 2: Changes the indoor unit fan tap within the range of PHi ↔ Hi ↔ Me ↔ Lo.

(35) IU overload alarm (RC-EX1A only)

When the indoor air temperature becomes higher or lower than the temperature set with the remote control by more than 5 to 10℃ at 30 minutes after starting operation, the signal is transmitted to the external output (CNT). Receipt of the signal by the external output is indicated by lighting an LED or other prepared onsite.

1.3.2 SRK series

(1) Unit ON/OFF button

When the wireless remote control batteries become weak, or if the wireless remote control is lost or malfunctioning, this button may be used to turn the unit on and off.

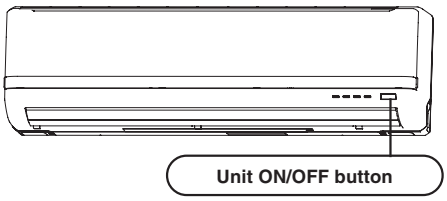
(a) Operation

Push the button once to place the unit in the automatic mode. Push it once more to turn the unit off.

(b) Details of operation

The unit will go into the automatic mode in which it automatically determines, from indoor temperature (as detected by sensor), whether to go into the cooling, thermal dry or heating modes.

Function / Operation mode	Indoor temperature setting	Fan speed	Flap/Louver	Timer Switch
COOL	About 24ºC	Auto	Auto	Continuous
DRY	About 25ºC			
HEAT	About 26ºC			



(2) Auto restart function

(a) Auto restart function records the operational status of the air-conditioner immediately prior to be switched off by a power cut, and then automatically resumes operations after the power has been restored.

(b) The following settings will be cancelled:

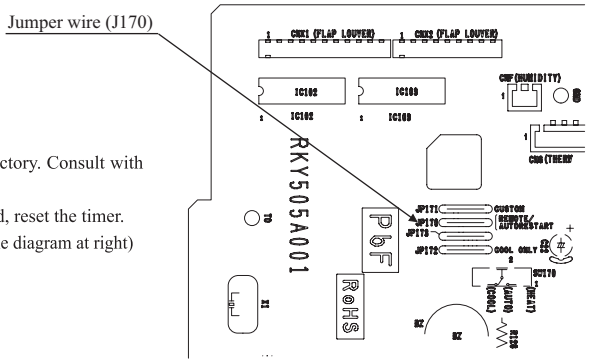
(i) Timer settings

(ii) HIGH POWER operation

Notes (1) Auto restart function is set at on when the air-conditioner is shipped from the factory. Consult with your dealer if this function needs to be switched off.

(2) When power failure ocurrs, the timer setting is cancelled. Once power is resumed, reset the timer.

(3) If the jumper wire (J170) "AUTO RESTART" is cut, auto restart is disabled. (See the diagram at right)



(3) Installing two air conditioners in the same room

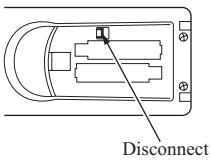
When two air conditioners are installed in the room, use setting when the two air conditioners are not operated with one wireless remote control. Set the wireless remote control and indoor unit.

(a) Setting the wireless remote control

(i) Pull out the cover and take out batteries.

(ii) Disconnect the switching line next to the battery with wire cutters.

(iii) Insert batteries, Close the cover.

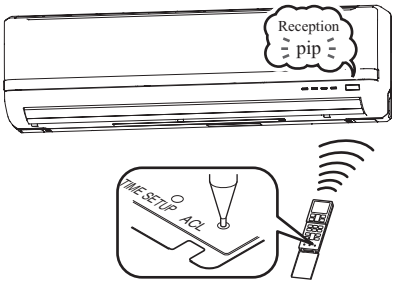


(b) Setting an indoor unit

(i) Turn off the power supply, and turn it on after 1 minute.

(ii) Point the wireless remote control that was set according to the procedure described on the left side at the indoor unit and send a signal by pressing the ACL switch on the wireless remote control.
Since the signal is sent in about 6 seconds after the ACL switch is pressed, point the wireless remote control at the indoor unit for some time.

(iii) Check that the reception buzzer sound "pip" is emitted from the indoor unit.
At completion of the setting, the indoor unit emits a buzzer sound "pip".
(If no reception tone is emitted, start the setting from the beginning again.)

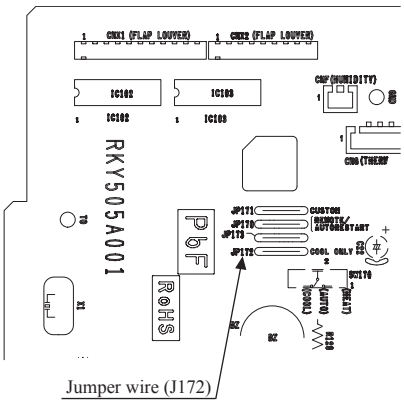


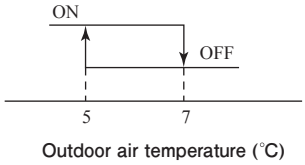
(4) Selection of the annual cooling function

(a) The annual cooling function can be enabled or disabled by means of the jumper wire (J172) on the indoor unit PCB and the dip switch (SW2-4) on the interface kit (optional) PCB.

Jumper wire (J172)	Interface kit (SC-BIKN-E) SW2-4	Function
Shorted	ON	Enabled
Shorted	OFF	Disabled
Open	ON	Disabled
Open	OFF	Disabled

Note: (1) Default states of the jumper wire (J172) and the interface kit at the shipping from factory – On the PCB, the dip switch (SW2-4) is set to enable the annual cooling function.
(2) To cancel the annual cooling setting, consult your dealer.





(b) Content of control

(i) If the outdoor air temperature sensor (TH2) detects below 5°C, the indoor fan speed is switched to 9th step. (It is not possible to change.)

(ii) If the outdoor air temperature sensor (TH2) detects higher than 7°C, the indoor fan speed is changed to the normal control speed.

(5) High power operation

Pressing the HI/ECO button intensifies the operating power and initiates powerful cooling and heating operation for 15 minutes continuously. The wireless remote control displays and the FAN SPEED display disappears.

(a) During the HIGH POWER operation, the room temperature is not controlled. When it causes an excessive cooling and heating, press the HI/ECO button again to cancel the HIGH POWER operation.

(b) HIGH POWER operation is not available during the DRY and the program timer operations.

(c) When HIGH POWER operation is set after ON TIMER operation, HIGH POWER operation will start from the set time.

(d) When the following operation are set, HIGH POWER operation will be canceled.

① When the HI/ECO button is pressed again.
② When the operation mode is changed.
③ When it has been 15 minutes since HIGH POWER operation has started.
④ When the 3D AUTO botton is pressed.
⑤ When the SILENT botton is pressed.
⑥ When the NIGHT SETBACK botton is pressed.

(e) Not operable while the air conditioner is OFF.

(f) After HIGH POWER operation, the sound of refrigerant flowing may be heard.

(6) Economy operation

Pressing the HI/ECO button initiate a soft operation with the power suppressed in order to avoid an excessive cooling or heating. The unit operate 1.0℃ higher than the setting temperature during cooling or 2.0℃ lower than that during heating. The wireless remote control displays ECONO mark and the FAN SPEED display disappears.

(a) It will go into ECONOMY operation at the next time the air conditioner runs in the following cases.

① When the air-conditioner is stopped by ON/OFF button during ECONOMY operation.
② When the air-conditioner is stopped in SLEEP or OFF TIMER operation during ECONOMY operation.
③ When the operation is retrieved from CLEAN or ALLERGEN CLEAR operation.

(b) When the following operation are set, ECONOMY operation will be canceled.

① When the HI/ECO button is pressed again.
② When the operation mode is changed DRY to FAN.
③ When the NIGHT SETBACK botton is pressed.

(c) Not operable while the air-conditioner is OFF.

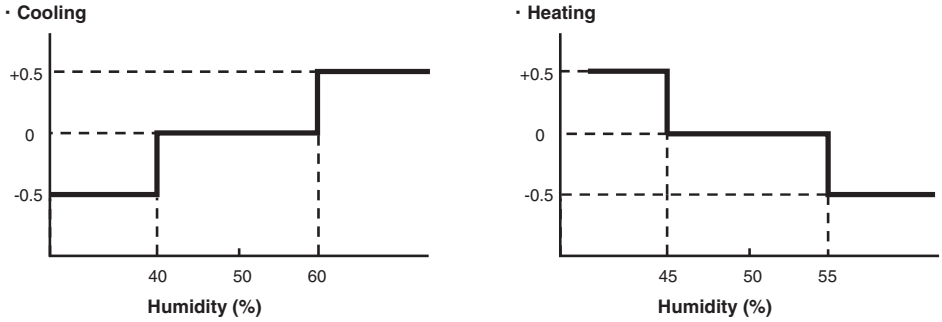
(d) The setting temperature is adjusted according to the following table.

Item \ Mode	Cooling	Heating
Temperature adjustment	①+0.5	①−1.0
	②+1.0	②−2.0
	③	③

① at the start of operation.

② one hour after the start of operation.

③ two hours after the start of operation.

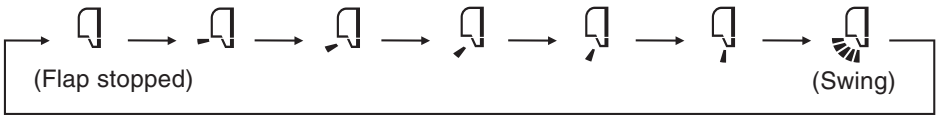


(7) Flap and louver control

Control the flap and louver by AIR FLOW U/D (UP/DOWN) and L/R (LEFT/RIGHT) button on the wireless remote control.

(a) Flap

Each time when you press the AIR FLOW U/D (UP/DOWN) button the mode changes as follows.

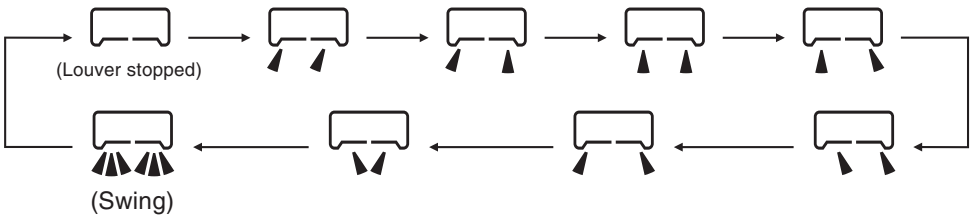


• Angle of Flap from Horizontal

Remote control display					
COOL , DRY, FAN	Approx. 5°	Approx. 25°	Approx. 35°	Approx. 55°	Approx. 80°
HEAT	Approx. 25°	Approx. 40°	Approx. 50°	Approx. 60°	Approx. 80°

(b) Louver

Each time when you press the AIR FLOW L/R (LEFT/RIGHT) button the mode changes as follows.



• Angle of Louver

Remote control display					
Center installation	Left Approx. 50°	Left Approx. 20°	Center	Right Approx. 20°	Right Approx. 50°

(c) Swing

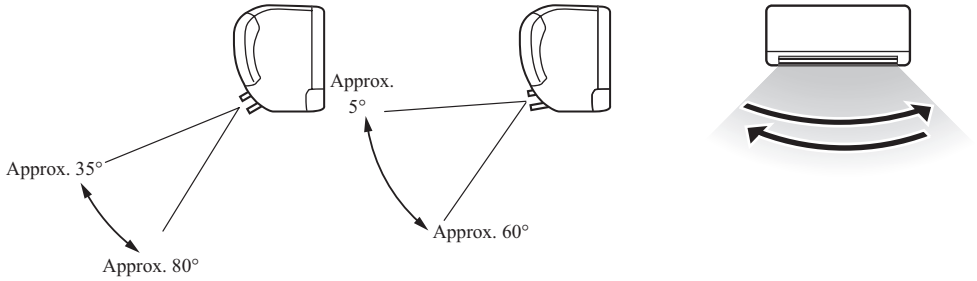
(i) Swing flap

Flap moves in upward and downward directions continuously.

(ii) Swing louver

Louver moves in left and right directions continuously.

◆ In HEAT operation ◆ In COOL, DRY, FAN operation



(c) Memory flap (Flap or Louver stopped)

When you press the AIR FLOW (UP/DOWN or LEFT/RIGHT) button once while the flap or louver is operating, it stops swinging at the position. Since this angle is memorized in the microcomputer, the flap or louver will automatically be set at this angle when the next operation is started.

(d) When not operating

The flap returns to the position of air flow directly below, when operation has stopped.

(8) 3D auto operation

Control the flap and louver by 3D AUTO button on the wireless remote control.

Air flow selection and air flow direction are automatically controlled, allowing the entire indoor to efficiently conditioned.

(a) During Cooliong and Heating (Including auto cooling and heating)

(i) Air flow selection is determined according to indoor temperature and setting temperature.

Operation mode	Air flow selection					
	AUTO		HI	MED	LO	ULO
Cooling	Indoor temp. – Setting temp. >5°C	Indoor temp. – Setting temp. ≦ 5°C	HI	MED	LO	ULO
	HIGH POWER	AUTO				
Heating	Setting temp. – Indoor temp. >5°C	Setting temp. – Indoor temp.≦ 5°C				
	HIGH POWER	AUTO				

(ii) Air flow direction is controlled according to the indoor temperature and setting temperature.

1) When 3D auto operation starts

	Cooling	Heating
Flap	Up/down swing	
Louver	Wide (Fixed)	Center (Fixed)

2) When Indoor temp. – Setting temp. is ≦ 5ºC during cooling and when Setting temp. – Indoor temp. is ≦ 5ºC during heating, the system switches to the following air flow direction control. After the louver swings left and right symmetrically for 3 cycles, control is switched to the control in 3).

	Cooling	Heating
Flap	Horizontal blowing (Fixed)	Slant forwardl blowing (Fixed)
Louver	Left/right swing	

3) After the flap swings for 5 cycles, control is switched to the control in 4).

	Cooling	Heating
Flap	Up/down swing	
Louver	Center (Fixed)	

4) For 5 minutes, the following air flow direction control is carried out.

	Cooling	Heating
Flap	Horizontal blowing (Fixed)	Slant forwardl blowing (Fixed)
Louver	Wide (Fixed)	

5) After 5 minutes have passed, the air flow direction is determined according to the indoor temperature and setting temperature.

Operation mode	Air flow direction contorol		
Cooling	Indoor temp. – Setting temp. ≦ 2°C	2°C < Indoor temp. – Setting temp. ≦ 5°C	Indoor temp. – Setting temp. > 5°C
	The control in 4) continues.	Control returns to the control in 2).	Control returns to the control in 1).
Heating	Setting temp. – Indoor temp. ≦ 2°C	2°C < Setting temp. – Indoor temp. ≦ 5°C	Setting temp. – Indoor temp. > 5°C
	The control in 4) continues.	Control returns to the control in 2).	Control returns to the control in 1).

(b) During DRY Operation (including auto DRY operation)

Flap	Horizontal blowing (Fixed)
Louver	Wide (Fixed)

(9) Timer operation

(a) Comfortable timer setting (ON timer)

If the timer is set at ON when the operation select switch is set at the cooling or heating, or the cooling or heating in auto mode operation is selected, the comfortable timer starts and determines the starting time of next operation based on the initial value of 15 minutes and the relationship between the indoor temperature at the setting time (temperature of room temperature sensor) and the setting temperature.

(b) Sleep timer operation

Pressing the SLEEP button causes the temperature to be controlled with respect to the set temperature.

(c) OFF timer operation

The Off timer can be set at a specific time (in 10-minute units) within a 24-hour period.

(d) Weekly timer operation

Timer operation (ON timer, OFF timer) can be set up to 4 times a day for each weekday.

(10) Night setback

As “Night setback” signal is received from the wireless remote control, the heating operation starts with the setting temperature at 10℃.

(11) Installation location setting

When the indoor unit is installed at the end of a room, control the air flow direction so that it is not toward the side walls. If you set the wireless remote control installation position, keep it so that the air flow is within the range shown in the following figure.

(a) Setting

(i) If the air conditioning unit is running, press the ON/OFF button to stop.

The installation location setting cannot be made while the unit is running.

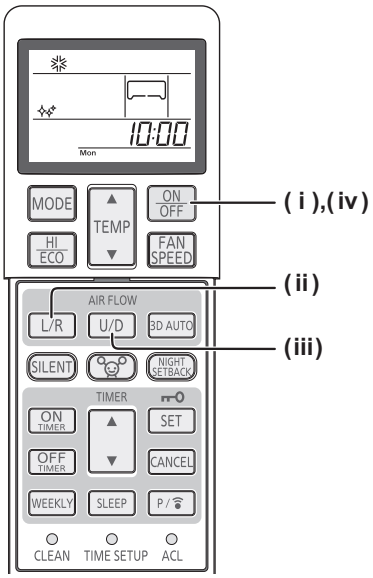
(ii) Press the AIR FLOW U/D (UP/DOWN) button and the AIR FLOW L/R (LEFT/RIGHT) button together for 5 seconds or more.

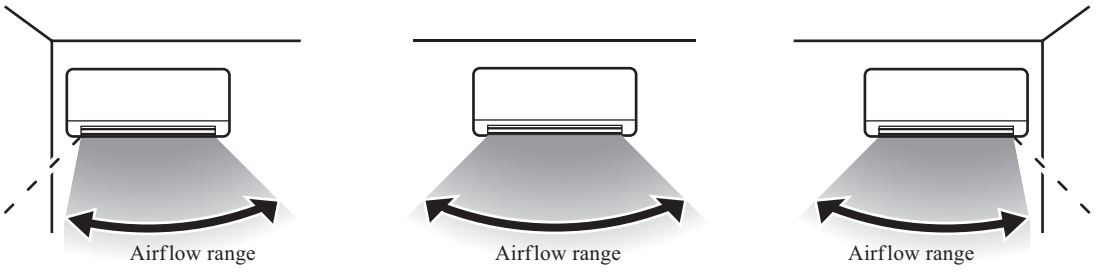
The installation location display illuminates.

(iii) Setting the air-conditioning installation location.

Press the AIR FLOW L/R (LEFT/RIGHT) button and adjust to the desired location.

Each time the AIR FLOW L/R (LEFT/RIGHT) button is pressed, the indicator is switched in the order of:





(Left End Installation) (Center Installation) (Right End Installation)

(iv) Press the ON/OFF button.

The air-conditioner's installation location is set.

Press within 60 seconds of setting the installation location (while the installation location setting display illuminates).

(12) Outline of heating operation

(a) Operation of major functional components in heating mode

	Heating		
	Thermostat ON	**Thermostat OFF**	**Failure**
Compressor	ON	OFF	OFF
Indoor fan motor	ON	ON(HOT KEEP)	OFF
Outdoor fan motor	ON	OFF (few minutes ON)	OFF
4-way valve	ON	ON	OFF (3 minutes ON)

(b) Details of control at each operation mode (pattern)

(i) Fuzzy operation

Deviation between the indoor temperature setting correction temperature and the return air temperature is calculated in accordance with the fuzzy rule, and used for control of the air capacity and the compressor speed.

Model / Fan speed	SRK71ZM-S
AUTO	20~116rps
HI	20~116rps
MED	20~116rps
LO	20~98rps
ULO	20~58rps

When the defrosting, protection device, etc. is actuated, operation is performed in the corresponding mode.

(ii) Hot keep operation

If the hot keep operation is selected during the heating operation, the indoor blower is controlled based on the temperature of the indoor heat exchanger (Th2) to prevent blowing of cool wind.
However, if the fan speed setting is HI and room temperature is 19°C or higher, this control is not executed.

(13) Outline of cooling operation

(a) Operation of major functional components in Cooling mode

	Cooling		
	Thermostat ON	Thermostat OFF	Failure
Compressor	ON	OFF	OFF
Indoor fan motor	ON	ON	OFF
Outdoor fan motor	ON	OFF (few minutes ON)	OFF (few minutes ON)
4-way valve	OFF	OFF	OFF

(b) Detail of control in each mode (Pattern)

1) Fuzzy operation

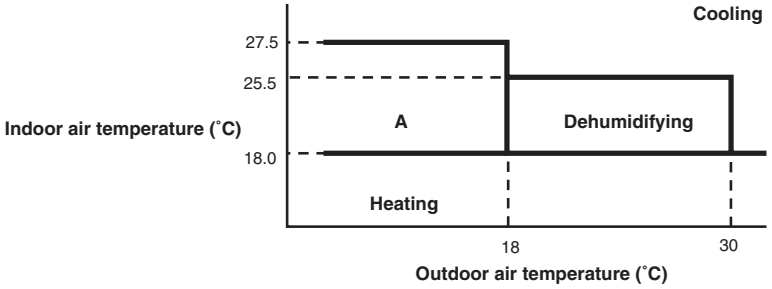
During the fuzzy operation, the air flow and the compressor speed are controlled by calculating the difference between the indoor temperature setting correction temperature and the return air temperature.

Model / Fan speed	SRK71ZM-S
AUTO	20~88rps
HI	20~88rps
MED	20~74rps
LO	20~56rps
ULO	20~36rps

(14) Outline of automatic operation

(a) Determination of operation mode

The unit checks the indoor air temperature and setting temperature and the outdoor air temperature, determines the operation mode, and then begins in the automatic operation.



(b) The unit checks the temperature every hour after the start of operation and, if the result of check is not same as the previous operation mode, changes the operation mode.

(i) If the setting temperature is changed with the remote control, the operation mode is judged immediately.

(ii) When both the indoor and the outdoor air temperatures are in the range "A", cooling or heating is switched depending on the difference between the setting temperature and the indoor air temperature.

(iii) When the operation mode has been judged following the change of setting temperature with the remote control, the hourly judgment of operation mode is cancelled.

(c) When the unit is started again within one hour after the stop of automatic operation or when the automatic operation is selected during heating, cooling or dehumidifying operation, the unit is operated in the previous operation mode.

(d) Setting temperature can be adjusted within the following range. There is the relationship as shown below between the signals of the wireless remote control and the setting temperature.

Unit : ºC

		Signals of wireless remote control (Display)												
		–6	–5	–4	–3	–2	–1	±0	+1	+2	+3	+4	+5	+6
Setting temperature	Cooling	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
	Dehumidifying	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31
	Heating	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32

(e) When the unit is operated automatically with the wired remote control connected, the cooling operation is controlled according to the display temperatures while the setting temperature is compensated by +1°C during dehumidifying or by +2°C during heating.

(15) Protection control function

(a) Dew prevention control [Cooling]: Prevents dewing on the indoor unit.

(i) Operating conditions: When the following conditions have been met for more than 30 minutes after starting operation

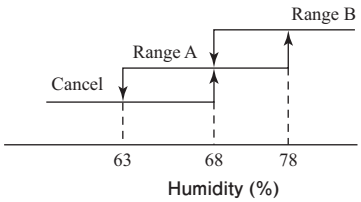
1) Compressor's command speed is 28 rps or higher.
2) Detected value of humidity is 68% or higher.

(ii) Contents of operation

1) Air capacity control

Item \ Model		SRK71ZM-S
ULo	Upper limit of compressor's command speed (1)	Range A: As per following table, Range B: 54 rps
	Indoor fan	4th speed
Hi, Me, Lo	Upper limit of compressor's command speed (1)	Range A: As per following table, Range B: 54 rps
	Indoor fan	Adaptable to compressor's command speed (4th speed)

Note (1) Ranges A and B are as shown below.



● Condition for range A

Compressor's command rps is controlled according to the indoor unit heat exchanger temperature (Th2) and the indoor unit room temperature (Th1).

Condition	Compressor's command rps
Th2 ≦ Th1 − 10	・Decreases the compressor's target max speed by 4 rps. ・If the condition is met still 20 seconds later, the speed is decreased further by 4 rps. This process is repeated further so far as the condition is met. (Lower limit is 30 rps.)
Th1 − 10 < Th2 ≦ Th1 − 6	Compressor's target max. speed or changed value of the same is maintained.
Th2 − 6 < Th1	Changed compressor's target max. speed is increased at a rate of 1 rps/20 seconds.

2) When this control has continued for more than 30 minutes continuously, the following wind direction control is performed.

a) When the vertical wind direction is set at other than the vertical swing, the flaps change to the horizontal position.

b) When the horizontal wind direction is set at other than the horizontal swing, the louver changes to the vertical position.

(iii) Resetting condition: When any of followings is met

1) Compressor's command speed is less than 28 rps.

2) Detected value of humidity is less than 63%.

(b) Frost prevention control (During cooling or dehumidifying)

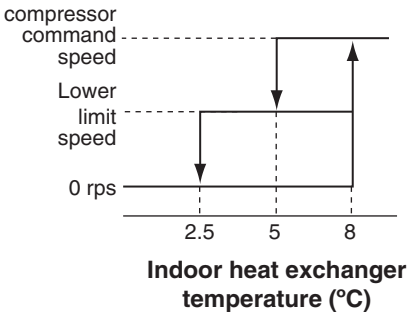
(i) Operating conditions

1) Indoor heat exchanger temperature (Th2) is lower than 5ºC.

2) 5 minutes after reaching the compressor command speed except 0 rps.

(ii) Detail of anti-frost operation

Item \ Indoor heat exchanger temperature	5°C or lower	2.5°C or lower
Lower limit of compressor command speed	22 rps	0 rps
Indoor fan	Depends on operation mode	Protects the fan tap just before frost prevention control
Outdoor fan	Depends on command speed	Depends on stop mode
4-way valve	OFF	



Notes (1) When the indoor heat exchanger temperature is in the range of 2.5~5ºC, the speed is reduced by 4 rps at each 20 seconds.
(2) When the temperature is lower than 2.5ºC, the compressor is stopped.
(3) When the indoor heat exchanger temperature is in the range of 5~8ºC, the compressor command speed is been maintained.

(iii) Reset conditions: When either of the following condition is satisfied.

1) The indoor heat exchanger temperature (Th2) is 8ºC or higher.

2) The compressor command speed is 0 rps.

(c) Indoor fan motor protection

When the air conditioner is operating and the indoor fan motor is turned ON, if the indoor fan motor has operated at 300 min^{-1} or under for more than 30 seconds, the unit enters first in the stop mode and then stops the entire system.

1.4 Operation control function by the outdoor control

(1) Compressor command speed

Unit: rps

Item \ Model	Cooling		Heating	
	FDC71	FDC90	FDC71	FDC90
Upper limit	120		120	
Lower limit	12		12	

(2) Compressor protection start

(a) Compressor protection start I

(i) Operating conditions: When the compressor is turned ON from the state of OFF.

(ii) Detail of operation: During the protection start I control, the upper limit of compressor speed is restricted to the speeds as shown in the following table.

Unit: rps

			Time after establishment of operating conditions (Including acceleration time)				
			Less than 3 min	Less than 5 min	Less than 7 min	Less than 9 min	9 min or more
FDC71	Cooling		120	120	120	120	End of control
	Heating(1)	TH2≧10°C	120	120	120	120	
		TH2<10°C	48	56	56	75	
FDC90	Cooling		120	120	120	120	
	Heating(1)	TH2≧10°C	55	55	75	95	
		TH2<10°C	55	55	75	95	

Note (1) Judgment by the outdoor air temperature sensor (TH2) is made only at the start of control during heating operation.

(b) Compressor protection start II

(i) Operating conditions: When the outdoor air temperature sensor (TH2) has detected lower than 10°C after starting the compressor during heating operation.

(ii) Detail of operation: During the protection start II control, the upper limit of compressor speed is restricted to the speeds as shown in the following table.

Unit: rps

		Time after compressor ON (Including acceleration time)				
		Less than 1 min	Less than 5 min	Less than 7 min	Less than 9 min	9 min or more
FDC71		40	32	90	110	End of control
FDC90	TH2≧-5°C	40	32	90	110	
	TH2<-5°C	40	45	90	110	

(3) Outdoor unit fan control

(a) Outdoor unit fan speed and fan motor speed

Unit: min^{-1}

Fan speed	1st speed	2nd speed	3rd speed	4th speed	5th speed	6th speed	7th speed	8th speed
FDC71	150	225	485	520	570	685	800	850
FDC90	150	300	500	650	740	835	890	950

(b) Outdoor unit fan control at start (Cooling operation only)

When the outdoor air temperature (TH2) is lower than 22°C at the start of compressor, the outdoor unit fan is operated at a fixed speed.

(i) When the outdoor air temperature is higher than 11°C, the compressor runs at 2nd speed for 30 seconds after the compressor ON.

(ii) When the outdoor air temperature is lower than 11°C, the compressor runs at 1st speed for 30 seconds after the compressor ON.

(c) Relationship between compressor speed and outdoor unit fan speed
Outdoor unit fan speed is controlled according to the operation mode (Heating/cooling) and the compressor speed.

Unit: rps

Fan speed		1st speed	2nd speed	3rd speed	4th speed	5th speed	6th speed	7th speed	8th speed
FDC71	Cooling	–	–	–	0-22	22-30	30-58	58-80	80-
	Heating	–	–	–	0-30	30-38	38-78	78-90	90-
FDC90	Cooling	–	–	0-30	30-46	46-64	64-70	70-75	75-
	Heating	–	–	0-30	30-46	46-70	70-90	90-	–

(d) Outdoor fan control at low outdoor temperature

(i) Cooling

1) Operating conditions: When the outdoor air temperature (TH2) is 22ºC or lower continues for 30 seconds while the compressor command speed is other than 0 rps.

2) Detail of operation: After the outdoor fan operates at A speed for 60 seconds; the corresponding outdoor heat exchanger temperature shall implement the following controls.

● Value of A

	Outdoor fan
Outdoor temperature > 10˚C	12th speed
Outdoor temperature ≦ 10˚C	9th speed

a) Outdoor heat exchanger temperature ≦ 21ºC
After the outdoor fan speed drops (down) to 1 speed for 60 seconds; if the outdoor heat exchanger temperature is lower than 21ºC, gradually reduce the outdoor fan speed by 1 speed. (Lower limit 9th speed)

b) 21ºC < Outdoor heat exchanger temperature ≦ 38ºC
After the outdoor fan speed maintains for 20 seconds; if the outdoor heat exchanger temperature is 21ºC~38ºC, maintain outdoor fan speed again.

c) Outdoor heat exchanger tempeature > 38ºC
After the outdoor fan speed rises (up) to 1 speed for 60 seconds; if the outdoor heat exchanger temperature is higher than 38ºC, gradually increase outdoor fan speed by 1 speed. (Upper limit 15th speed)

3) Reset conditions: When either of the following conditions is satisfied

a) The outdoor air temperature (TH2) is 25ºC or higher and fan speed is 15th speed.

b) The compressor command speed is 0 rps.

4) Outdoor unit fan speed and fan motor speed

Unit: min^{-1}

Fan speed	9th speed	10th speed	11th speed	12th speed	13th speed	14th speed	15th speed
FDC71	150	175	200	225	305	385	485
FDC90	200	225	250	275	300	400	500

(ii) Heating

1) Operating conditions: When the outdoor air temperature (TH2) is 4ºC or lower continues for 30 seconds while the compressor command speed is other than 0 rps.

2) Detail of operation: The outdoor fan is stepped up by 2 speed step at each 20 seconds. (Upper limit 8th speed)

3) Reset conditions: When either of the following conditions is satisfied

a) The outdoor air temperature (TH2) is 6ºC or higher.

b) The compressor command speed is 0 rps.

(e) Outdoor fan control at overload

(i) Cooling

1) Operating conditions: When the outdoor air temperature (TH2) is 41ºC or higher continues for 30 seconds while the compressor command speed is other than 0 rps.

2) Detail of operation: The outdoor fan is stepped up by 3 speed. (Upper limit 8th speed)

3) Reset conditions: When either of the following conditions is satisfied

a) The outdoor air temperature (TH2) is 40ºC or lower.

b) The compressor command speed is 0 rps.

(ii) Heating

1) Operating conditions: When the outdoor air temperature (TH2) is 13ºC or higher continues for 30 seconds while the compressor command speed is other than 0 rps.

2) Detail of operation: After the outdoor fan operates at -3 speed for 60 seconds; the corresponding outdoor heat exchanger temperature shall implement the following controls.

a) Outdoor heat exchanger temperature ≦ 10ºC

After the outdoor fan speed rises (up) to 1 speed for 60 seconds; if the outdoor heat exchanger temperature is lower than 10ºC, gradually increase the outdoor fan speed by 1 speed.

b) 10ºC < Outdoor heat exchanger temperature ≦ 13ºC

After the outdoor fan speed maintains for 20 seconds; if the outdoor heat exchanger temperature is 10ºC~13ºC, maintain outdoor fan speed again.

c) Outdoor heat exchanger tempeature > 13ºC

After the outdoor fan speed drops (down) to 1 speed for 60 seconds; if the outdoor heat exchanger temperature is higher than 38ºC, gradually reduce outdoor fan speed by 1 speed. (Lower limit 2nd speed)

3) Reset conditions: When either of the following conditions is satisfied

a) The outdoor air temperature (TH2) is 11ºC or lower.

b) The compressor command speed is 0 rps.

(f) Outdoor fan motor protection

If the outdoor fan motor has operated at 75 rpm or lower for more than 30 seconds, the compressor and fan motor are stopped.

(4) Defrosting operation

(a) Starting conditions (Defrosting operation can be started only when all of the following conditions are met.)

(i) After start of heating operation

When it elapsed 35 minutes. (Accumulated compressor operation time)

(ii) After end of defrosting operation

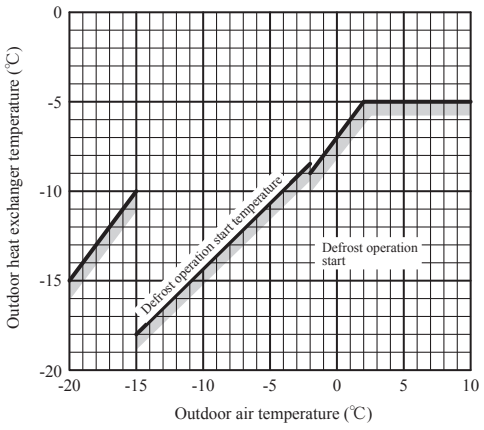
When it elapsed 35 minutes. (Accumulated compressor operation time)

(iii) Outdoor heat exchanger sensor (TH1) temperature

When the temperature has been below −5ºC for 3 minutes continuously.

(iv) The difference between the outdoor air sensor temperature and the outdoor heat exchanger sensor temperature (TH2-TH1)

- The outdoor air temperature ≧ −2ºC : 7ºC or higher
- −15ºC < The outdoor air temperature < −2ºC : 4/15 × The outdoor air temperature + 7ºC or higher
- The outdoor air temperature ≦ −15ºC : −5ºC or higher



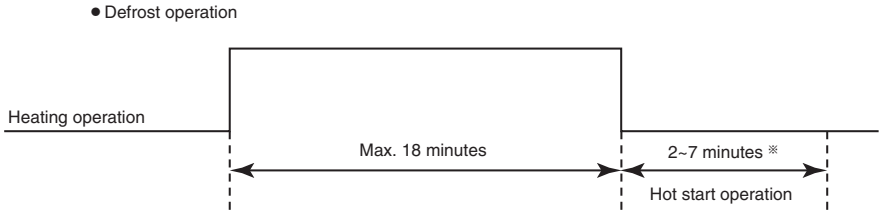
(v) During continuous compressor operation

In addition, when the speed command from the indoor controller of the indoor unit during heating operation has counted 0 rps 10 times or more and all conditions of (i), (ii) above and the outdoor air temperature is 3ºC or less and the temperature for outdoor heat exchanger sensor (TH1) is −5ºC or less: 62 rps or more, −4ºC or less: less than 62 rps are satisfied, defrost operation is started.

(b) Ending conditions (Operation returns to the heating cycle when either one of the following is met.)

(i) Outdoor heat exchanger sensor (TH1) temperature: 20ºC or higher

(ii) Continued operation time of defrosting → For more than 18 minutes.

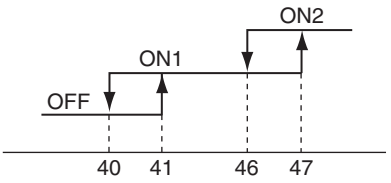


※Depends on an operation condition, the time can be longer than 7 minutes.

(5) Cooling overload protective control

(a) Operating conditions: When the outdoor air temperature (TH2) has become continuously for 30 seconds at 41ºC or more, or 47ºC or more with the compressor running, the lower limit speed of compressor is brought up.

Item \ Model	FDC71, 90VNP	
Outdoor air temperature	41°C or more	47°C or more
Lower limit speed	30 rps	40 rps



(b) Detail of operation

The lower limit of compressor command speed is set to 30 or 40 rps and even if the calculated result becomes lower than that after fuzzy calculation, the speed is kept to 30 or 40 rps. However, when the thermo OFF, the speed is reduced to 0 rps.

(c) Reset conditions: When either of the following condition is satisfied.

1) The outdoor air temperature is lower than 40ºC.
2) The compressor command speed is 0 rps.

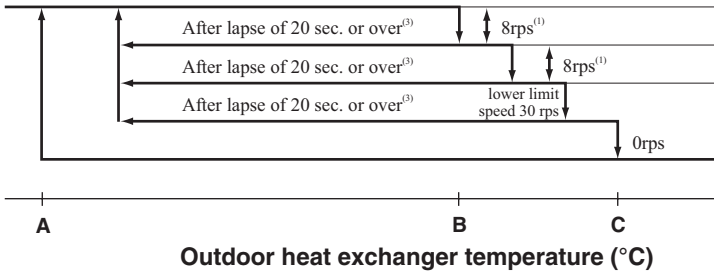
(6) Cooling high pressure control

(a) Purpose: Prevents anomalous high pressure operation during cooling.

(b) Detector: Outdoor heat exchanger sensor (TH1)

(c) Detail of operation:

(Example) Fuzzy



Outdoor air temperature(TH2)	A	B	C
TH2 ≧ 32ºC	53	58	63
TH2 < 32ºC	51	53	56

Notes (1) When the outdoor heat exchanger temperature is in the range of B ~ C ºC, the compressor command speed is reduced by 8 rps at each 20 seconds.
(2) When the temperature is C ºC or higher, the compressor is stopped.
(3) When the outdoor heat exchanger temperature is in the range of A ~ B ºC, if the compressor command speed is been maintained and the operation has continued for more than 20 seconds at the same speed, it returns to the normal cooling operation.

(7) Cooling low outdoor temperature protective control

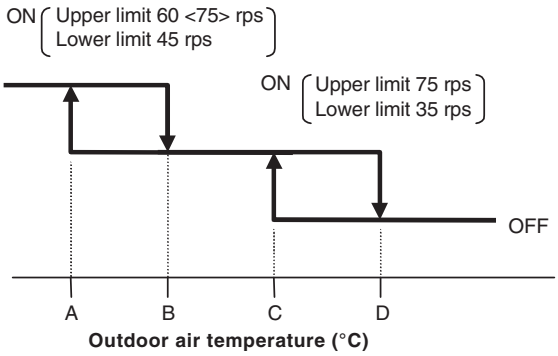
(a) Operating conditions: When the outdoor air temperature (TH2) is CºC or lower continues for 20 seconds while the compressor command speed is other than 0 rps.

(b) Detail of operation:

(i) The lower limit of the compressor command speed is set to 45 (35) rps and even if the speed becomes lower than 45 (35) rps, the speed is kept to 45 (35) rps. However, when the thermo OFF, the speed is reduced to 0 rps.

(ii) The upper limit of the compressor command speed is set to 60 <75> (75) rps and even if the calculated result becomes higher than that after fuzzy calculation, the speed is kept to 60 <75> (75) rps.

Notes (1) Values in ( ) are for outdoor air temperature is C or D
(2) Values in < > are for the model FDC90



● Values of A, B, C, D
Model FDC71VNP

	Outdoor air temp. (˚C)			
	A	B	C	D
First time	9	11	22	25
After the second time	16	19	25	28

Model FDC90VNP

Outdoor air temp. (˚C)			
A	B	C	D
9	11	22	25

(iii) Reset conditions: When either of the following condition is satisfied

1) The outdoor air temperature (TH2) is D ºC or higher.

2) The compressor command speed is 0 rps.

(8) Heating high pressure control

(a) Start condition: When the indoor heat exchanger temperature (ThI-R1, R2) has risen to a specified temperature while the compressor is turned on.

(b) Compressor command speed is controlled according to the zones of indoor heat exchanger temperature as shown by the following table.

	ThI-R < P1	P1 ≦ ThI-R < P2	P2 ≦ ThI-R < P3	P3 ≦ ThI-R
Protection control speed (NP)	Normal	Retention	NP−4rps	NP−8rps
Sampling time (s)	Normal	10	10	10

Model FDC71VNP Unit: °C

NP \ ThI-R	P1	P2	P3
10 ≦ NP < 50	45	52	54.5
50 ≦ NP < 115	45	52	57
115 ≦ NP < 120	45 ~ 43	52 ~ 50	57 ~ 55
120 ≦ NP	43	50	55

Model FDC90VNP Unit: °C

NP \ ThI-R	P1	P2	P3
10 ≦ NP < 90	45	52	57
90 ≦ NP < 120	45 ~ 43	52 ~ 45	57 ~ 48
120 ≦ NP	43	45	48

(9) Heating overload protective control

(a) Operating conditions : When the outdoor air temperature (TH2) is 13ºC or higher continues for 30 seconds while the compressor command speed is other than 0 rps.

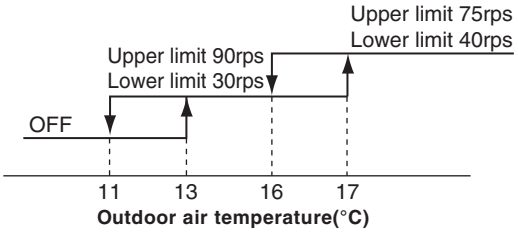
(b) Detail of operation

(i) Taking the upper limit of compressor command speed range at 90(75)rps, if the output speed obtained with the fuzzy calculation exceeds the upper limit, the upper limit value is maintained.

(ii) The lower limit of compressor command speed is set to 30(40)rps and even if the calculated result becomes lower than that after fuzzy calculation, the speed is kept to 30(40)rps. However, when the thermo OFF, the speed is reduced to 0 prs

Note (1) Values in ( ) are for outdoor air temperature at 17ºC.

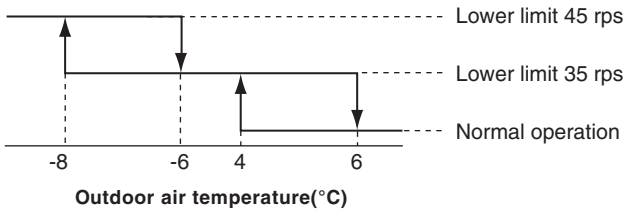
(c) Reset conditions: The outdoor air temperature (TH2) is lower than 11ºC



(10) Heating low outdoor temperature protective control

(a) Operating conditions: When the outdoor air temperature (TH2) is 4ºC or lower continues for 30 seconds while the compressor command speed is other than 0 rps.

(b) Detail of operation: The lower limit compressor command speed is change as shown in the figure below.



(c) Reset conditions: When either of the following condition is satisfied.

(i) The outdoor air temperature (TH2) is higher than 6ºC

(ii) The compressor command speed is 0 rps.

(iii) Compressor protection start II is activate.

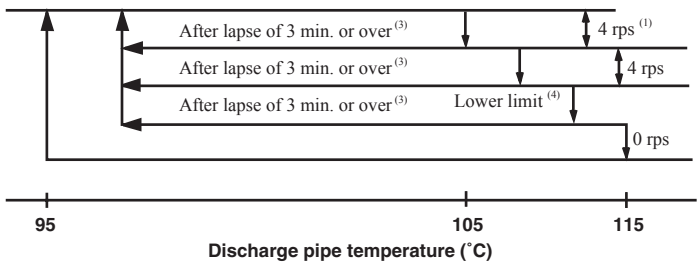
(11) Compressor overheat protection

(a) Purpose: It is designed to prevent deterioration of oil, burnout of motor coil and other trouble resulting from the compressor overheat.

(b) Detail of operation

(i) Speeds are controlled with temperature detected by the sensor mounted on the discharge pipe.

(Example) Fuzzy



Notes (1) When the discharge pipe temperature is in the range of 105~115ºC, the speed is reduced by 4 rps.

(2) When the discharge pipe temperature is raised and continues operation for 20 seconds without changing, then the speed is reduced again by 4 rps.

(3) If the discharge pipe temperature is in the range of 95~105ºC even when the compressor command speed is maintained for 3 minutes when the temperature is in the range of 95~105ºC, the speed is raised by 1 rps and kept at that speed for 3 minutes. This process is repeated until the command speed is reached.

(4) Lower limit speed

	Cooling	Heating
Lower limit speed	25 rps	32 rps

(ii) If the temperature of 115ºC is detected by the sensor on the discharge pipe, then the compressor will stop immediately. When the discharge pipe temperature drops and the time delay of 3 minutes is over, the unit starts again within 1 hour but there is no start at the third time.

(12) Current safe

(a) Purpose: Current is controlled not to exceed the upper limit of the setting operation current.

(b) Detail of operation: Input current to the converter is monitored with the current sensor fixed on the printed circuit board of the outdoor unit and, if the operation current value reaches the limiting current value, the compressor command speed is reduced.

If the mechanism is actuated when the compressor command speed is less than 30 rps, the compressor is stopped immediately. Operation starts again after a delay time of 3 minutes.

(13) Current cut

(a) Purpose: Inverter is protected from overcurrent.

(b) Detail of operation: Output current from the inverter is monitored with a shunt resistor and, if the current exceeds the setting value, the compressor is stopped immediately. Operation starts again after a delay time of 3 minutes.

(14) Outdoor unit failure

This is a function for determining when there is trouble with the outdoor unit during air conditioning.

The compressor is stopped if any one of the following in item (a), (b) is satisfied. Once the unit is stopped by this function, it is not restarted.

(a) When the input current is measured at 1 A or less for 3 continuous minutes or more.

(b) If the outdoor unit sends a 0 rps signal to the indoor unit 3 times or more within 20 minutes of the power being turned on.

(15) Serial signal transmission error protection

(a) Purpose: Prevents malfunction resulting from error on the indoor ↔ outdoor signals.

(b) Detail of operation: If the compressor is operating and a serial signal cannot be received from the indoor control with outdoor control having serial signals continues for 7 minute and 35 seconds, the compressor is stopped.

After the compressor has been stopped, it will be restarted after the compressor start delay if a serial signal can be received again from the indoor control.

(16) Rotor lock

If the motor for the compressor does not turn after it has been started, it is determined that a compressor lock has occurred and the compressor is stopped.

(17) Refrigeration cycle system protection

(a) Starting conditions

(i) When S minutes have elapsed after the compressor ON or the completion of the defrost control

(ii) Other than the defrost control

(iii) When, after meeting the conditions of (i) and (ii) above, the compressor speed, indoor air temperature (ThI-A) and indoor heat exchanger temperature (ThI-R) have met the conditions in the following table for 5 minutes:

Operation mode		S (min)	Compressor speed (N)	Indoor air temperature (ThI-A)	Indoor air temperature (ThI-A)/ Indoor heat exchanger temperature (ThI-R)
Cooling		5	40≦N	10≦ThI-A≦40	ThI-A−4<ThI-R
Heating	Except SRK series	9	40≦N	0≦ThI-A≦40	ThI-A+4>ThI-R
	SRK series	8	40≦N(TH2≧0°C) 60≦N(TH2<0°C)		ThI-A+6>ThI-R

(b) Contents of control

(i) When the conditions of (a) above are met, the compressor stops.

(ii) Error stop occurs when the compressor has stopped 3 times within 60 minutes.

(c) Resetting condition

When the compressor has been turned OFF

(18) Silent mode

As “Silent mode start” signal is received from the remote control, it operates by dropping the outdoor fan tap.

Model \ Item	Outdoor fan tap (Upper limit)
FDC71VNP	Cooling: 7th speed, Heating: 7th speed
FDC90VNP	Cooling: 7th speed, Heating: 5th speed

(19) Broken wire detection on temperature sensor

1) Outdoor unit heat exchanger sersor, outdoor air sensor

If the following is detected for 5 second continuously within 2 minutes to 2 minutes and 20 seconds after the compressor ON, the compressor stops. After a delay of 3 minutes, it restarts but, if the same is detected repeatedly 3 times within 40 minutes, the compressor stops with the anomalous stop. Or with in 20 seconds after power ON.

Note (1) During defrosting and for 3 minutes after the end of defrosting, it is not detected.

- Outdoor unit heat exchanger sensor: -55°C or lower
- Outdoor air temperature sensor: -55 or lower

2) Discharge pipe temperature sensor

If the following is detected for 5 second continuously within 10 minutes to 10 minutes and 20 seconds after the compressor ON, the compressor stops. After a delay of 3 minutes, it restarts but, if the same is detected repeatedly 3 times within 40 minutes, the compressor stops with the anomalous stop.

Note (1) During defrosting and for 3 minutes after the end of defrosting, it is not detected.

- Discharge pipe temperature sensor: -25°C or lower

2. MAINTENANCE DATA

2.1 FDT, FDEN, FDU, FDUM, FDF series

2.1.1 Diagnosing of microcomputer circuit

(1) Selfdiagnosis function

(a) Check indicator table

Whether a failure exists or not on the indoor unit can be know by the contents of remote control error code, indoor unit green LED (power pilot lamp and microcomputer normality pilot lamp) or red LED (check pilot lamp).

(i) Indoor unit

In case of these indoor unit errors, the outdoor control PCB Red LED stays OFF.

Remote control		Indoor control PCB		Location of trouble	Description of trouble	Repair method	Reference page
Error code	Red LED	Red LED	Green LED (1)				
No-indication	Stays OFF	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	—	• **Normal operation**	—	—
		Stays OFF	Stays OFF	Indoor unit power supply	• Power OFF, broken wire/blown fuse, broken transformer wire	Repair	73
		* 3-time flash	Keeps flashing	Remote control wires	• Poor connection, breakage of remote control wire * For wire breaking at power ON, the LED is OFF.	Repair	74
				Remote control	• Defective remote control PCB	Replacement of remote control	
WAIT or INSPECT I/U		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Indoor-outdoor units connection wire	• Poor connection, breakage of indoor-outdoor units connection wire	Repair	75 ～ 79
				Remote control	• Improper setting of master and slave by remote control		
E 1	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	* Keeps flashing	Remote control wires (Noise)	• **Poor connection of remote control signal wire (White)** * For wire breaking at power ON, the LED is OFF • **Intrusion of noise in remote control wire**	Repair	80
				Remote control indoor control PCB	*• Defective remote control or indoor control PCB (defective communication circuit)?	Replacement of remote control or PCB	
E 5		2-time flash	Keeps flashing	Indoor-outdoor units connection wire	• **Poor connection of wire between indoor-outdoor units during operation (disconnection, loose connection)** • **Anomalous communication between indoor-outdoor units by noise, etc.**	Repair	81
		2-time flash	Keeps flashing	(Noise)	• **CPU-runaway on outdoor sub PCB**	Power reset or Repair	
				Outdoor sub PCB	*• Occurrence of defective outdoor sub PCB on the way of power supply (defective communication circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
		2-time flash	Keeps flashing	Outdoor sub PCB	• **Defective outdoor sub PCB on the way of power supply**	Replacement	
				Fuse	• **Blown fuse**		
E 6		1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor	• **Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor**(defective element, broken wire, short-circuit) • Poor contact of temperature thermistor connector	Replacement, repair of temperature thermistor	82
				Indoor control PCB	*• **Defective indoor control PCB (Defective temperature thermistor input circuit)?**	Replacement of PCB	
E 7		1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Indoor return air temperature thermistor	• **Defective indoor return air temperature thermistor**(defective element, broken wire, short-circuit) • Poor contact of temperature thermistor connector	Replacement, repair of temperature thermistor	83
				Indoor control PCB	*• **Defective indoor control PCB (Defective temperature thermistor input circuit)?**	Replacement of PCB	
E 8		1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Installation or operating condition	• **Heating over-load** (Anomalously high indoor heat exchanger temperature)	Repair	84
				Indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor	• **Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor (short-circuit)**	Replacement of temperature thermistor	
				Indoor control PCB	*• **Defective indoor control PCB** (Defective temperature thermistor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E 9		1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Drain trouble	• **Defective drain pump (DM), broken drain pump wire**, disconnected connector	Replacement, repair of DM	85
				Float switch	• **Anomalous float switch operation** (malfunction)	Repair	
				Indoor control PCB	*• **Defective indoor control PCB** (Defective float switch input circuit) *• **Defective indoor control PCB** (Defective DM drive output circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
				Option	• **Defective optional parts** (At optional anomalous input setting)	Repair	
E 10		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Number of connected indoor units	• **When multi-unit control by remote control is performed, the number of units is over**	Repair	86
E 11		Keeps flashing	Keeps flashing	Address setting error	• Address setting error of indoor units	Repaie	87
E 14		3-time flash	Keeps flashing	Indoor unit No. setting	• No master is assigned to slaves.	Repair	88
				Rcmote control wires	• Anomalous remote control wire connection. broken wire between master and slave units		
E 16		1(2)-time flash	Keeps flashing	Fan motor	• **Defective fan motor**	Replacement, repair	89
				Indoor power PCB	• **Defective indoor power PCB**	Replacement	
E 18		1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Address setting error	• Address setting error of master and slave indoor units	Repair	90
E 19		1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Indoor control PCB	• **Improper operation mode setting**	Repair	91

Remote control		Indoor control PCB		Location of trouble	Description of trouble	Repair method	Reference page
Error code	Red LED	Red LED	Green LED (1)				
E20	Keeps flashing	1(2)-time flash	Keeps flashing	Fan motor	**• Defective by rotation speed of fan motor**	Replacement, repair	92
				Indoor power PCB	**• Defective indoor power PCB**	Replacement	
E21		1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Panel switch detection	• Defective panel switch operation (FDT only)	Repair	93
E28		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Remote control temperature thermistor	• Broken wire of remote control temperature thermistor	Repair	94

Notes (1) **Normal indicator lamp (Indoor unit: Green) extinguishes (or lights continuously) only when CPU is anomalous. It keeps flashing in any trouble other than anomalous CPU.**

(2) * mark in the description of trouble means that, in ordinary diagnosis, it cannot identify the cause definitely, and, if the trouble is repaired by replacing the part, it is judged consequently that the replaced part was defective.

(ii) Outdoor unit

Remote control		Indoor control PCB		Outdoor control PCB	Location of trouble	Description of trouble	Repair method	Reference page
Error code	Red LED	Red LED	Green LED	Red LED				
E35	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	2-time flash	Installation, operation status	• Higher outdoor heat exchanger temperature	Repair	95
					Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor	• Defective outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor	Replacement, repair of temperature sensor	
					Outdoor main PCB	*• Defective outdoor main PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E36		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	5-time flash	Installation, operation status	• Higher discharge temperature	Repair	96
					Discharge pipe temperature sensor	• Defective discharge pipe temperature sensor	Replacement, repair of temperature sensor	
					Outdoor main PCB	*• Defective outdoor main PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E37		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	8-time flash	Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor	• Defective outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor, broken wire or poor connector connection	Replacement, repair of temperature sensor	97
					Outdoor main PCB	*• Defective outdoor main PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E38		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	8-time flash	Outdoor air temperature sensor	• Defective outdoor air temperature sensor, broken wire or poor connector connection	Replacement, repair of temperature sensor	98
					Outdoor main PCB	*• Defective outdoor main PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E39		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	8-time flash	Discharge pipe temperature sensor	• Defective discharge pipe temperature sensor, broken wire or poor connector connection	Replacement, repair of temperature sensor	99
					Outdoor main PCB	*• Defective outdoor main PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E40		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	4-time flash	Installation, operation status	• Service valve (gas side) closing operation	Replacement	100
E42		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Outdoor main PCB, compressor	• Current cut (Anomalous compressor over-current)	Replacement of PCB	101・102
					Installation, operation status	• Service valve closing operation	Repair	
E47		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash 2-time flash	Outdoor main PCB	• Over voltage • Defective active filter	Repair PCB replacement	103
E48		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	ON	Fan motor	• Defective fan motor	Replacement	104
					Outdoor main PCB	• Defective outdoor main PCB		
E51		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Power transistor error (outdoor main PCB)	• Power transistor error	Replacement of PCB	105
E57		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	2-time flash	Operation status	• Shortage in refrigerant quantity	Repair	106
					Installation status	• Service valve closing operation	Service valve opening check	
E58		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	3-time flash	• Overload operation • Overcharge • Compressor locking	• Current safe stop	Replacement	107
E59		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	2-time flash	Compressor, outdoor main PCB	• Anomalous compressor startup • Voltage drop	Replacement	108
E60		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	7-time flash	Compressor	• Anomalous compressor rotor lock	Replacement	109
⏻WAIT⏻or INSPECT I/U		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	6-time flash	indoor-outdoor connection wire	• Poor connection, breakage of indoor-outdoor units connection wire	Repair	—

Note (1) * mark in the description of trouble means that, in ordinary diagnosis, it cannot identify the cause definitely, and, if the trouble is repaired by replacing the part, it is judged consequently that the replaced part was defective.

(iv) Display sequence of error codes or inspection indicator lamps

■ **Occurrence of one kind of error**

Displays are shown respectively according to errors.

■ **Occurrence of plural kinds of error**

Section	Category of display
Error code on remote control	• Displays the error of higher priority (When plural errors are persisting) E15 ·····E10>E35>·····E60 • Displays the present errors. (When a new error has occurred after the former error was reset.)
Red LED on indoor control PCB	
Red LED on outdoor main PCB	

■ **Error detecting timing**

Section	Error description	Error code	Error detecting timing
Indoor	Drain trouble (Float switch activated)	E9	Whenever float switch is activated after 30 second had past since power ON.
	Communication error at initial operation	"WAIT"	No communication between indoor and outdoor units is established at initial operation.
	Remote control communication circuit error	E1	Communication between indoor unit and remote control is interrupted for mote than 2 minutes continuously after initial communication was established.
	Communication error during operation	E5	Communication between indoor and outdoor units is interrupted for mote than 2 minutes continuously after initial communication was established.
	Excessive number of connected indoor units by controlling with one remote control	E10	Whenever excessively connected indoor units is detected after power ON.
	Return air temperature thermistor anomaly	E7	-50°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 60 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous temperature.
	Indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor anomaly	E6	-50°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 60 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous temperature. Or 70°C or higher is detected for 5 seconds continuously.
Outdoor	Outdoor air temperature sensor anomaly	E38	-55°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous sensor. Or -55°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 20 seconds after power ON.
	Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor anomaly	E37	-55°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous sensor. Or -55°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 20 seconds after power ON.
	Discharge pipe temperature sensor anomaly	E39	-25°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous sensor.

■ **Error log and reset**

Error indicator	Memorized error log	Reset
Remote control display	• Higher priority error is memorized.	• Stop the unit by pressing the ON/OFF switch of remote control. • If the unit has recovered from anomaly, it can be operated.
Red LED on indoor control PCB	• Not memorized.	
Red LED on outdoor main PCB	• Memorizes a mode of higher priority.	

■ **Resetting the error log**

• Resetting the memorized error log in the remote control

Holding down "CHECK" button, press "TIMER" button to reset the error log memorized in the remote control.

• Resetting the memorized error log in the indoor unit

The remote control transmits error log erase command to the indoor unit when "VENTI" button is pressed while holding down "CHECK" button.

Receiving the command, the indoor unit erase the log and answer the status of no error.

(2) Troubleshooting procedure

When any trouble has occurred, inspect as follows. Details of respective inspection method will be described on later pages.

Trouble → Confirmation of power supply (Indoor/ outdoor unit) → Confirmation of remote control and LEDs on the PCB of indoor unit and outdoor unit (Indoor/ outdoor unit, remote control) → Check of the anomalous operation data on the remote control → Inspection of the unit/ control → Replacement/ repair of faulty part, test run, adjustment

(3) Troubleshooting at the indoor unit

With the troubleshooting, find out any defective part by checking the voltage (AC, DC), resistance, etc. at respective connectors at around the indoor PCB, according to the inspection display or operation status of unit (the compressor does not run, fan does not run, the 4-way valve does not switch, etc.), and replace or repair in the unit of following part.

(a) Replacement part related to indoor PCB's

Control PCB, power supply PCB, temperature thermistor (return air, indoor heat exchanger), remote control switch and fuse

Note (1) With regard to parts of high voltage circuits and refrigeration cycle, judge it according to ordinary inspection methods.

(b) Instruction of how to replace indoor control PCB

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the replacement in order to protect yourself.
- The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, WARNING and CAUTION.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.

⚠ WARNING	Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
⚠ CAUTION	Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.

- After completing the replacement, do commissioning to confirm there are no anomaly.

⚠ WARNING

- Replacement should be performed by the specialist.
  If you replace the PCB by yourself, it may lead to serious trouble such as electric shock or fire.
- Replace the PCB correctly according to these instructions.
  Improper replacement may cause electric shock or fire.
- Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.
  Replacement during the applying the current would cause the electric shock, unit failure or improper running.
  It would cause the damage of connected equipment such as fan motor,etc.
- Fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely so as not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire.
- Check the connection of wiring to PCB correctly before turning on the power, after replacement.
  Defectiveness of replacement may cause electric shock or fire.

⚠ CAUTION

- In connecting connector onto the PCB, connect not to deform the PCB. It may cause breakage or malfunction.
- Insert connecter securely, and hook stopper. It may cause fire or improper running.
- Bundle the cables together so as not to be pinched or be tensioned. It may cause malfunction or electric shock for disconnection or deformation.

(i) Model FDT, FDU, FDUM series

PSB012D990B

1) Control PCB

Replace and set up the PCB according to this instruction.

① Set to an appropriate address and function using switch on PCB.

Select the same setting with the removed PCB.

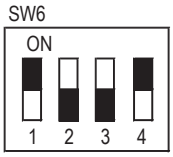
item	switch	Content of control	
Address	SW2	Plural indoor units control by 1 remote control	
Test run	SW7-1	—	Normal
		○	Operation check/drain motor test run

○:ON —:OFF

② Set to an appropriate capacity using the model selector switch(SW6).

Select the same capacity with the PCB removed from the unit.

SW6	-1	-2	-3	-4
71V	○	—	—	○
100V	○	○	—	○



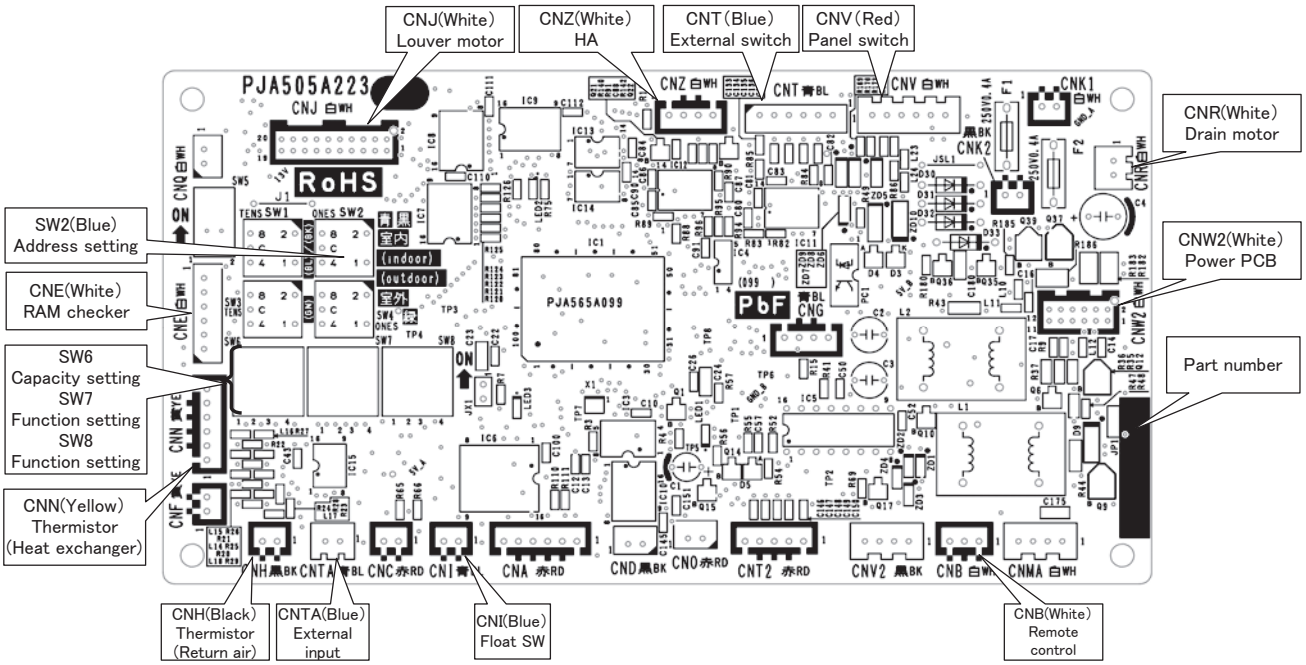
Example setting for 71V

③ Replace the PCB

1. Exchange PCB after detaching all connectors connected with the PCB.
2. Fix the PCB so as not to pitch the wiring.
3. Connect connectors to the PCB. Match the wiring connector to the connector color on the PCB and connect it.

④ Control PCB

Parts mounting are different by the kind of PCB.



2) Power PCB

Model FDT, FDUM series

This PCB is a general PCB. Replace the PCB according to this instruction.

① Replace the PCB

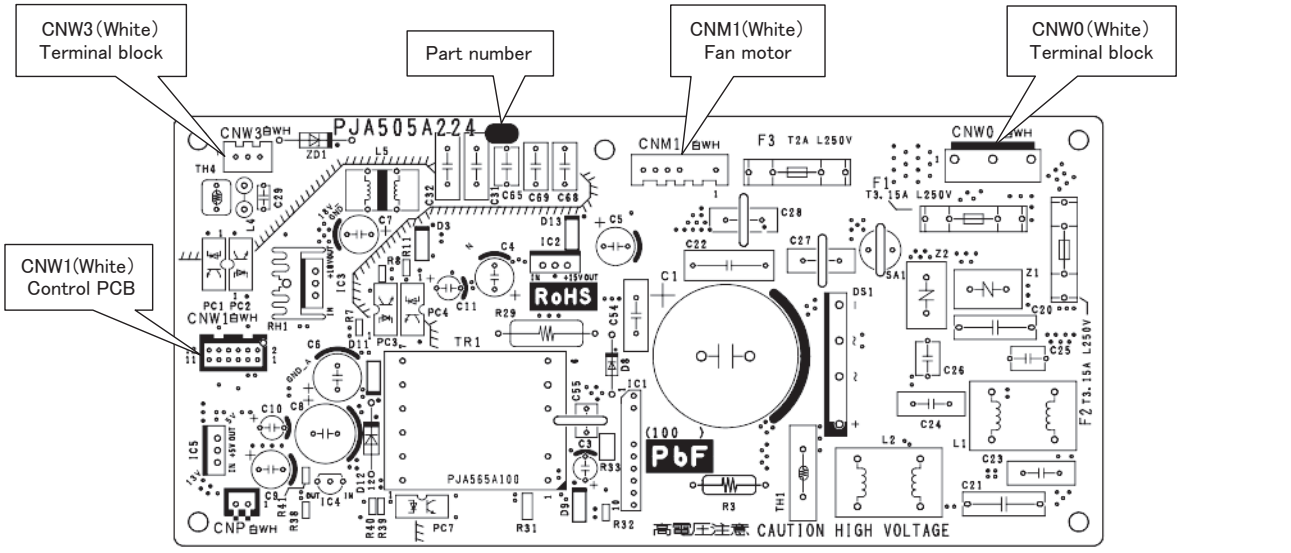
1. Unscrew terminal of the wiring(yellow/green) connected to Terminal block (CNWO) from the box.
2. Replace the PCB only after all the wirings connected to the connector are removed.
3. Fix the board such that it will not pinch any of the wires.
4. Reconnect the wirings to the PCB. Wiring connector color should match with the color of connector of the PCB.
5. Screw back the terminal of wiring, that was removed in 1.

② Power PCB

Parts mounting are different by the kind of PCB.

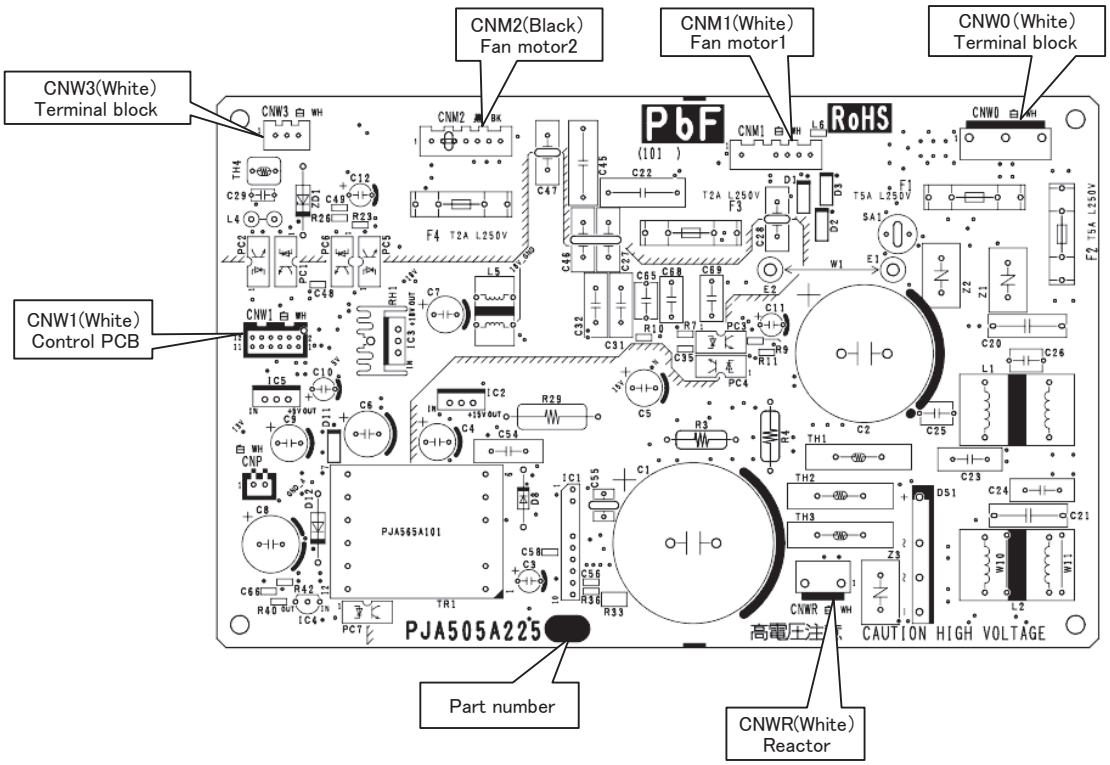
• Models FDT71, 100VF1

PSB012D992



• Models FDUM71, 100VF1

PSB012D993



Model FDU series

PSC012D021

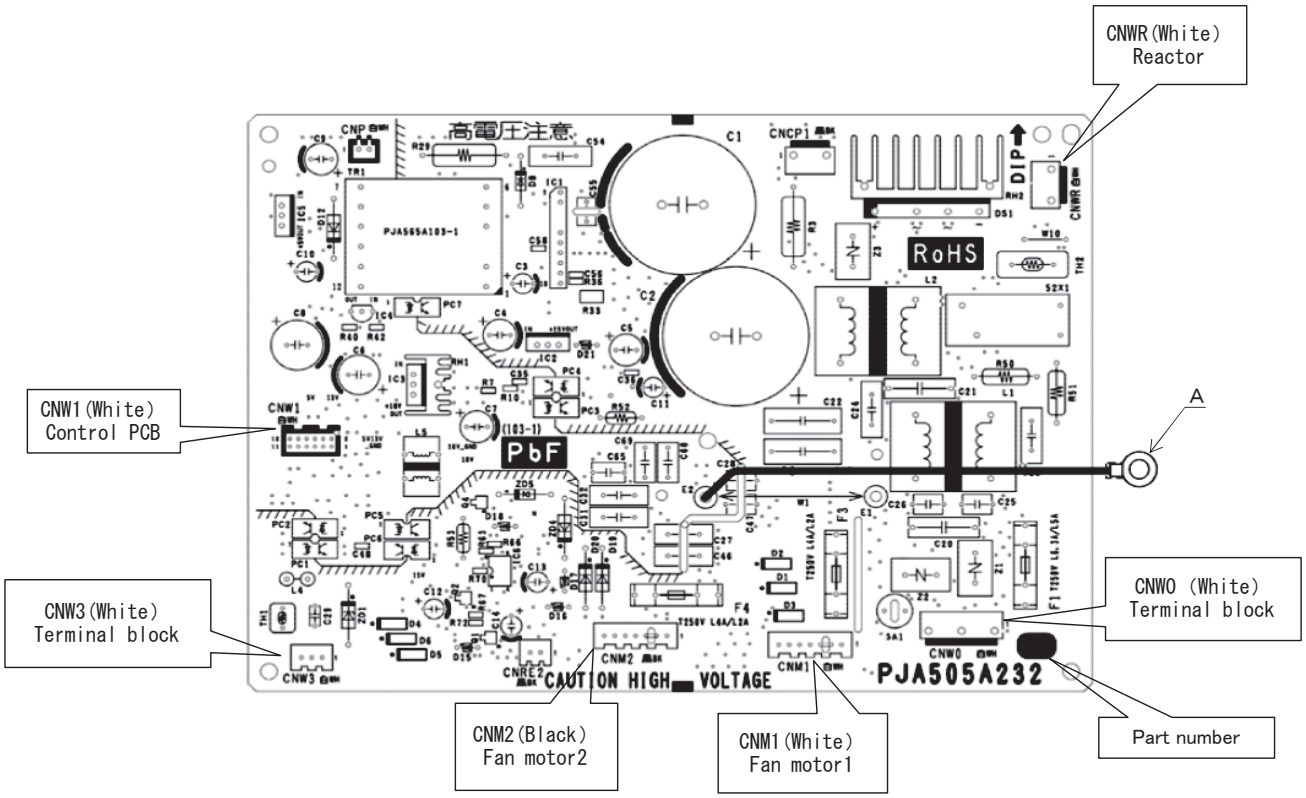
This PCB is a general PCB. Replace the PCB according to this instruction.

1) Replace the PCB

a) Unscrew terminal(Arrow A) of the "E2" wiring(yellow/green) that is connected to PCB.
b) Replace the PCB only after all the wirings connected to the connector are removed.
c) Fix the board such that it will not pinch any of the wires.
d) Reconnect the wirings to the PCB. Wiring connector color should match with the color of connector of the PCB.
e) Screw back the terminal(Arrow A) of the "E2" wiring, that was removed in 1.

2) Power PCB

Parts mounting are different by the kind of PCB.



(ii) Model FDEN series

PSB01ZD974C

Replace and set up the PCB according to this instruction.

① Set to an appropriate address and function using switch on PCB.

1. There is a unit having plural applicable PCB depending on a model.
2. Set the function setting corresponding the spare PCB and the applicable model.
3. Do "Setting according to the model *1" refer to "⑤ Function setting of wired remote control" after turning on the power source when using wired remote control

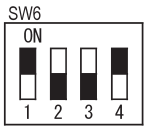
item	switch	Content of control	
Address	SW2	Plural indoor units control by 1 remote control	
Test run	SW7-1	—	Normal
		○	Operation check/drain motor test run

○ : ON — : OFF

② Set to an appropriate capacity using the model selector switch(SW6).

Select the same capacity with the PCB removed from the unit.

SW6	-1	-2	-3	-4
71V	○	—	—	○
100V	○	○	—	○



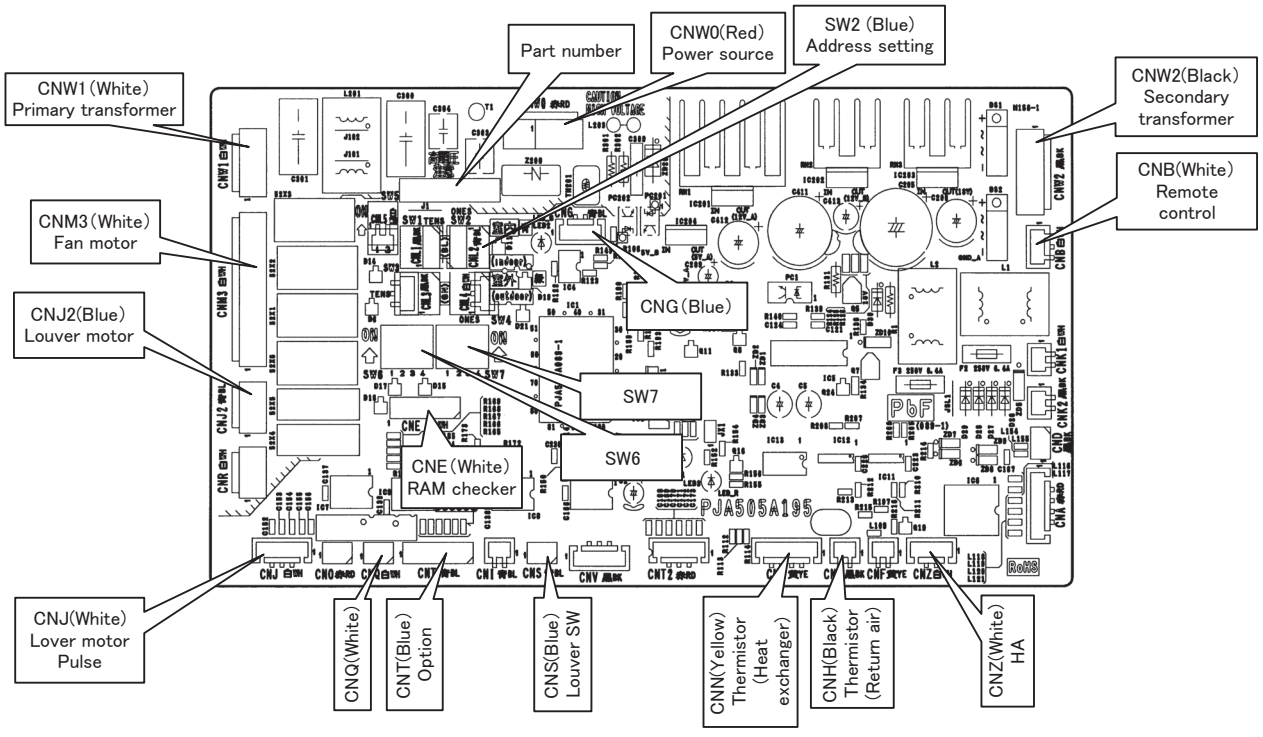
Example setting for 71V

③ Replace the PCB

1. Fix the PCB so as not to pitch the cords.
2. Connect connectors to the PCB. Connect a cable connector with the PCB connector of the same color.
3. Do not pass CPU surrounding about wirings.

④ Control PCB

Parts mounting are different by the kind of PCB.



PSB012D976C

(iii) Model FDF series

1) Control PCB

Replace and set up the PCB according to this instruction.

① Set to an appropriate address and function using switch on PCB.

Select the same setting with the removed PCB.

item	switch	Content of control	
Address	SW2	Plural indoor units control by 1 remote control	
Test run	SW7-1	—	Normal
		○	Operation check/drain motor test run

② Set to an appropriate capacity using the model selector switch(SW6).

Select the same capacity with the PCB removed from the unit.

SW6	-1	-2	-3	-4
71V	○	—	—	○
100V	○	○	—	○

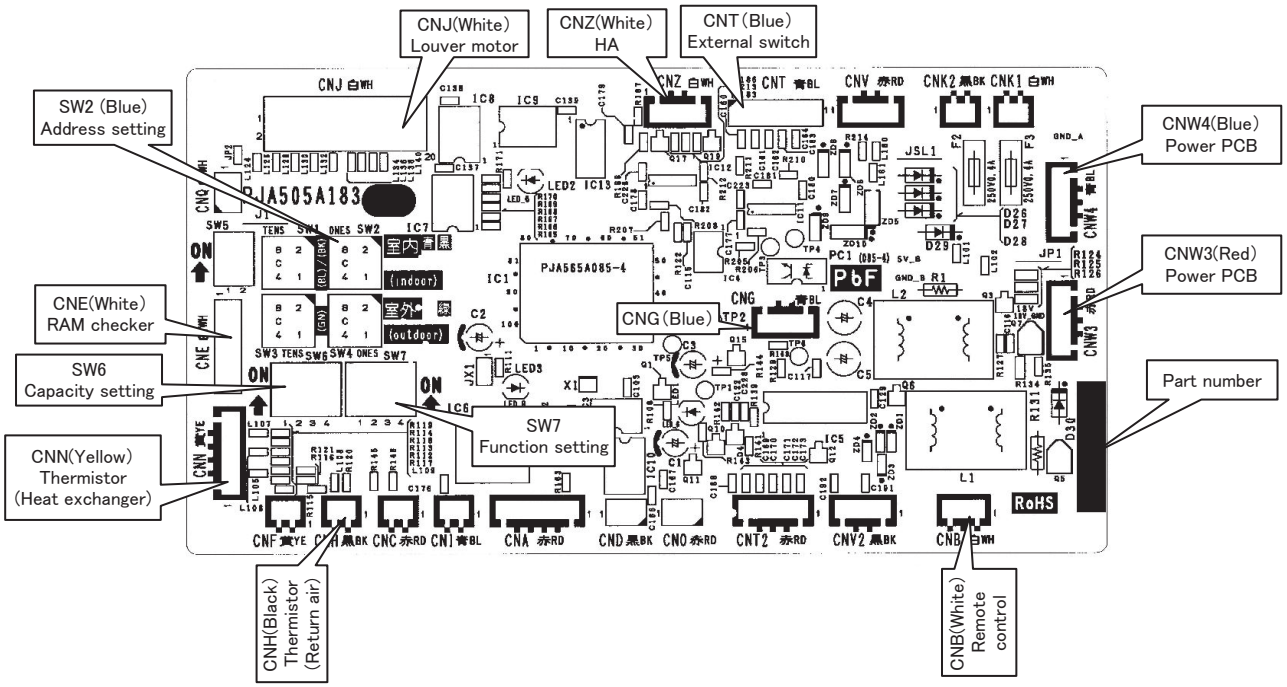
Example setting for 71V

③ Replace the PCB

1. Fix the PCB so as not to pitch the cords.
2. Connect connectors to the PCB. Connect a cable connector with the PCB connector of the same color.
3. Do not pass CPU surrounding about wirings.

④ Control PCB

Parts mounting are different by the kind of PCB.



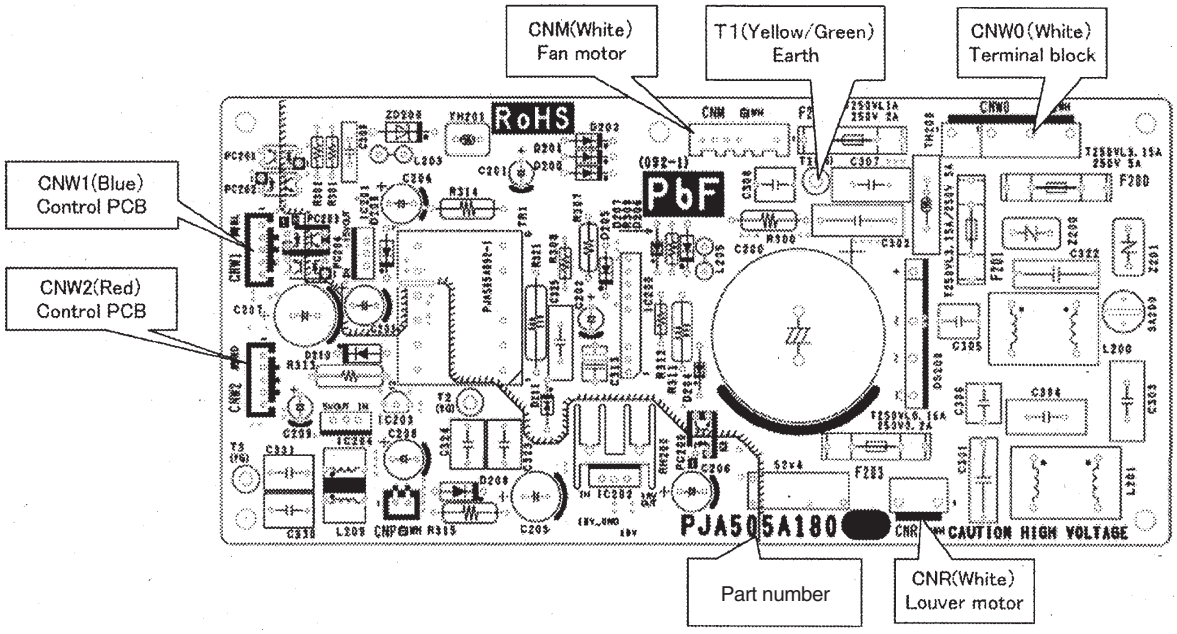
2) Power PCB

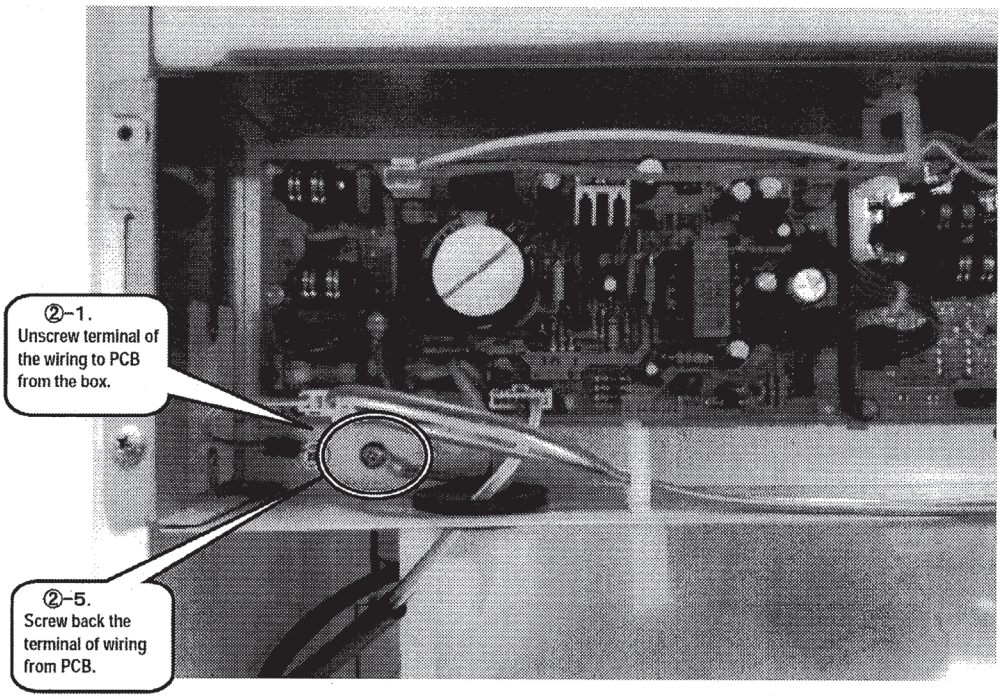
PSB012D953C

This PCB is a general PCB. Replace the PCB according to this instruction.

Replace the PCB

1. Unscrew terminal of the wiring(yellow/green) soldered to PCB from the box.
2. Replace the PCB only after all the wirings connected to the connector are removed.
3. Fix the board such that it will not pinch any of the wires.
4. Reconnect the wirings to the PCB. Wiring connector color should match with the color of connector of the PCB.
5. Screw back the terminal of wiring (yellow/green) from PCB(T1), that was removed in 1.
   In that case, do not place the crimping part of the wiring under the PCB.





●DIP switch setting list

Switches	Description		Default setting		Remarks
SW2	Address No. setting at plural indoor units control by 1 R/C		0		0-F
SW5-1	Reserved		OFF		keep OFF
SW5-2	Reserved		OFF		keep OFF
SW6-1 SW6-2 SW6-3 SW6-4	Model selection		As per model		See table 1
SW7-1	Test run, Drain motor	Normal*/Test run	OFF	Normal	
SW7-2	Reserved		OFF		keep OFF
SW7-3	Powerful mode	Valid*/Invalid	ON	Valid	
SW7-4	Reserved		OFF		keep OFF
SW8-1	Reserved		OFF		keep OFF
SW8-2	Reserved		OFF		keep OFF
SW8-3	Reserved		OFF		keep OFF
SW8-4	Reserved		OFF		keep OFF
JSL1	Superlink terminal spare	Normal*/switch to spare	With		

Note (1) : SW8 : FDT, FDU, FDUM only. * Default setting

Table 1: Indoor unit model selection with SW6-1-SW6-4

0: OFF 1:ON

	71V	100V
SW6-1	1	1
SW6-2	0	1
SW6-3	0	0
SW6-4	1	1

(4) Troubleshooting at the outdoor unit

When troubleshooting the outdoor unit, firstly assess the overview of malfunction and try to presume the cause and the faulty part by checking the error code dispalyed on the remote control and flashing pattern of indicator lamps (Red LED), and then proceed further inspection and remedy it.

Self-diagnosis system by microcomputor on indoor and outdoor PCB can assist to find the cause of malfunction smoothly by making a diagnosis of not only the anomaly of microcomutor, but also the anomaly in power supply system, installation space, overload resulting from improper charging amount of refrigerant and etc.

Unless the power is reset, the error log is saved in memory and the inspection indicator lamps on outdoor PCB keep flashing after automatical recovering from malfunction.

After automatical recovering from malfunction, if any another error mode which has a higher priority than the previous error saved in memory occurs, it is overwritten in memory and is displayed.

[Reset of power supply]

Be sure to avoid electrical shock, when replacing or checking the outdoor PCB, because some voltage is still retained in the electrolytic capacitor on the PCB even after shutting down the power supply to the outdoor unit.

Be sure to start repairing work, after confirming that the Red LED on the PCB has been extiguished for more than 10 seconds after more than 3 minutes had been passed since power shut down, and reconfirming that voltage has been discharged sufficiently by measuring the voltage (DC) between both terminals of electrolytic capacitor (C58) (Measurment of voltage may be disturbed by the moisture-proof coating. In such case, remove the coating and measure it by taking care of avoiding electrical shock)

(a) Module of part to be replaced for outdoor unit control

Outdoor main PCB, Outdoor sub PCB, Temperature sensor (of outdoor heat exchanger, discharge pipe, outdoor air), Fuses (for power supply and main PCB)

(b) Replacement procedure of outdoor control PCB

Precautions for Safety

- Since the following precaution is the important contents for safety, be sure to observe them. WARNING and CAUTION are described as follows:

⚠WARNING Indicates an imminently hazardous situation which will result in death or serious injury if proper safety procedures and instructions are not adhered to.

⚠CAUTION Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which may result in minor or moderate injury if proper safety procedures and instructions are not adhered to.

⚠ WARNING

- Securely replace the PCB according to this procedure. If the PCB is incorrectly replaced, it will cause an electric shock or fire.
- Be sure to check that the power source for the outdoor unit is turned OFF before replacing the PCB. The PCB replacement under current-carrying will cause an electric shock or fire.
- After finishing the PCB replacement, check that wiring is correctly connected with the PCB before power distribution. If the PCB is incorrectly replaced, it will cause an electric shock or fire.

⚠ CAUTION

- Band the wiring so as not to tense because it will cause an electric shock.

Exchange the PCB(Main) according to the following procedures.

PSC012D029

1. Exchange the PCB (Main) after checking that the red LED (LED1) on the PCB (Main) goes out for 10 seconds or more after elapsing 3 minutes or more from power OFF. (Refer to Fig.1)
2. Open the lid, and measure DC voltage on both edges of electrolytic capacitor C58 and check that the voltage is discharged sufficiently. (Refer to Fig.2) (Since the capacitor is coated with prevention-of-moisture coating, the voltage may be hard to be measured. Remove the coating before measuring if required, taking care of an electric shock.)
3. Remove the PCB (Main) (Refer to Step.1 and Step.2), and disconnect the harness connected to the reactor, terminal block, etc., and disconnect the connectors connected to the PCB (Main) before exchanging the PCB. (Refer to Step.3) (Harness to be able to band together after PCB exchange with tie wrap bands.)
4. Connect the harness and connectors with the PCB (Main) and the PCB (Sub). (Confirm the **connectors are not half inserted**.)

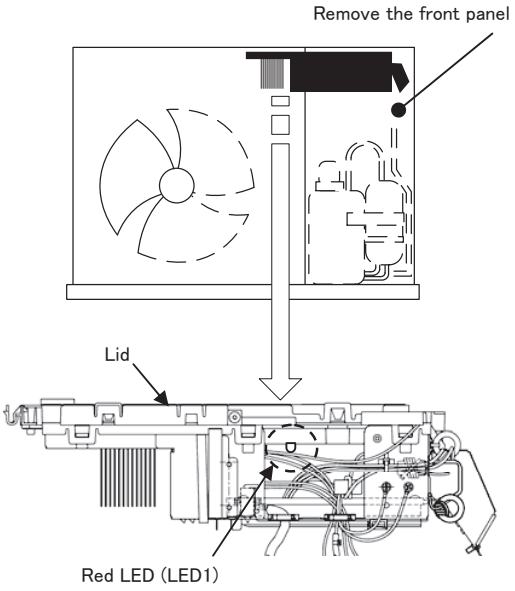


Fig.1 Location of LED

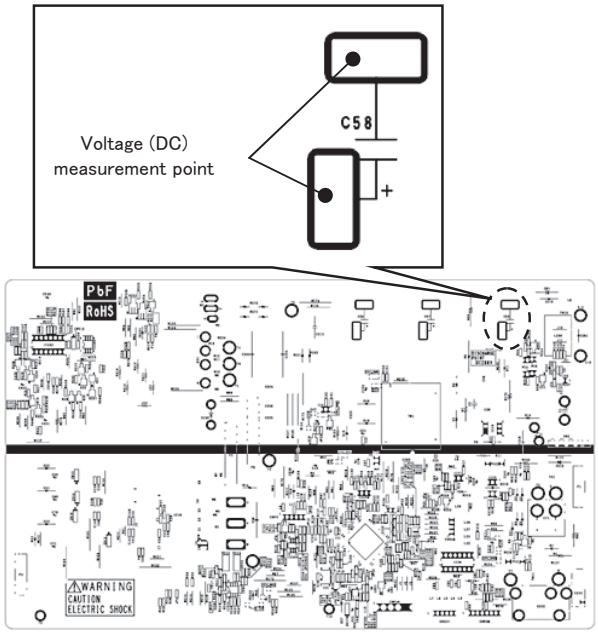


Fig.2 Voltage measurement point
(Solder face of PCB (Main))

Step.1 After removing the screws,raises the PCB (Main) as shown in the Fig.3.

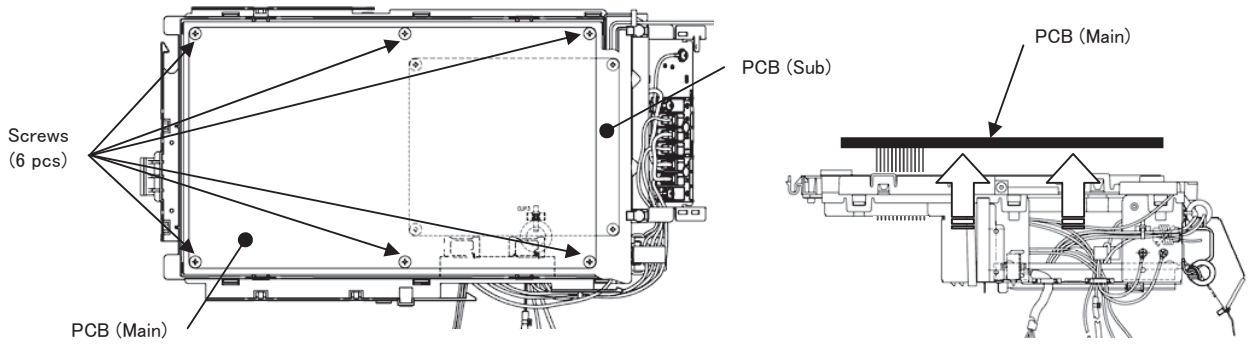


Fig.3 Upside view and removal method of PCB(Main)

Step.2 Disconnect the connectors and remove the band (when there is a band) as shown in the Fig.4-1 and Fig.4-2.

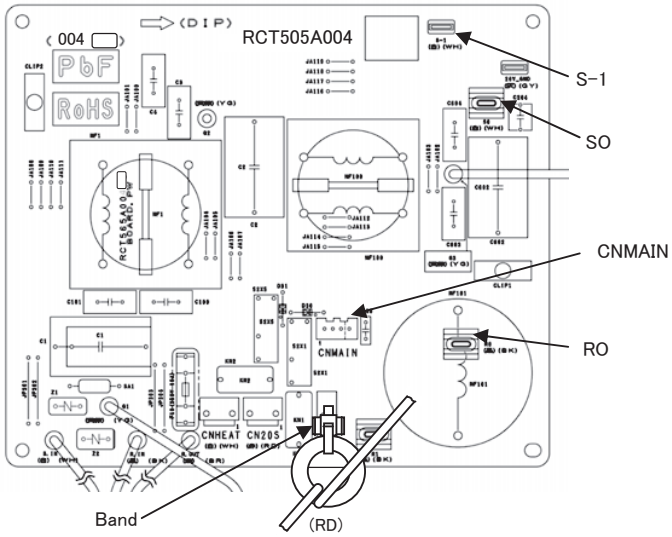


Fig.4-1 Parts arrangement view (PCB (Sub))

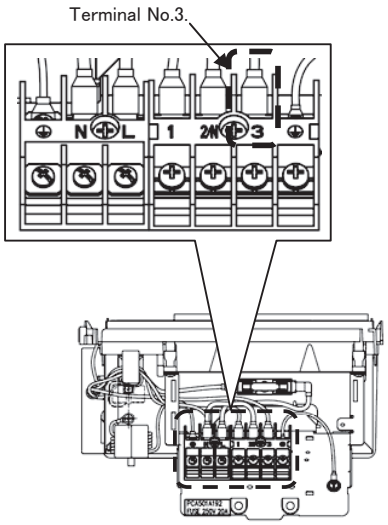


Fig.4-2 Terminal block side view

Step.3 Disconnect the connectors from PCB (Main).

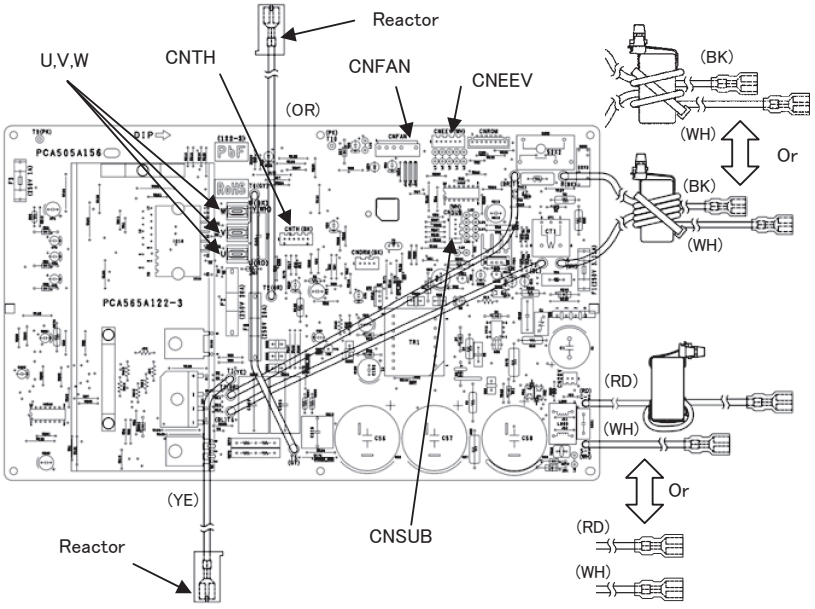


Fig.5 Parts arrangement view (Parts face of PCB (Main))

(5) Check of anomalous operation data with the remote control

(a) In case of RC-E5 remote control

Operation data can be checked with remote control unit operation.

① Press the CHECK button.
The display change " OPER DATA ▼ "

② Press the ○ (SET) button while " OPER DATA ▼ " is displayed.

③ When only one indoor unit is connected to remote control, " DATA LOADING " is displayed (blinking indication during data loading).
Next, operation data of the indoor unit will be displayed. Skip to step ⑦.

④ When plural indoor units is connected, the smallest address number of indoor unit among all connected indoor unit is displayed.
[Example]:
" SELECT I/U " (blinking 1 seconds) → " I/U000 ▲ " blinking.

⑤ Select the indoor unit number you would like to have data displayed with the ▲ ▼ button.

⑥ Determine the indoor unit number with the ○ (SET) button.
(The indoor unit number changes from blinking indication to continuous indication)
" I/U000 " (The address of selected indoor unit is blinking for 2 seconds.)
↓
" DATA LOADING " (A blinking indication appears while data loaded.)
Next, the operation data of the indoor unit is indicated.

⑦ Upon operation of the ▲ ▼ button, the current operation data is displayed in order from data number 01.
The items displayed are in the above table.
*Depending on models, the items that do not have corresponding data are not displayed.

Number		Data Item
01	※	(Operation Mode)
02	SET TEMP___℃	(Set Temperature)
03	RETURN AIR___℃	(Return Air Temperature)
04	SENSOR___℃	(Remote Control Thermistor Tempeature)
05	THI-R1___℃	(Indoor Heat Exchanger Thermistor / U Bend)
06	THI-R2___℃	(Indoor Heat Exchanger Thermistor /Capillary)
07	THI-R3___℃	(Indoor Heat Exchanger Thermistor /Gas Header)
08	I/U FANSPEED___	(Indoor Unit Fan Speed)
09	DEMAND___Hz	(Frequency Requirements)
10	ANSWER___Hz	(Response Frequency)
11	I/U EEV____P	(Pulse of Indoor Unit Expansion Value)
12	TOTAL I/U RUN____H	(Total Running Hours of The Indoor Unit)
21	OUTDOOR___℃	(Outdoor Air Temperature)
22	THO-R1___℃	(Outdoor Heat Exchanger Thermistor)
23	THO-R2___℃	(Outdoor Heat Exchanger Thermistor)
24	COMP___Hz	(Compressor Frequency)
25	HP___MPa	(High Pressure)
26	LP____MPa	(Low Pressure)
27	Td___℃	(Discharge Pipe Temperature)
28	COMP BOTTOM___℃	(Comp Bottom Temperature)
29	CT___AMP	(Current)
30	TARGET SH___℃	(Target Super Heat)
31	SH___℃	(Super Heat)
32	TDSH___℃	(Discharge Pipe Super Heat)
33	PROTECTION No.__	(Protection State No. of The Compressor)
34	O/U FANSPEED___	(Outdoor Unit Fan Speed)
35	63H1	(63H1 On/Off)
36	DEFROST	(Defrost Control On/Off)
37	TOTAL COMP RUN___H	(Total Running Hours of The Compressor)
38	O/U EEV1____P	(Pulse of The Outdoor Unit Expansion Valve EEVC)
39	O/U EEV2____P	(Pulse of The Outdoor Unit Expansion Valve EEVH)

⑧ To display the data of a different indoor unit, press the AIR CON NO. button, which allows you to go back to the indoor unit selection screen.

⑨ Pressing the ①ON/OFF button will stop displaying data.
Pressing the ⁄⁄ (RESET) button during remote control unit operation will undo your last operation and allow you to go back to the previous screen.

⊙If two (2) remote controls are connected to one (1) inside unit, only the master control is available for trial operation and confirmation of operation data. (The slave remote control is not available.)

●Details of Compressor protection status No. 33

No.	Contents of display	Reference page
"0"	Normal	
"1"	Discharge pipe temperature protection control	P42, (11). (b). (i)
"2"	Discharge pipe temperature anomaly	P42, (11). (b). (ii)
"3"	Current safe control of inverter primary current	P42, (12)
"4"	High pressure protection control	P40, (6). (c)
"5"	High pressure anomaly	P42, (11)
"8"	Anti-frost prevention control	
"9"	Current cut	P43, (13)
"11"	Power transistor anomaly (Overheat)	
"12"	Compression ratio control	
"13"	Spare	
"14"	Dewing prevention control	
"15"	Current safe control of inverter secondary current	
"16"	Stop by compressor rotor lock	
"17"	Stop by compressor startup failure	
"18"	Active filter anomaly	

Note(1) Operation data display on the remote control.
・Data is dispalyed until canceling the protection control.
・In case of multiple protections controlled, only the younger No. is displayed.
Note(2) Common item.
① In heating mode.
During protection control by the command signal for reducing compressor frequency from indoor unit, No. "4" is displayed.
② In cooling and dehumidifying mode.
During protection control by the command signal for reducing compressor frequency from indoor unit, No. "8" is displayed.

#

(b) In case of RC-EX1A remote control

[Operating procedure]

① On the TOP screen, touch the buttons in the order of "Menu" → "Next" → "Service & Maintenance" → "Service password" → "Set" → "Error display" → "Error history".

② When only one indoor unit is connected to the remote control, followings will be displayed.

1. When there is any anomaly: "Loading. Wait a while" is displayed, followed by the operation data at the occurrence of anomaly.

   Contents of display

   - Error code
   - Number and data item

2. When there is no anomaly: "No anomaly" is displayed, and this mode is terminated.

③ When two or more indoor units are connected to the remote control, followings will be displayed.

1. When there is any anomaly: If the unit having anomaly is selected on the "Select IU" screen, "Loading. Wait a while" is displayed, followed by the operation data at the occurrence of anomaly.

Contents of display

- Indoor unit No.
- Error code
- Number and data item

2. When there is no anomaly: "No anomaly" is displayed, ant this mode is terminated.

Note (1) When the number of connected units cannot be shown in a page, select "Next".

④ If you press [RUN/STOP] button, the display returns to the TOP screen.

◎ **If you touch "Back" button on the way of setting, the display returns to the last precious screen.**

Note (1) When two remote controls are used to control indoor units, the check of anomaly operation data can be made on the master remote control only. (It cannot be operated from the slave remote control.)

■ Anomaly operation data (Corresponding data may not be provided depending on models. Such items will not be displayed.)

Number		Data Item
01	❄	(Operation Mode)
02	SET TEMP ___℃	(Set Temperature)
03	RETURN AIR ___℃	(Return Air Temperature)
04	SENSOR ___℃	(Remote Control Thermistor Tempeature)
05	THI-R1 ___℃	(Indoor Heat Exchanger Thermistor / U Bend)
06	THI-R2 ___℃	(Indoor Heat Exchanger Thermistor /Capillary)
07	THI-R3 ___℃	(Indoor Heat Exchanger Thermistor /Gas Header)
08	I/U FANSPEED ___	(Indoor Unit Fan Speed)
09	DEMAND ___Hz	(Frequency Requirements)
10	ANSWER ___Hz	(Response Frequency)
11	I/U EEV ____P	(Pulse of Indoor Unit Expansion Value)
12	TOTAL I/U RUN ____H	(Total Running Hours of The Indoor Unit)
21	OUTDOOR ___℃	(Outdoor Air Temperature)
22	THO-R1 ___℃	(Outdoor Heat Exchanger Thermistor)
23	THO-R2 ___℃	(Outdoor Heat Exchanger Thermistor)
24	COMP ___Hz	(Compressor Frequency)
25	HP ____MPa	(High Pressure)
26	LP ____MPa	(Low Pressure)
27	Td ___℃	(Discharge Pipe Temperature)
28	COMP BOTTOM ___℃	(Comp Bottom Temperature)
29	CT ____AMP	(Current)
30	TARGET SH ___℃	(Target Super Heat)
31	SH ___℃	(Super Heat)
32	TDSH ___℃	(Discharge Pipe Super Heat)
33	PROTECTION No.__	(Protection State No. of The Compressor)
34	O/U FANSPEED ____	(Outdoor Unit Fan Speed)
35	63H1	(63H1 On/Off)
36	DEFROST	(Defrost Control On/Off)
37	TOTAL COMP RUN ____H	(Total Running Hours of The Compressor)
38	O/U EEV1 ____P	(Pulse of The Outdoor Unit Expansion Valve EEVC)
39	O/U EEV2 ____P	(Pulse of The Outdoor Unit Expansion Valve EEVH)

●Details of Compressor protection status No. 33

No.	Contents of display	Reference page
"0"	Normal	
"1"	Discharge pipe temperature protection control	P42, (11). (b). (i)
"2"	Discharge pipe temperature anomaly	P42, (11). (b). (ii)
"3"	Current safe control of inverter primary current	P42, (12)
"4"	High pressure protection control	P40, (6). (c)
"5"	High pressure anomaly	P42, (11)
"8"	Anti-frost prevention control	
"9"	Current cut	P43, (13)
"11"	Power transistor anomaly (Overheat)	
"12"	Compression ratio control	
"13"	Spare	
"14"	Dewing prevention control	
"15"	Current safe control of inverter secondary current	
"16"	Stop by compressor rotor lock	
"17"	Stop by compressor startup failure	
"18"	Active filter anomaly	

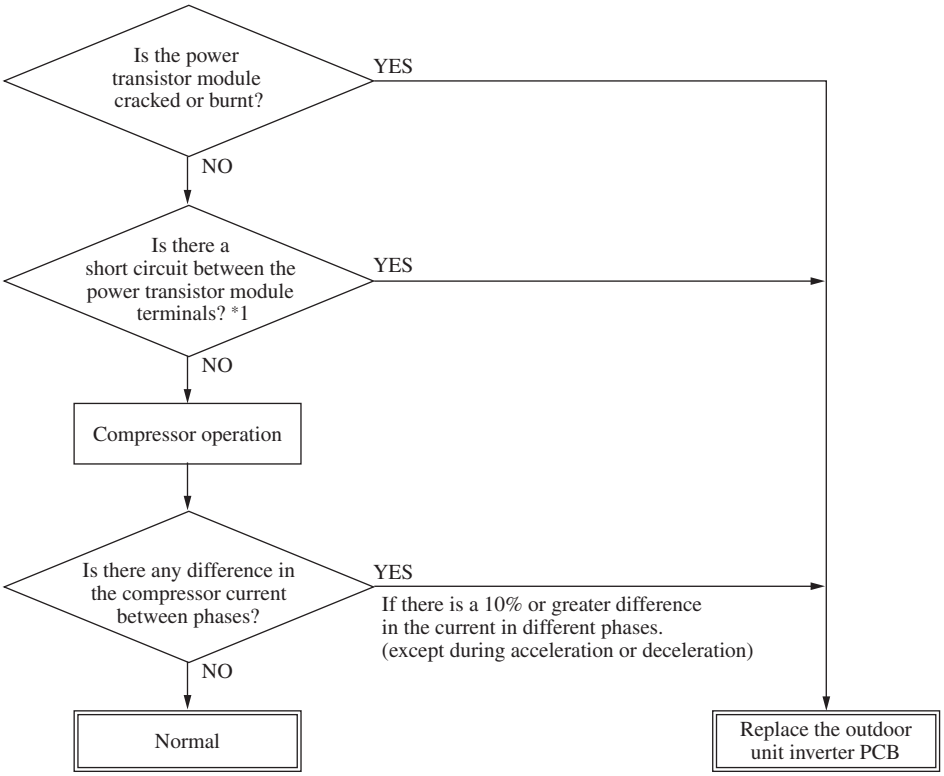
Note(1) Operation data display on the remote control.
- Data is dispalyed until canceling the protection control.
- In case of multiple protections controlled, only the younger No. is displayed.

Note(2) Common item.

① In heating mode.
During protection control by the command signal for reducing compressor frequency from indoor unit, No. "4" is displayed.

② In cooling and dehumidifying mode.
During protection control by the command signal for reducing compressor frequency from indoor unit, No. "8" is displayed.

(6) Power transistor module (including the driver PCB) inspection procedure



*1 Power transistor module terminal short circuit check procedure

Disconnect the compressor wiring, then conduct a short circuit check.

P-U, P-V, P-W

N-U, N-V, N-W

Check between the P-N terminals.

Bring the tester probes in contact with the following places on each te rminal.

P: Power transistor P terminal,

N: Power transistor N terminal,

U: End of red harness to compressor

V: End of white harness to compressor

W: End of black or blue harness to compressor

Check for a power transistor short circuit.

- When you do not have a diagnostic checker for judging if the inverter is defective, measure between the terminals of the power transistor parts, judge whether the power transistor is defective or not.
- Disconnect the compressor, then measure with the control incorporated.

Tester		Normal values (Ω)	Diode mode (V)
Terminal (+)	Terminal (-)		
P	N	A few of MΩ (Not short)	—
N	P		
P	U		
P	V		
P	W		
N	U		Approx. 0.4V
N	V		
N	W		
U	P		
V	P		
W	P		
U	N		—
V	N		
W	N		

If the measured values range from 0 ~ several kΩ, there is a possibility that the elements are damaged, so replace the power transistor parts.

(7) Inverter checker for diagnosis of inverter output

●Checking method

(a) Setup procedure of checker.

(i) Power OFF (Turn off the breaker).

(ii) Remove the terminal cover of compressor and disconnect the wires (U, V, W) from compressor.

(iii) Connect the wires U (Red) , V (White) and W (Black) of checker to the terminal of disconnected wires (U, V, W) from compressor respectively.

(iv) Connect the short connector to CNROM on the main PCB.

(b) Operation for judgment.

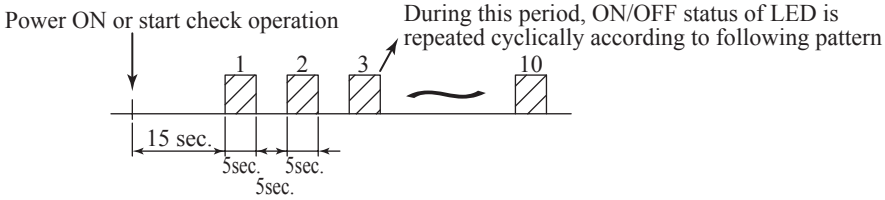
(i) Power ON.

(ii) After 15 seconds since power has turned ON. LED start ON/OFF for 5 seconds cyclically and it repeats 10 times.

(iii) Check ON/OFF status of 6 LED's on the checker.

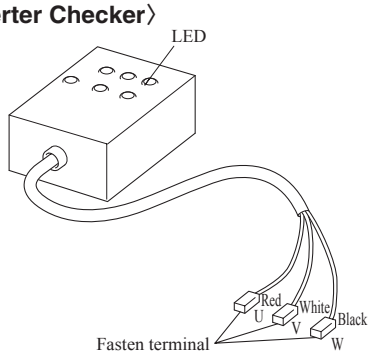
(iv) Judge the PCB by ON/OFF status of 6 LED's on the checker.

ON/OFF status of LED	If all of LED are ON/OFF according to following pattern	If all of LED stay OFF or some of LED are ON/OFF
Inverter PCB	Normal	Anomalous

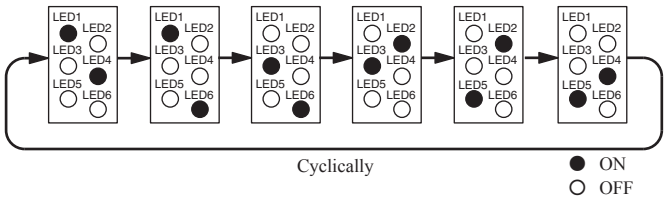


e) Be sure to disconnect the connector from CNROM, after finishing the check operation.

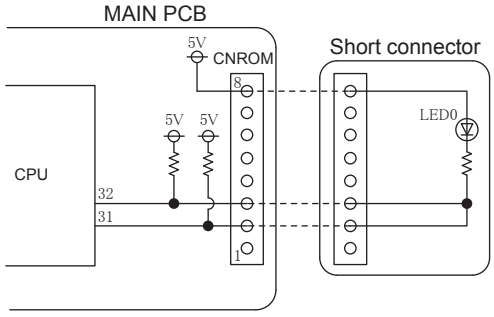
〈Inverter Checker〉



LED ON/OFF pattern



Connect to the terminal of the wires which are disconnected from compressor.



(8) Outdoor unit controller failure diagnosis circuit diagram

Model FDC71VNP

◆Check point of outdoor unit

⚠ CAUTION – HIGH VOLTAGE

High voltage is produced in the control box. Don't touch electrical parts in the control box for 5 minutes after the unit is stopped.

◆Power source and serial signal inspection

Ⓛ to Ⓝ : AC 220/230/240V
① to ②/N : AC 220/230/240V
②/N to ③ : Normal if the voltage oscillates between DC 0 and approx. 20V

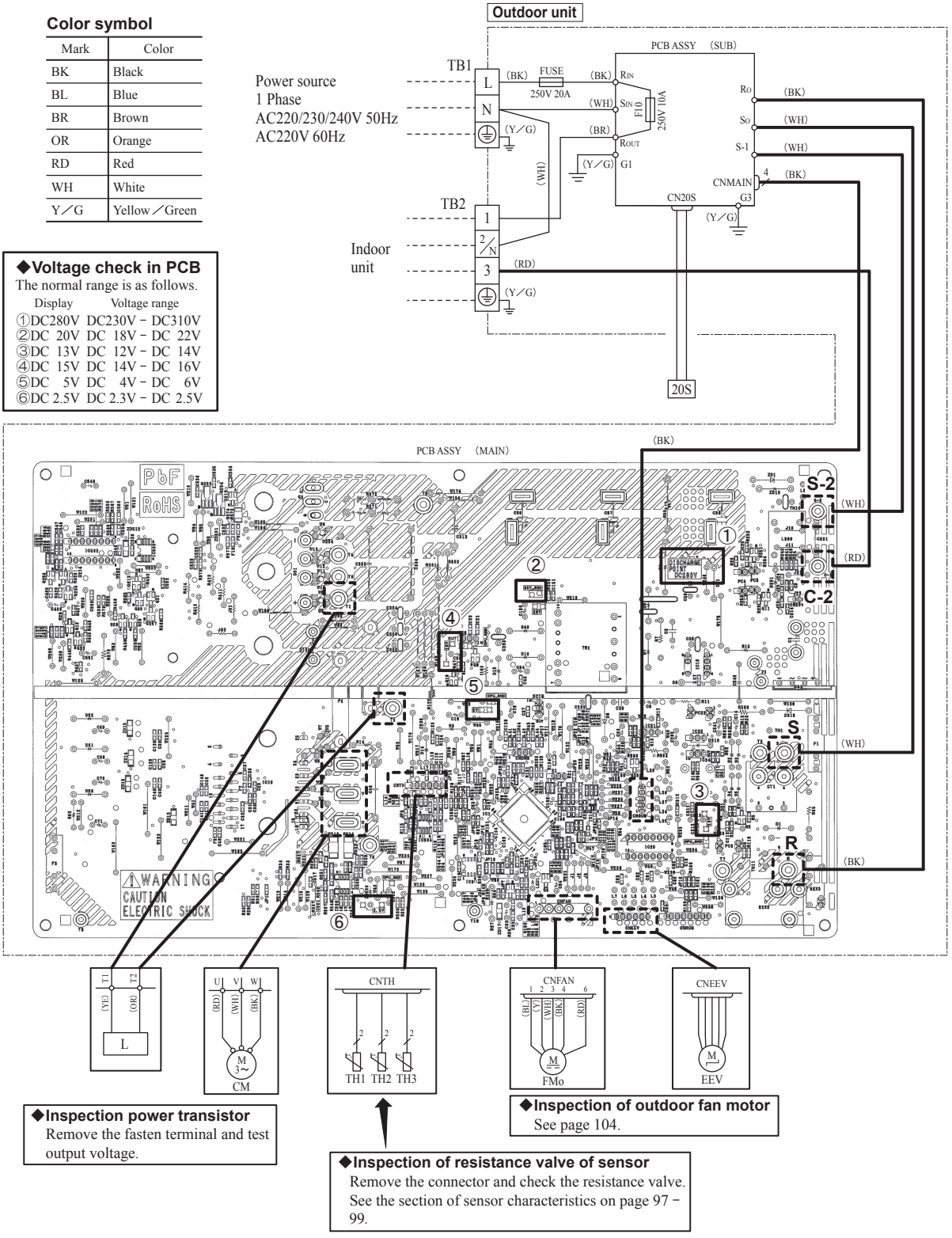
Color symbol

Mark	Color
BK	Black
BL	Blue
BR	Brown
OR	Orange
RD	Red
WH	White
Y／G	Yellow／Green

◆Voltage check in PCB

The normal range is as follows.

Display	Voltage range
①DC280V	DC230V – DC310V
②DC 20V	DC 18V – DC 22V
③DC 13V	DC 12V – DC 14V
④DC 15V	DC 14V – DC 16V
⑤DC 5V	DC 4V – DC 6V
⑥DC 2.5V	DC 2.3V – DC 2.5V



◆Inspection power transistor

Remove the fasten terminal and test output voltage.

◆Inspection of outdoor fan motor

See page 104.

◆Inspection of resistance valve of sensor

Remove the connector and check the resistance valve. See the section of sensor characteristics on page 97 – 99.

Model FDC90VNP

◆Check point of outdoor unit

⚠ CAUTION – HIGH VOLTAGE

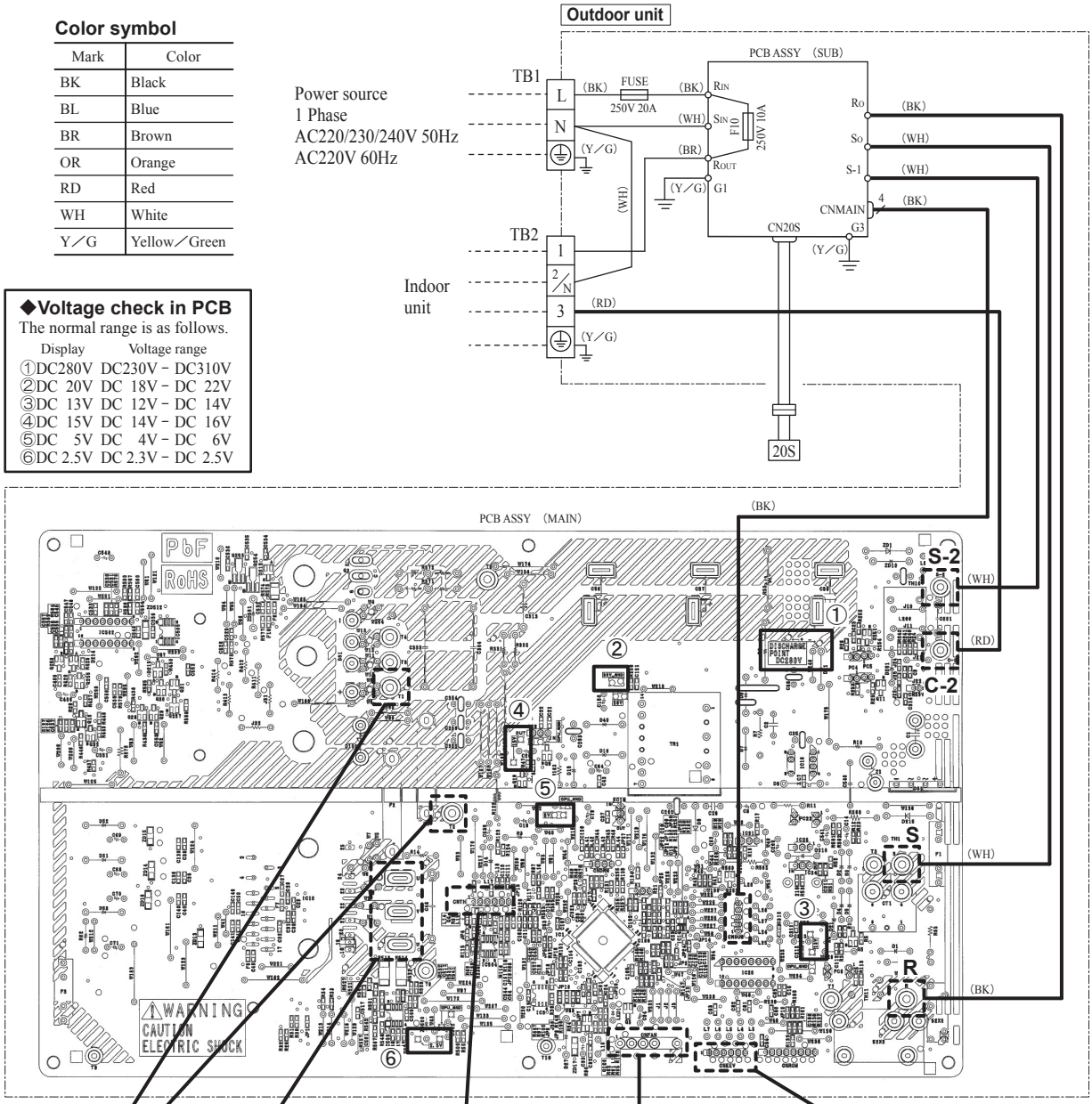
High voltage is produced in the control box. Don't touch electrical parts in the control box for 5 minutes after the unit is stopped.

◆Power source and serial signal inspection

Ⓛ to Ⓝ : AC 220/230/240V
① to ②/N : AC 220/230/240V
②/N to ③ : Normal if the voltage oscillates between DC 0 and approx. 20V

Color symbol

Mark	Color
BK	Black
BL	Blue
BR	Brown
OR	Orange
RD	Red
WH	White
Y／G	Yellow／Green



◆Voltage check in PCB

The normal range is as follows.

Display	Voltage range
①DC280V	DC230V – DC310V
②DC 20V	DC 18V – DC 22V
③DC 13V	DC 12V – DC 14V
④DC 15V	DC 14V – DC 16V
⑤DC 5V	DC 4V – DC 6V
⑥DC 2.5V	DC 2.3V – DC 2.5V

◆Inspection power transistor

Remove the fasten terminal and test output voltage.

◆Inspection of resistance valve of sensor

Remove the connector and check the resistance valve. See the section of sensor characteristics on page 97 – 99.

◆Inspection of outdoor fan motor

See page 104.

2.1.2 Troubleshooting flow

(1) List of troubles

Remote control display	Description of trouble	Reference page
None	Operates but does not cool.	66
None	Operates but does not heat.	67
None	Earth leakage breaker activated	68
None	Excessive noise/vibration (1/3)	69
None	Excessive noise/vibration (2/3)	70
None	Excessive noise/vibration (3/3)	71
None	Louver motor failure (FDT, FDEN, FDF series)	72
None	Power supply system error (Power supply to indoor control PCB)	73
None	Power supply system error (Power supply to remote control)	74
INSPECT I/U	INSPECT I/U (When 1 or 2 remote controls are connected)	75
INSPECT I/U	INSPECT I/U (Connection of 3 units or more remote controls)	76
WAIT	Communication error at initial operation	77~79
E1	Remote control communication circuit error	80
E5	Communication error during operation	81
E6	Indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor anomaly	82
E7	Return air temperature thermistor anomaly	83
E8	Heating overload operation	84
E9	Drain trouble (FDT, FDU, FDUM series)	85
E10	Excessive number of connected indoor units (more than 17 units) by controlling with one remote control	86
E11	Address setting error of indoor units	87
E14	Communication error between master and slave indoor units	88
E16	Indoor fan motor anomaly (FDT, FDU, FDUM, FDF series)	89
E18	Address setting error of moster and slave indoor unit	90
E19	Indoor unit operation check	91
E20	Indoor fan motor rotation speed anomaly (FDT, FDU, FDUM, FDF series)	92
E21	Defective panel switch operation (FDT only)	93
E28	Remote control temperature thermistor anomaly	94
E35	Cooling overload operation	95
E36	Discharge pipe temperature error	96
E37	Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor anomaly	97
E38	Outdoor air temperature sensor anomaly	98
E39	Discharge pipe temperature sensor anomaly	99
E40	Service valve (gas side) closing operation	100
E42	Current cut	101,102
E47	Active filter voltage error	103
E48	Outdoor fan motor anomaly	104
E51	Power transistor anomaly	105
E57	Insufficient refrigerant amount or detection of service valve closure	106
E58	Current safe stop	107
E59	Compressor startup failure	108
E60	Compressor rotor lock error	109

(2) Troubleshooting

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Operates but does not cool

1. Applicable model

All models

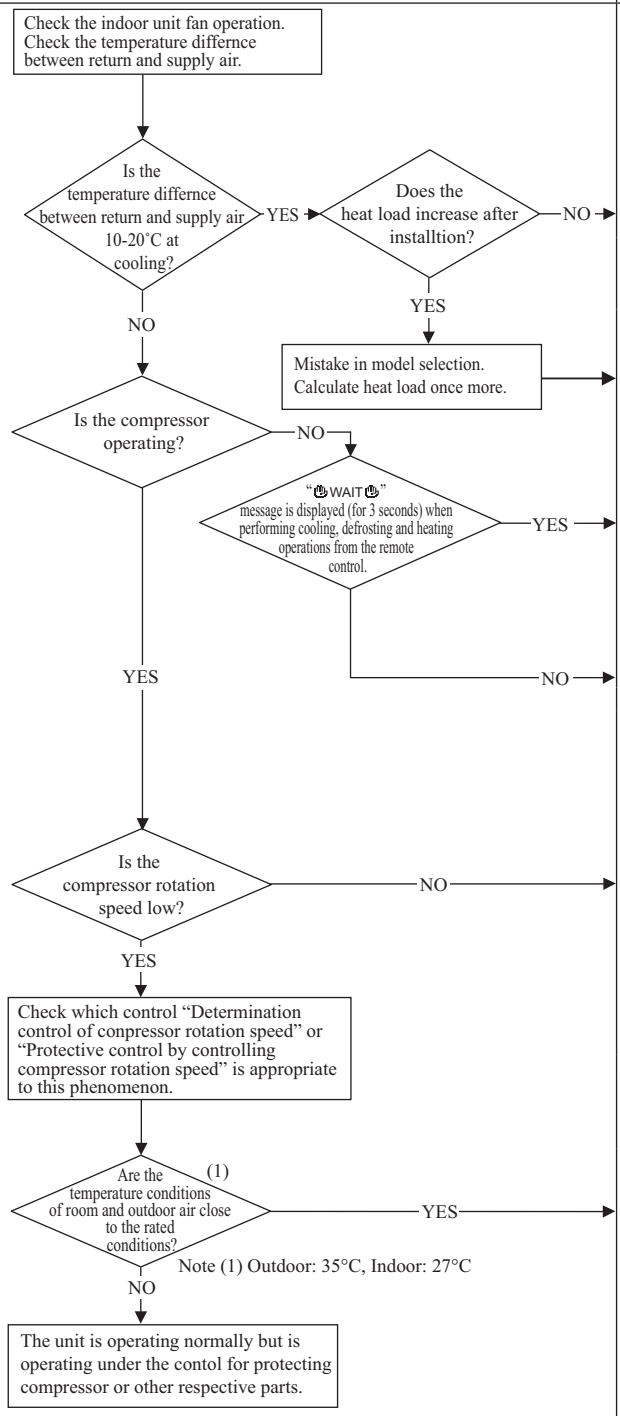
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Poor compression of compressor
- Faulty expansion valve operation

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Operates but does not heat

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Faulty 4-way valve operation
- Poor compression of compressor
- Faulty expansion valve operation

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Check the indoor unit fan operation. Check the temperature differnce between return and supply air.	
Is the temperature differnce between return and supply air 10-30˚C at heating? YES → Does the heat load increase after installtion? NO	It is normal. (This unit is designed to start in the soft start mode by detecting the under dome temperature of compressor when it restart after power reset.
Does the heat load increase after installtion? YES → Mistake in model selection. Calculate heat load once again.	It is necessary to replace to higher capacity one or to install additional unit.
Is the temperature differnce between return and supply air 10-30˚C at heating? NO → Is the compressor operating? NO → "WAIT" message is displayed (for 3 seconds) when performing cooling, defrosting and heating operations from the remote control. YES	Compressor refrigerant oil protection control at starting is activated.
"WAIT" message is displayed (for 3 seconds) when performing cooling, defrosting and heating operations from the remote control. NO	Compressor may be stopped by the error detection control. For the contents of control, refer to anomalous stop control by controlling compressor rotation speed of microcomputor control functions.
Is the compressor operating? YES → Is the compressor rotation speed low? NO	Inspect the followings. • Minor clogging of filter • Minor clogging of heat exchanger • Minor short-circuit • Minor shortage of refrigerant amount • Poor compression of compressor
Is the compressor rotation speed low? YES → Check which control "Determination control of conpressor rotation speed" or "Protective control by controlling compressor rotation speed" is appropriate to this phenomenon.	
Are the temperature conditions of room and outdoor air close to the rated conditions? (1) YES	Considering appropriate operation control, check suspicious points. Inspect the followings for reference. • Major clogging of filter • Major clogging of heat exchanger • Major short-circuit • Major shortage of refrigerant amount • Compressor protection ON • Indoor fan tap
Note (1) Outdoor: 7°C, Indoor: 20°C	
Are the temperature conditions of room and outdoor air close to the rated conditions? NO → The unit is operating normally but is operating under the contol for protecting compressor or other respective parts.	

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	Stays OFF	Stays OFF	Earth leakage breaker activated

1. Applicable model

All models

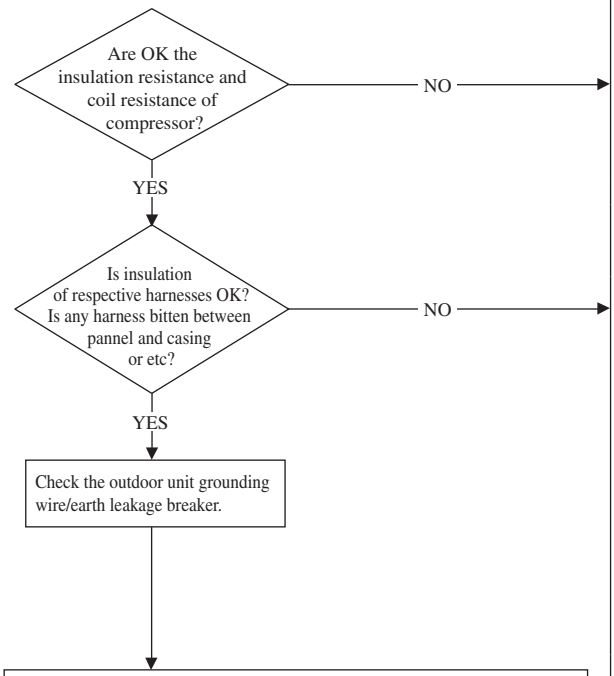
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Defective compressor
- Noise

5. Troubleshooting



Check of the outdoor unit grounding wire/earth leakage breaker

① Run an independent grounding wire from the grounding screw of outdoor unit to the grounding terminal on the distribution panel. (Do not connect to another grounding wire.)
② In order to prevent malfunction of the earth leakage breaker itself, confirm that it is conformed to higher harmonic regulation.

* Insulation resistance of compressor
- Immediately after installation or when the unit has been left for long time without power supply, the insulation resistance may drop to a few MΩ because of refrigerant migrated in the compressor.
  When the earth breaker is activated at lower insulation resistance, check the following points.

① Check if the earth leakage breaker is conformed to higher harmonic regulation or not.
Since the unit is equipped with inverter, it is necessary to use components conformed to higher harmonic regulation in order to prevent malfunction of earth leakage breaker.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	–	–	Excessive noise/vibration (1/3)

1.Applicable model

All models

2.Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

4.Presumable cause

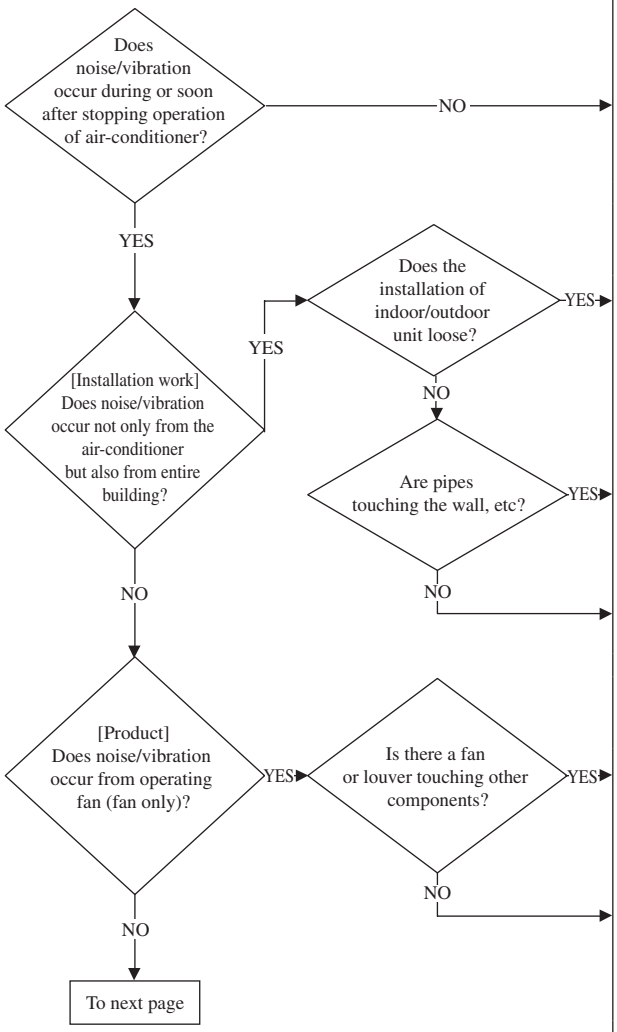
① Improper installation work
- Improper anti-vibration work at instllation
- Insufficient strength of mounting face

② Defective product
- Before/after shipping from factory

③ Improper adjustment during commissioning
- Excess/shortage of refrigerant, etc.

5.Troubleshooting

Diagnosis



Countermeasure

If excessive noise/vibration persists when sufficient time has elapsed after stopping the unit, it is considered that the air-conditioner is not the source.

Check the installed condition carefully, and correct the position or insert rubber cushions or others into the gap, if necessary.

Prevent the vibration from transmitting to wall and etc by fixing pipes on the wall or wrapping rubber cushion around the pipe which goes through the hole in the wall or applying other appropriate means.

Strength of ceiling wall, floor, etc. may be insufficient. Review the installing position or reinforce it.

Check for leaning of installed unit or anomalous mounting of fan, louver or motor and specify the contacting point and correct it.

When the heat exchanger or filter is clogged, clean them. In case that the unit is installed at the site where background noise is very low, small noise from indoor unit can be heard, but it is normal. Before installation, check for background noise. If backgound nois is very low, convince client prior to installation.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	–	–	Excessive noise/vibration (2/3)

1.Applicable model

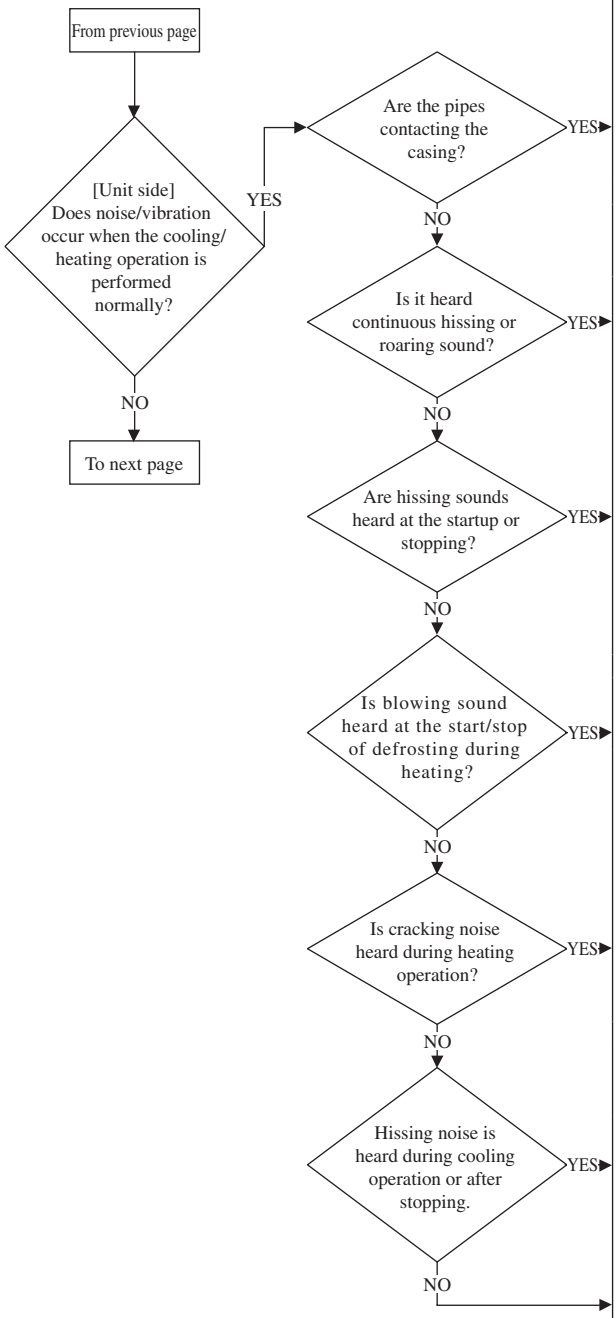
All models

2.Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

4.Presumable cause

5.Troubleshooting



Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Are the pipes contacting the casing? YES	Rearrange the piping to avoid contact with the casing.
Is it heard continuous hissing or roaring sound? YES	It is noise/vibration that is generated when the refrigerant gas or liquid flow through inside of piping of air-conditioner. It is likely to occur particularly during cooling or defrosting in the heating mode. It is normal.
Are hissing sounds heard at the startup or stopping? YES	The noise/vibration occurs when the refrigerant starts or stops flowing. It is normal.
Is blowing sound heard at the start/stop of defrosting during heating? YES	When the defrosting starts or stops during heating, the refrigerant flow is reversed due to switching 4-way valve. This causes a large change in pressure which produces a blowing sound. It may accompany also the hissing sounds as mentioned above. They are normal.
Is cracking noise heard during heating operation? YES	After the start or stop of heating operation or during defrosting, abrupt changes in temperature cause resin parts to shrink or expand. This is normal.
Hissing noise is heard during cooling operation or after stopping. YES	It is the sound produced by the drain pump that discharges drain from the indoor unit. The pump continues to run for 5 minutes after stopping the cooling operation. This is normal.
NO	Apply the damper sealant at places considered to be the sources such as the pressure reducing mechanism (expansion valve), capillary, etc.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	–	–	Excessive noise/vibration (3/3)

1.Applicable model

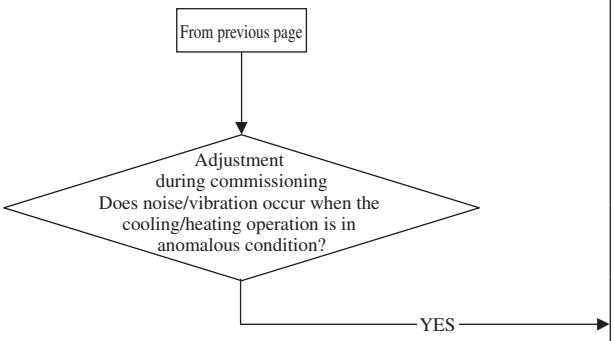
All models

2. Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

4. Presumable cause

5.Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
	If insufficient cooling/ heating problem happens due to anomalous operating conditions at cooling/ heating, followings are suspicious. • Overcharge of refrigerant • Insufficient charge of refrigerant • Intrusion of air, nitrogen, etc. In such occasion, it is necessary to recover refrigerant, vacuum-dry and recharge refrigerant. * Since there could be many causes of noise/ vibration, the above do not cover all. In such case, check the conditions when, where, how the noise/vibration occurs according to following check point. • Indoor/outdoor unit • Cooling/heating/fan mode • Startup/stop/during operation • Operating condition (Indoor/outdoor temperatures, pressure) • Time it occurred • Operation data retained by the remote control such as compressor rotation speed, heat exchanger temperature, EEV opening degree, etc. • Tone (If available, record the noise) • Any other anomalies

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Louver motor failure (FDT, FDEN, FDF series)

1. Applicable model

FDT, FDEN, FDF series only

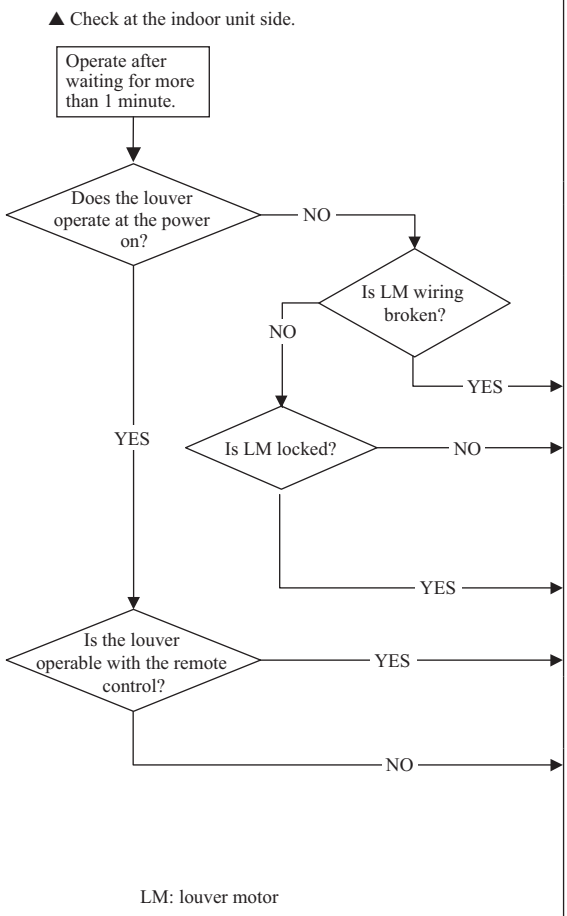
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Defective LM
- LM wire breakage
- Faulty indoor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



LM: louver motor

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	Stays OFF	Stays OFF	Power supply system error (Power supply to indoor control PCB)

1. Applicable model

All models

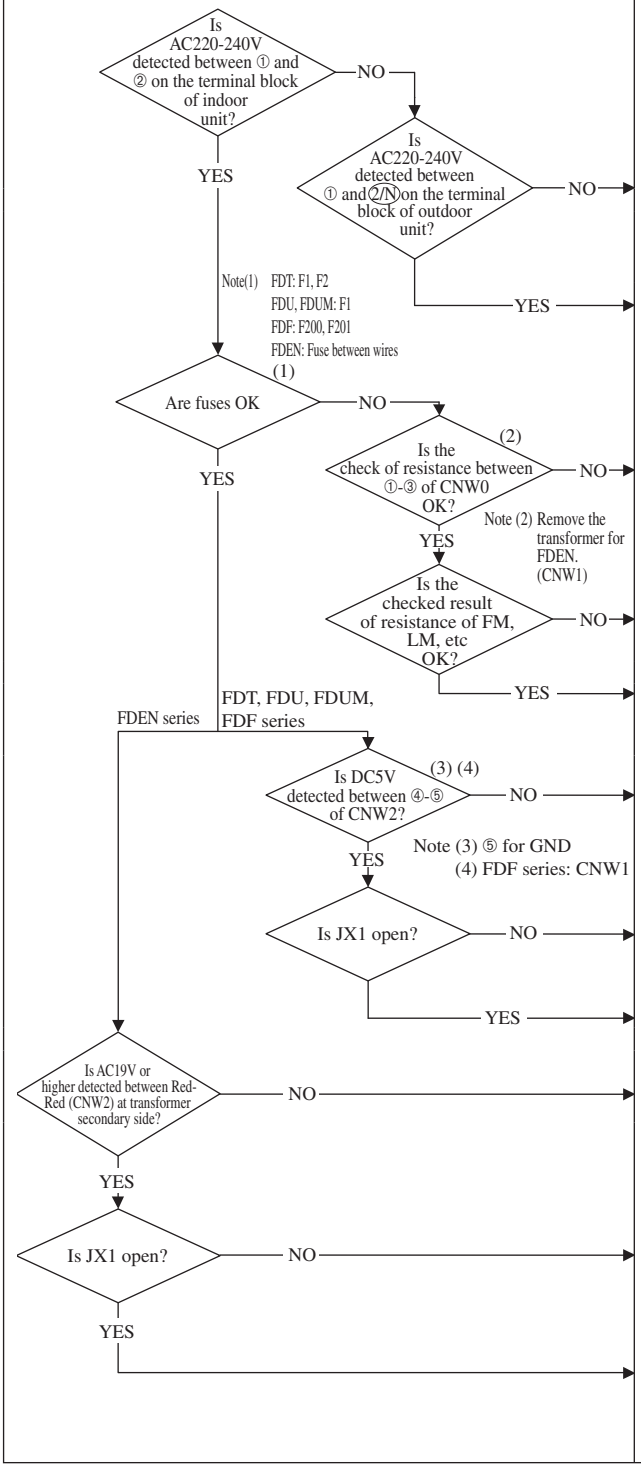
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Misconnection or breakage of connecting wires
- Blown fuse
- Faulty transformer
- Faulty indoor control or power PCB
- Broken harness
- Faulty outdoor sub PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Power supply system error (Power supply to remote control)

1. Applicable model

All models

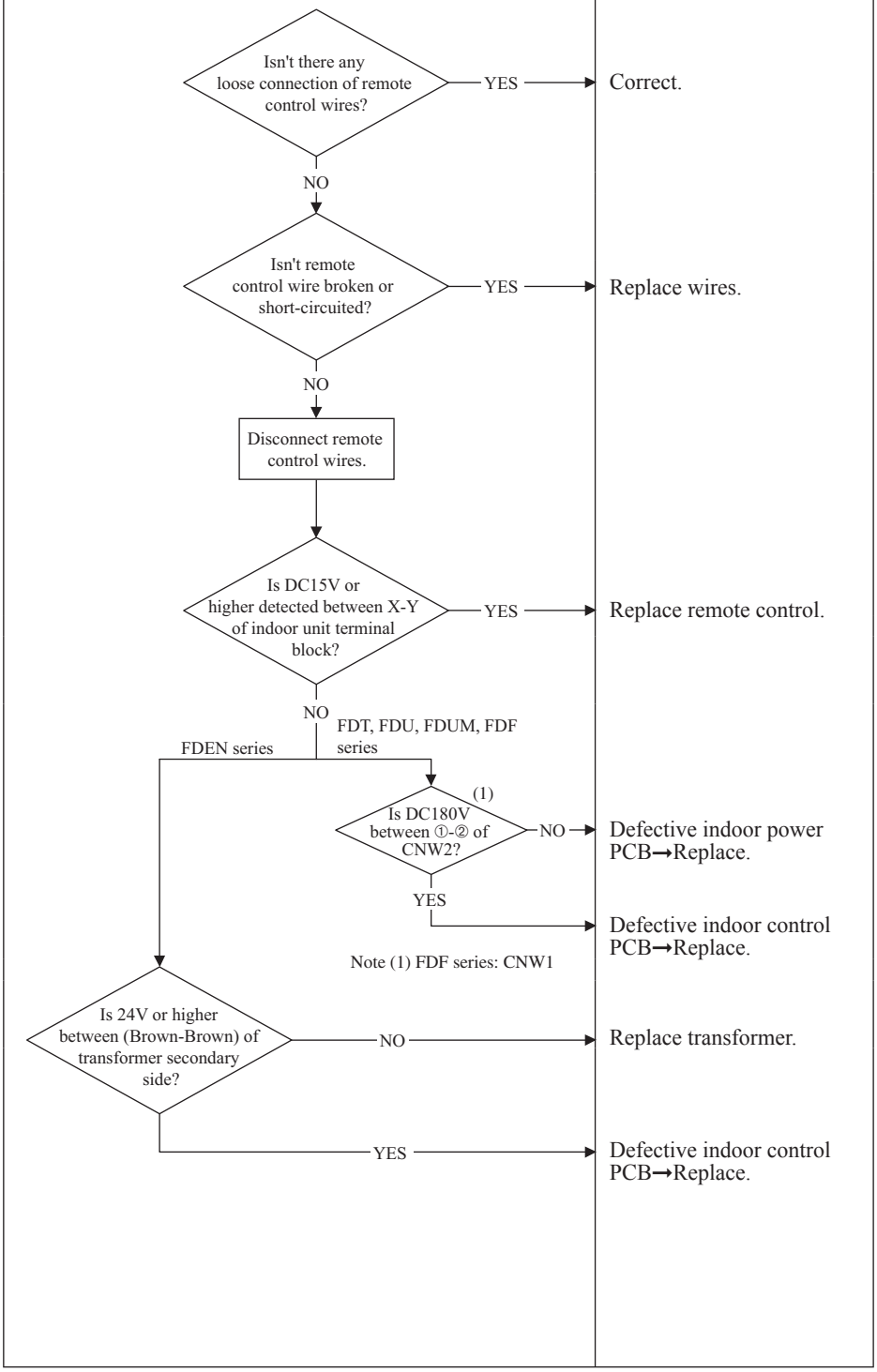
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Remote control wire breakage/short-circuit
- Defective remote control
- Malfunction by noise
- Faulty indoor power PCB
- Broken harness
- Faulty indoor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: INSPECT I/U	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	INSPECT I/U (When 1 or 2 remote controls are connected)

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Communication between indoor unit and remote control is disabled for more than 30 minutes after the power on.

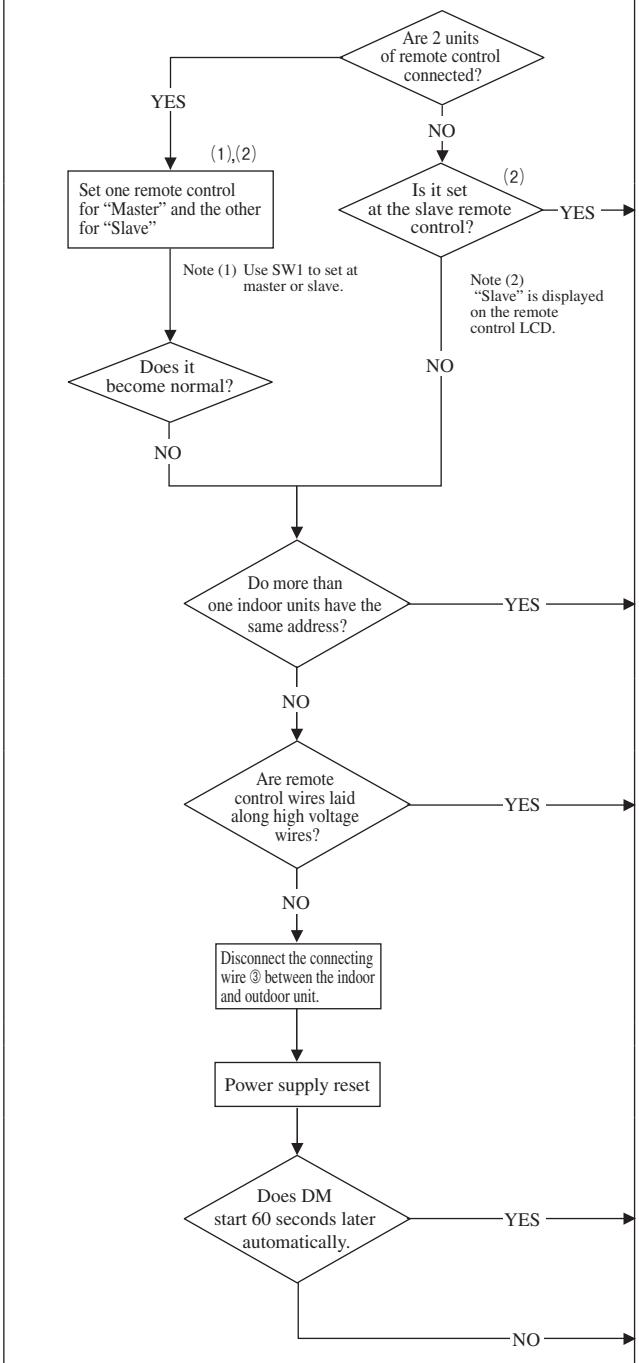
3. Condition of Error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Improper setting
- Surrounding environment
- Defective remote control communication circuit
- Faulty indoor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note: If any error is detected 30 minutes after displaying "WAIT" on the remote control, the display changes to "INSPECT I/U".

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: INSPECT I/U	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	INSPECT I/U (Connection of 3 units or more remote control)

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Indoor unit cannot communicate for more than 30 minutes after the power on with remote control.

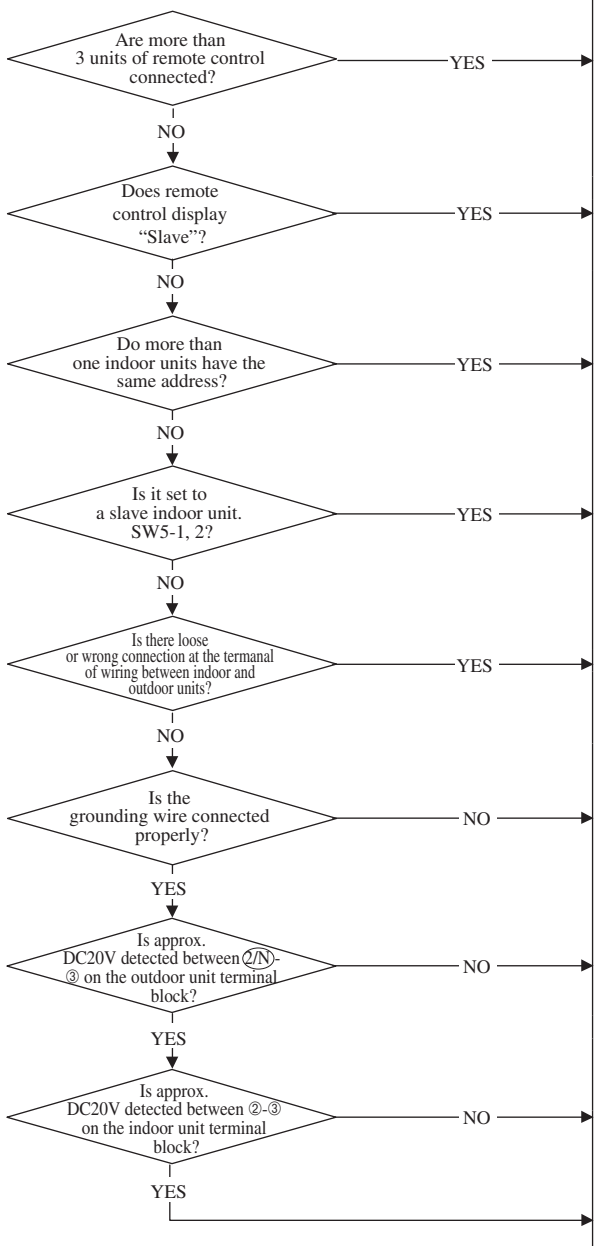
3. Condition of Error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Improper setting
- Surrounding environment
- Defective remote control communication circuit
- Faulty indoor control or power PCB
- Faulty outdoor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note: If any error is detected 30 minutes after displaying "✋WAIT✋" on the remote control, the display changes to "INSPECT I/U".

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: WAIT	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Communication error at initial operation (1/3)

1. Applicable model

All models

When the remote control LCD displays " WAIT " 2 minutes after the power on.

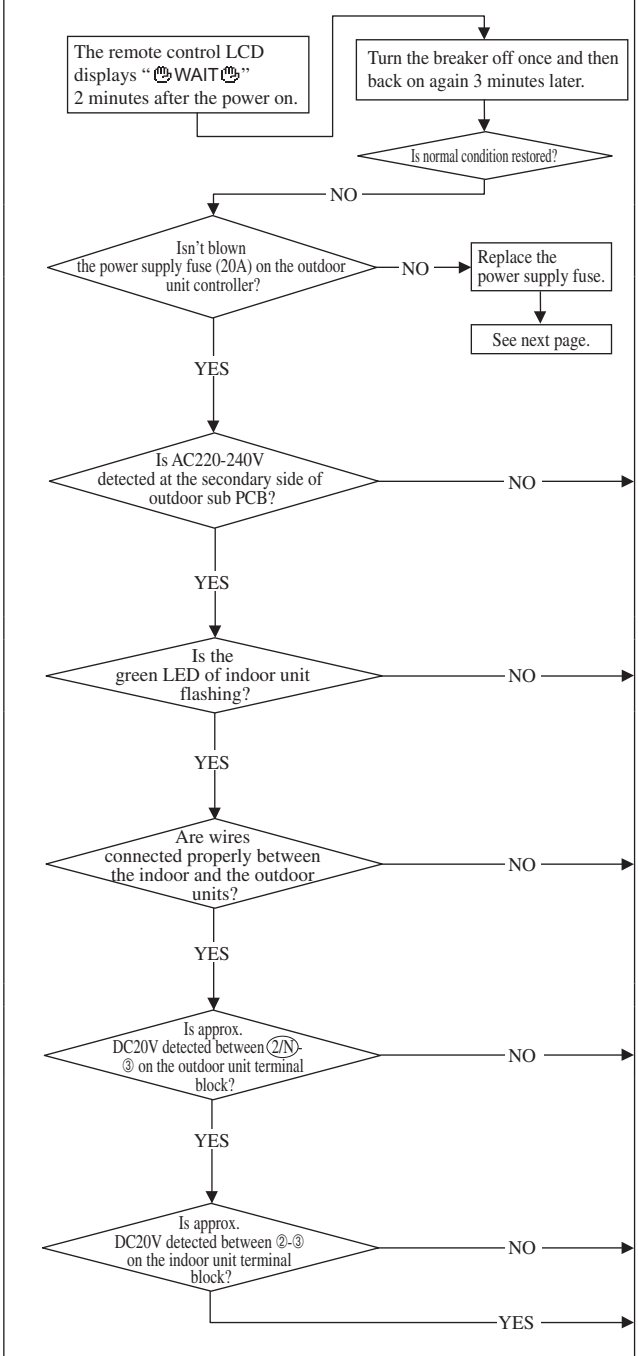
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Blown fuse
- Faulty outdoor sub PCB
- Connection between PCB's
- Faulty indoor control PCB
- Defective remote control
- Broken remote control wire

5. Troubleshooting



Note: If any anomaly is detected during communication, the error code E5 is displayed. Inspection procedure is same as above. (Excluding matters related to connection) When the power supply is reset after the occurrence of E5, the LED will display " WAIT " if the anomaly continues. If the breaker ON/OFF is repeated in a short period of time (within 1 minute), " WAIT " may be displayed. In such occasion, turn the breaker off and wait for 3 minutes.

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: WAIT	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Communication error at initial operation (2/3)

1. Applicable model

All models

When the fuse is blown, the method to inspect outdoor PCB before replacing the power supply fuse

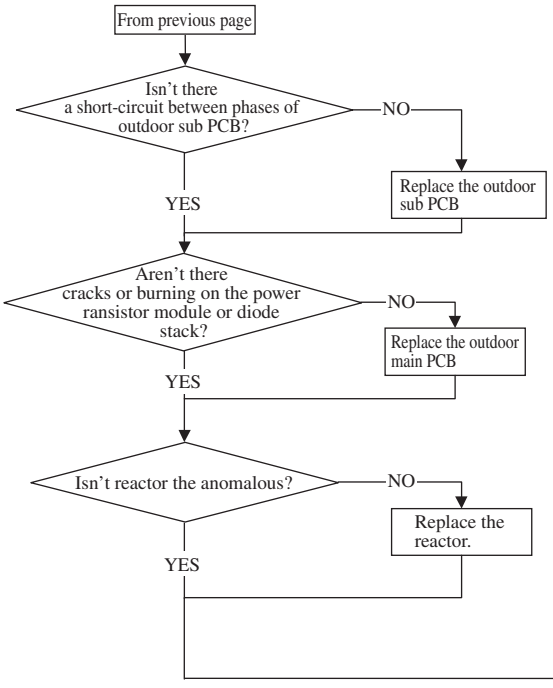
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Blown fuse
- Faulty outdoor sub or main PCB
- Faulty reactor

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
	Replace fuse.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: WAIT	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Communication error at initial operation (3/3)

1. Applicable model

All models

When the remote control display is extinguished after the power on.

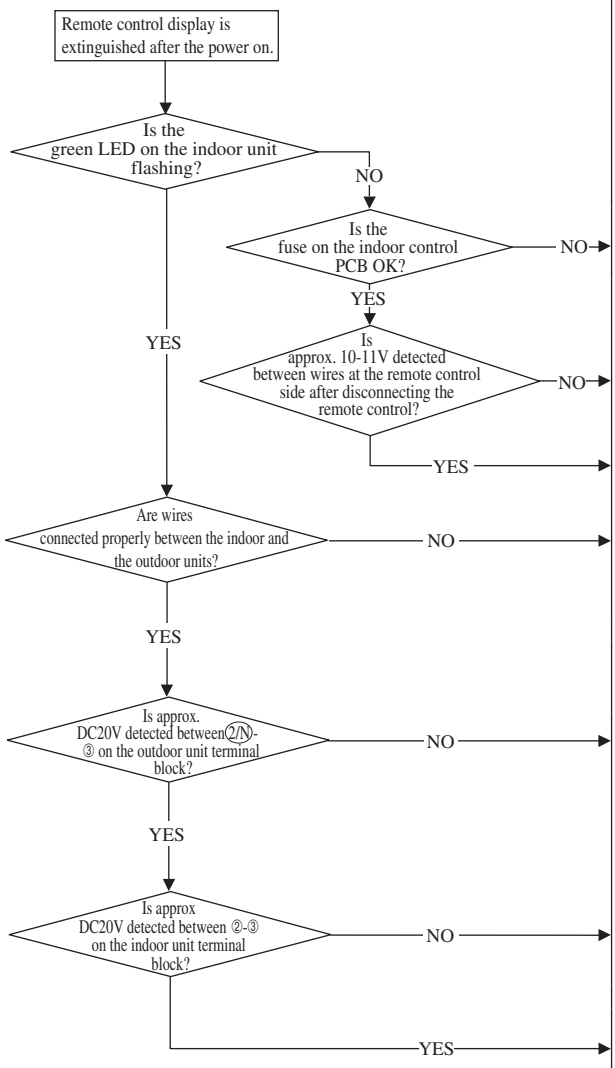
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of Error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Blown fuse
- Connection between PCB's
- Blown fuse
- Faulty indoor control PCB
- Defective remote control
- Wire breakage on remote control
- Faulty outdoor sub PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E1	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Remote control communication circuit error

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When normal communication between the remote control and the indoor unit is interrupted for more than 2 minutes. (Detectable only with the remote control)

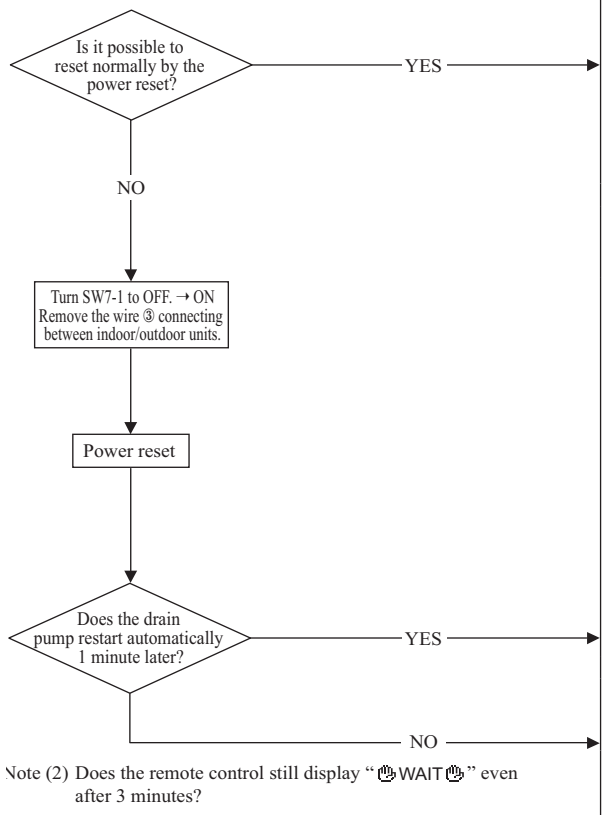
3. Condition of Error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Defective communication circuit between remote control-indoor unit
- Noise
- Defective remote control
- Faulty indoor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note: If the indoor unit cannot communicate normally with the remote control for 180 seconds, the indoor unit PCB starts to reset automatically.

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E5	Indoor	Keeps flashing	2-time flash	Communication error during operation

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When normal communication between indoor and outdoor unit is interrupted for more than 2 minutes.

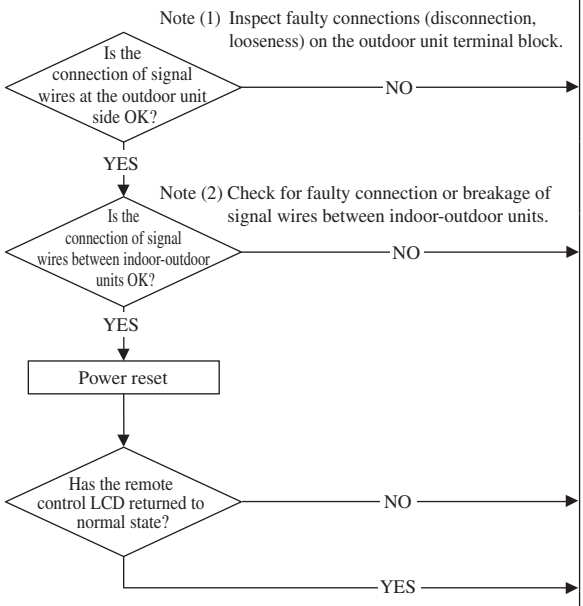
3. Condition of Error displayed

Same as above is detected during operation.

4. Presumable cause

- Unit No. setting error
- Broken remote control wire
- Faulty remote control wire connection
- Faulty outdoor sub PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E6	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor anomaly

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Anomalously low temperature or high temperature (resistance) is detected on the indoor heat exchanger thermistor (ThI-R1, R2 or R3).

3. Condition of Error displayed

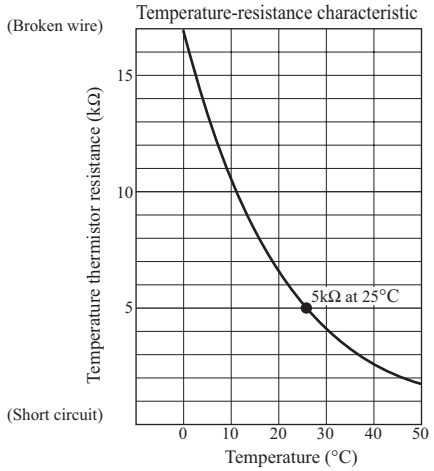
- When the temperature thermistor detects -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously, the compressor stops. After 3-minutes delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this error occurs again within 60 minutes after the initial detection.
- Or if 70°C or higher is detected for 5 seconds continuously.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor heat exchanger thermistor connector
- Indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor anomaly
- Faulty indoor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the connection of indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor connector OK? — NO	Correct. → Insert connector securely.
YES → Are characteristics of indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor OK? — NO	Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor → Replace.
YES	Defective indoor control PCB → Replace. (Defective indoor unit heat exchanger temperature thermistor input circuit)



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E7	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Return air temperature thermistor anomaly

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Anomalously low temperature or high temperature (resistance) is detected by indoor return air temperature thermistor (ThI-A)

3. Condition of Error displayed

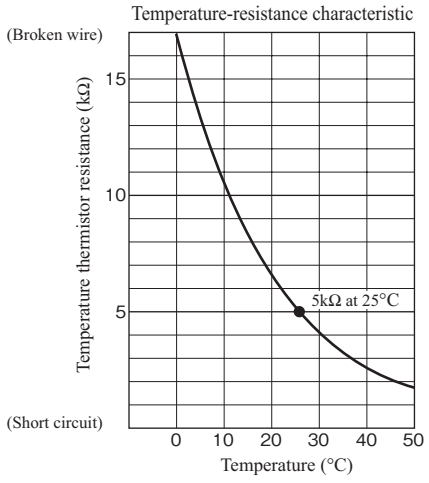
- When the temperature thermistor detects -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously, the compressor stops. After 3-minute delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this error occurs again within 60 minutes after the initial detection.
- Or if 48°C or higher is detected for 5 seconds continuously.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective return air temperature thermistor connector
- Defective return air temperature thermistor
- Faulty indoor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the connection of return air temperature thermistor connector OK? — NO	Correct. → Connect connector.
YES → Are the characteristics of return air temperature thermistor OK? — NO	Defective return air temperature thermistor → Replace.
YES	Defective indoor control PCB → Replace. (Defective return air temperature thermistor input circuit)



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E8	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Heating overload operation

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor (ThI-R1, R2, R3)

3. Condition of Error displayed

When it is detected 5 times within 60 minutes from initial detection or when the overload condition is detected for 6 minutes continuously.

4. Presumable cause

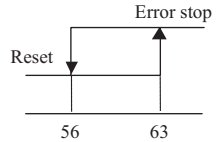
- Clogged air filter
- Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor connector
- Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor
- Anomalous refrigerant system

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the air filter clogged? NO	
Is the air filter clogged? YES	Wash.
Is the indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor connection OK? NO	Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor connector→ Correct.
Are the characteristics of indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor OK? (2) NO * For the characteristics of indoor heat exchanger temperature, refer to E6.	Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor.
Check the error data with the remote control.	
Is the unit operating in the state of heating overload? NO	Check refrigerant system.
Is the unit operating in the state of heating overload? YES	Adjust

Note (1) Judge if it is in the state of overload or not as follows.
- ▲ Is there any short-circuit of air?
- ▲ Isn't there any fouling or clogging on the indoor heat exchanger?
- ▲ Is the outdoor fan control normal?
- ▲ Isn't the indoor and outdoor air temperature too high?

Note (2) For characteristics of indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor, see the error display E6.



Indoor heat exchanger temperature (°C)

Note: During heating operation; After starting compressor, compressor rotation speed is decreased by detecting indoor heat exchanger temperature (ThI-R) in order to control high pressure.

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E9	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Drain trouble (FDT, FDU, FDUM series)

1. Applicable model

FDT, FDU, FDUM series only

2. Error detection method

Float switch is activated

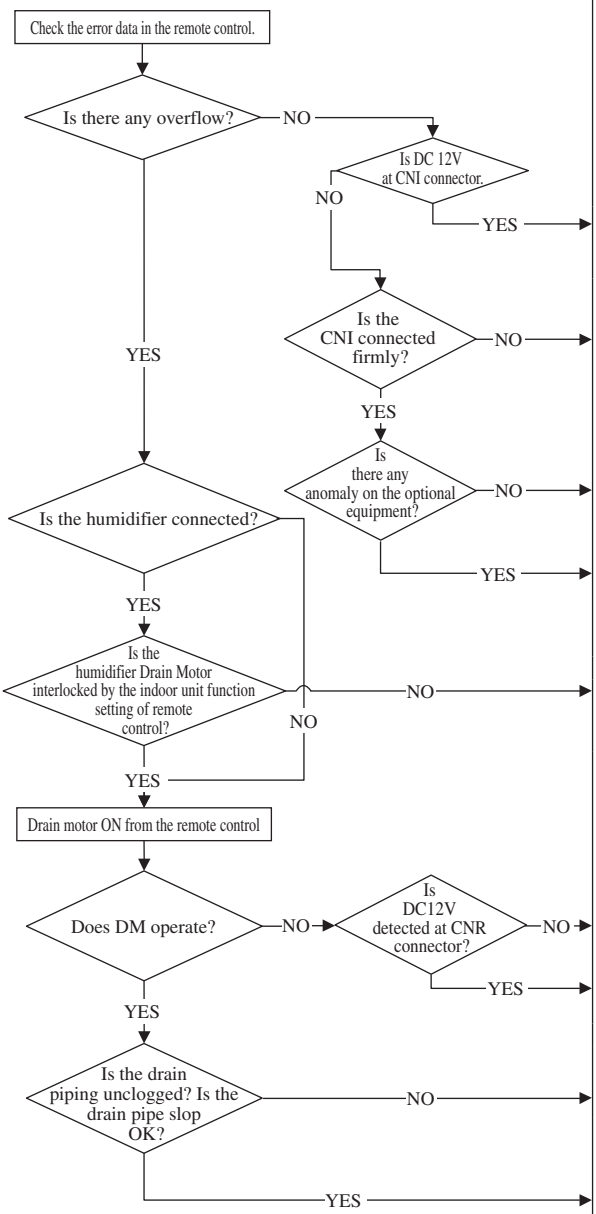
3. Condition of Error displayed

If the float switch OPEN is detected for 3 seconds continuously or if float switch connector or wire is disconnected.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor control or power PCB
- Float switch setting error
- Humidifier DM interlock setting error
- Optional equipment setting error
- Drain piping error
- Defective drain motor
- Disconnection of drain motor wiring

5. Troubleshooting



Note: When this error occurred at power ON, disconnection of wire or connector of the float switch is suspected. Check and correct it (or replace it, if necessary).

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E10	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Excessive number of connected indoor units (more than 17 units) by controlling with one remoto control

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When it detects more than 17 of indoor units connected to one remote contorl

3. Condition of Error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Excessive number of indoor units connected
- Defective remote control

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Aren't more than 17 indoor units connected to one remote control? — NO	Defective remote control → Replace.
YES	Reduce to 16 or less units.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E11	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Keeps flashing	Address setting error of indoor units

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

IU address has been set using the "Master IU address set" function of remote control.

3. Condition of Error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

Same as above

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
E11 occurs ↓ Is "Master IU address set" function of remote control used? YES →	• In cases of RC-E5 Return address No. to "IU …" using [▲] or [▲] button. • In cases of RC-EX1A Menu → Next → IU settings → Select IU
In case the wiring is below and "Master IU address set" is used, E11 is appeared. IU ① IU ② IU ③ —— R/C	

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E14	Indoor	Keeps flashing	3-time flash	Communication error between master and slave indoor units

1.Applicable model

All models

2.Error detection method

When communication error between master and slave indoor units occurs

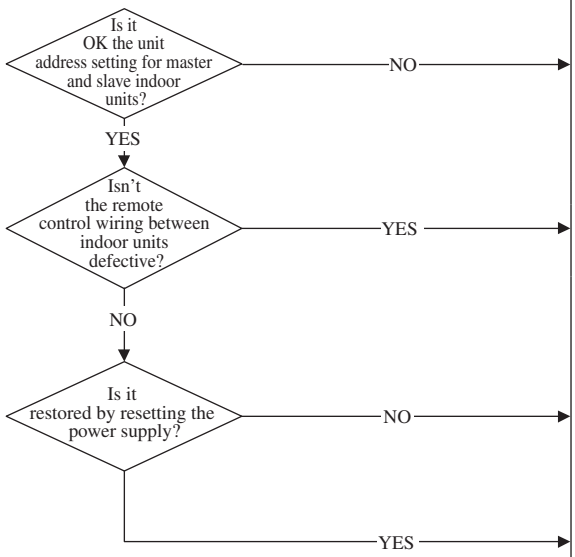
3.Condition of Error displayed

Same as above

4.Presumable cause

- Unit address setting error
- Broken remote control wire
- Defective remote control wire connection
- Defective indoor control PCB

5.Troubleshooting



Note (1) Set dip switches SW5-1 and SW5-2 as shown in the following table.
(Factory default setting – "Master")

		Indoor unit		
		Master	Slave-a	Slave-b
Dip switch	SW5-1	OFF	OFF	ON
	SW5-2	OFF	ON	OFF

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E16	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1(2)-time flash	Indoor fan motor anomaly (FDT, FDU, FDUM, FDF series)

Note(1) Value in ( ) is for the FDU, FDUM series FMI2 only.

1. Applicable model

FDT, FDU, FDUM, FDF series only

2. Error detection method

Detected by rotation speed of indoor fan motor

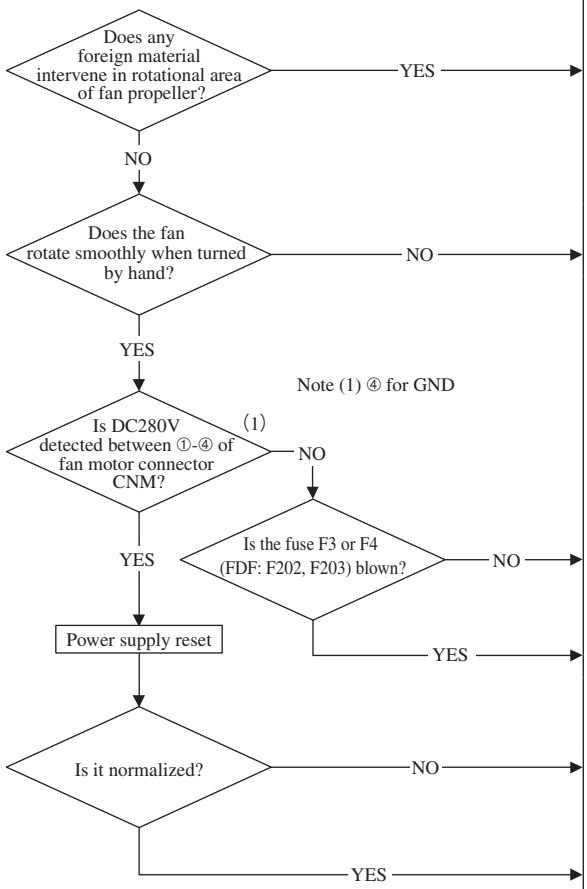
3. Condition of Error displayed

When actual rotation speed of indoor fan motor drops to lower than 200min^{-1} for 30 seconds continuously, the compressor and the indoor fan motor stop. After 2-seconds, it starts again automatically, but if this error occurs 4 times within 60 minutes after the initial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor power PCB
- Foreign material at rotational area of fan propeller
- Defective fan motor
- Dust on control PCB
- Blown fuse
- External noise, surge

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E18	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Address setting error of master and slave indoor units

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

IU address has been set using the "Master IU address set" function of remote control.

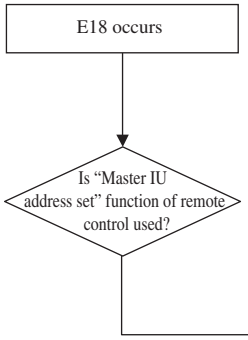
3. Condition of Error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

Same as above

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
	• In cases of RC-E5 Return address No. to "IU …" using [▲] or [▲] button. • In cases of RC-EX1A Menu ➞ Next ➞ IU settings ➞ Select IU

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E19	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Indoor unit operation check

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

After indoor operation check, when the communication between indoor and outdoor unit is established and SW7-1 is still kept ON.

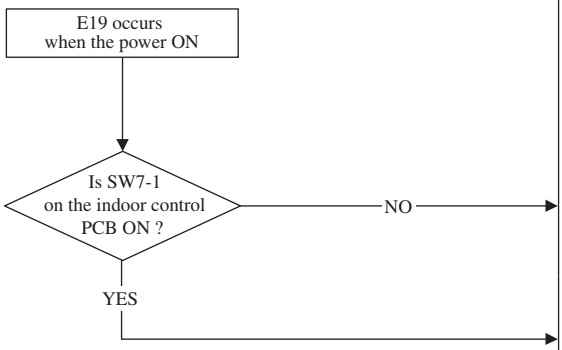
3. Condition of Error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

Mistake in SW7-1 setting
(Due to forgetting to turn OFF SW7-1 after indoor operation check)

5. Troubleshooting



Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is SW7-1 on the indoor control PCB ON ? NO	Defective indoor control PCB (Defective SW7) →Replace
Is SW7-1 on the indoor control PCB ON ? YES	Turn SW7-1 on the indoor control PCB OFF and reset the power

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E20	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1(2)-time flash	Indoor fan motor rotation speed anomaly (FDT, FDU, FDUM, FDF series)

Note(1) Value in ( ) is for the FDU, FDUM series FMI2 only.

1. Applicable model

FDT, FDU, FDUM, FDF series only

2. Error detection method

Detected by rotation speed of indoor fan motor

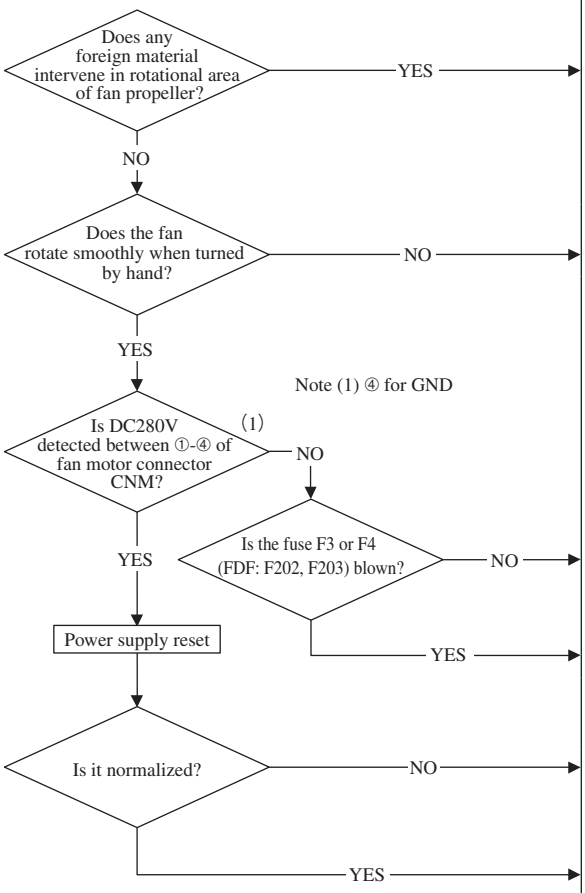
3. Condition of Error displayed

When the actual fan rotation speed does not reach to the speed of [required speed -50 (FDU:-500) min^{-1}] after 2 minutes have been elapsed since the fan motor rotation speed command was output, the unit stops by detecting indoor fan motor anomaly.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor power PCB
- Foreign material at rotational area of fan propeller
- Defective fan motor
- Dust on control PCB
- Blown fuse
- External noise, surge

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E21	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Defective panel switch operation (FDT series)

1. Applicable model

FDT series only

2. Error detection method

Panel switch (PS) has detected Open for more than 1 second.

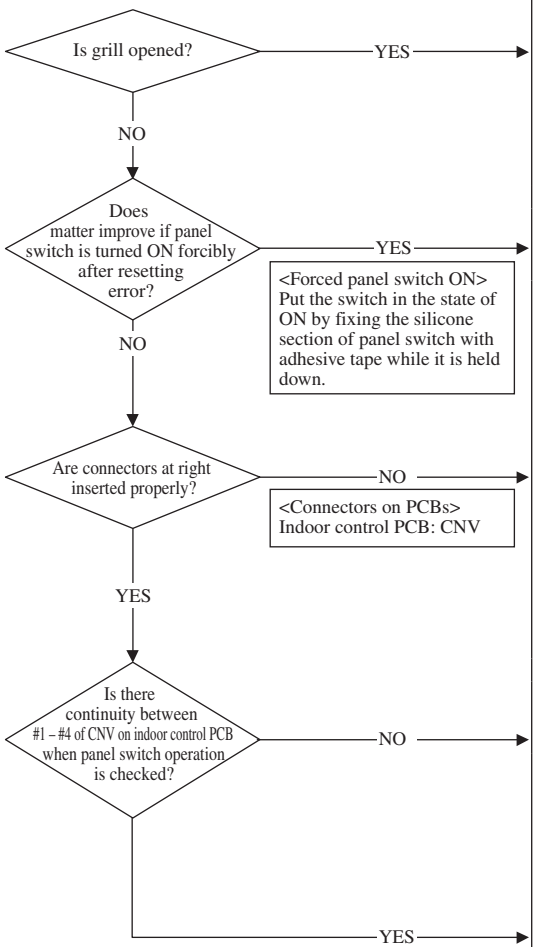
3. Condition of Error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Defective panel switch
- Disconnection of wiring
- Defective indoor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E28	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Remote control temperature thermistor anomaly

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detection of anomalously low temperature (resistance) of remote control temperature thermistor (Thc)

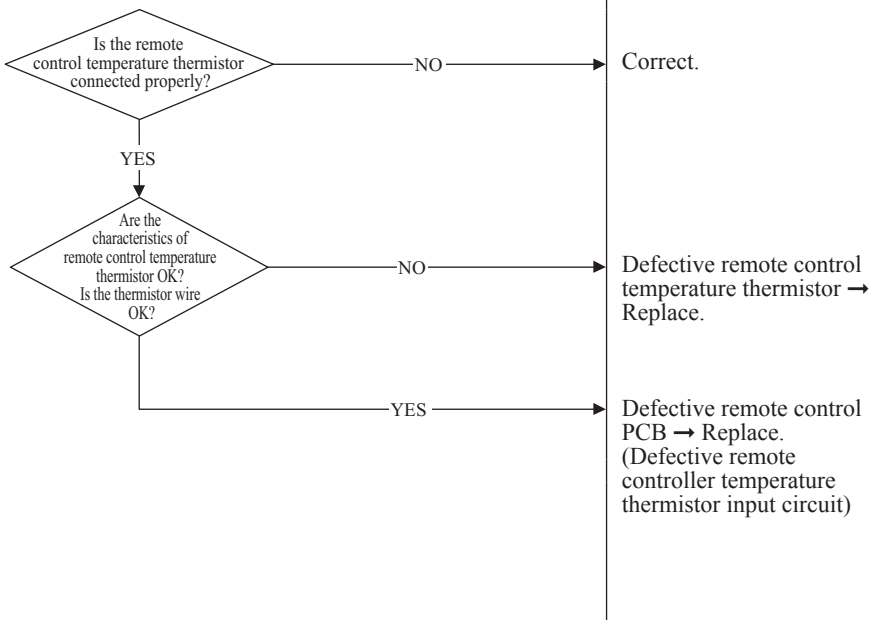
3. Condition of Error displayed

When the temperature thermistor detects -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously, the compressor stops. After 3-minutes delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this error occurs again within 60 minutes after the initial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Faulty connection of remote control temperature thermistor
- Defective remote control temperature thermistor
- Defective remote control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Resistance-temperature characteristics of remote control temperature thermistor (Thc)

Temperature (°C)	Resistance value (kΩ)	Temperature (°C)	Resistance value (kΩ)
0	65	30	16
1	62	32	15
2	59	34	14
4	53	36	13
6	48	38	12
8	44	40	11
10	40	42	9.9
12	36	44	9.2
14	33	46	8.5
16	30	48	7.8
18	27	50	7.3
20	25	52	6.7
22	23	54	6.3
24	21	56	5.8
26	19	58	5.4
28	18	60	5.0

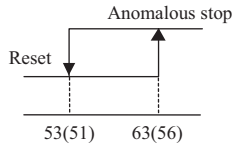
Note: After 10 seconds has passed since remote control thermistor was switched from valid to invalid, E28 will not be displayed even if the thermistor harness is disconnected. At same time the thermistor, which is effective, is switched from remote control thermistor to indoor return air temperature thermistor. Even though the remote control thermistor is set to be Effective, the return air temperature displayed on remote control for checking still shows the value detected by indoor return air temperature thermistor, not by remote control temperature thermistor.

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E35	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Cooling overload operation
	Outdoor	—	2-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method



Outdoor heat exchanger temperature (°C)

Note (1) Values in ( ) are applicable when outdoor temperature (TH2) is lower than 32 °C

3. Condition of Error displayed

When anomalous outdoor heat exchanger temperature occurs 5 times within 60 minutes or 63(56)°C or higher continues for 10 minutes, including the compressor stop.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor
- Defective outdoor main PCB
- Indoor, outdoor unit installation spaces
- Short-circuit of air on indoor, outdoor units
- Fouling, clogging of heat exchanger
- Excessive refrigerant quantity

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
* For the characteristics of outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor, refer to E37. Are normal the characteristics of outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor normal? NO →	Replace outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor.
YES Is the unit operating in the state of cooling overload? YES →	Check unit side. • Isn't the air circulation of outdoor unit short-circuited? • Are installation spaces adequate? • Isn't there any fouling or clogging on heater exchanger?
NO Is the high pressure control normal NO →	Control operation check*
YES Is the temperature (measured actually) at direction of error correct? NO →	Defective outdoor main PCB→Replace.
YES →	Excessive refrigerant amount: Recharge refrigerant by weighing proper amount on a scale.

* For the contents of control, refer to the protective control by controlling compressor rotation speed and cooling high pressure protective control of micro computer control function for corresponding models.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E36	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Discharge pipe temperature error
	Outdoor	—	5-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

For the error detection method, refer to the protective control by controlling compressor rotation speed and cooling high pressure protective control of micro computer control function for corresponding models.

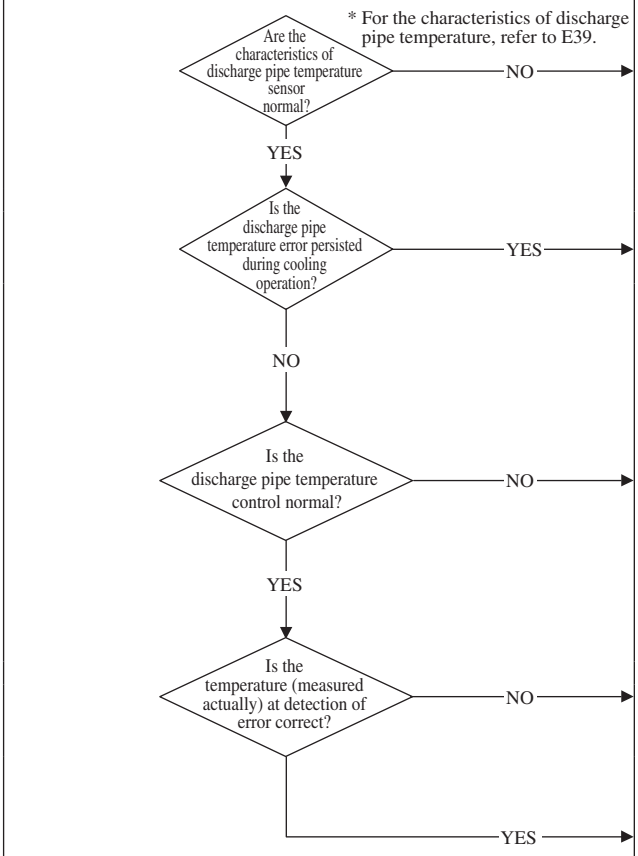
3. Condition of Error displayed

When discharge pipe temperature anomaly is detected 2 times within 60 minutes is compressor stop.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor main PCB
- Defective discharge pipe temperature sensor
- Clogged filter
- Indoor, outdoor unit installation spaces
- Short-circuit of air on indoor, outdoor units
- Fouling, clogging of heat exchanger

5. Troubleshooting



* For the contents of control, refer to the protective control by controlling compressor rotation speed and cooling high pressure protective control of micro computer control function for corresponding models.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E37	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor anomaly
	Outdoor	—	8-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detection of anomalously low temperature (resistance) on the outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor

3. Condition of Error displayed

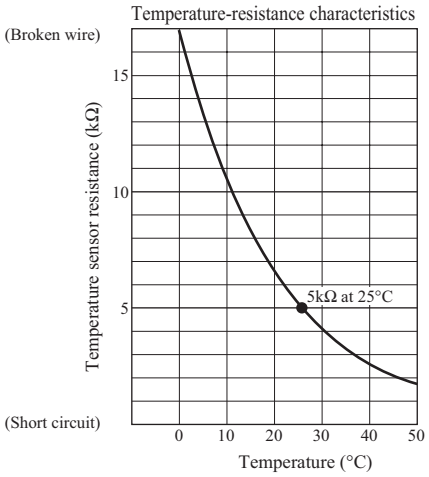
- When the temperature sensor detects -55 °C or lower for 20 seconds continuously within 2 minutes to 2 minutes 20 seconds after the compressor ON, the compressor stops. After 3-minutes delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this anomalous temperature is detected 3 times within 40 minutes.
- When -55 °C or lower is detected for within 20 second after power ON.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor main PCB
- Broken sensor harness or temperature sensing section
- Disconnected wire connection (connector)

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor connector connected properly? → NO	Correct connector.
YES → For the characteristics of outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor, see the following graph. Are the characteristics of outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor OK? → NO	Defective outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor→Replace.
YES	Defective outdoor main PCB→Replace. (Defective outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor input circuit)



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E38	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Outdoor air temperature sensor anomaly
	Outdoor	—	8-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detection of anomalously low temperature (resistance) on outdoor air temperature sensor

3. Condition of Error displayed

- When the temperature sensor detects -55 °C or lower for 5 seconds continuously within 2 minutes to 2 minutes 20 seconds after the compressor ON, the compressor stops. After 3-minutes delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this anomalous temperature is detected 3 times within 40 minutes.
- When -55 °C or lower is detected for within 20 second after power ON.

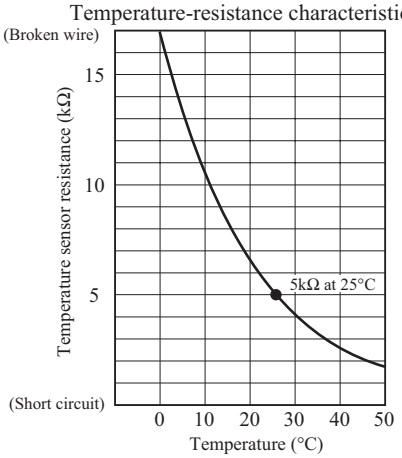
4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor main PCB
- Broken sensor harness or temperature sensing section (Check molding.)
- Disconnected wire connection (connector)

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the outdoor air temperature sensor connector connected properly? — NO	Correct connector.
YES → Is the characteristics of the outdoor air temperature sensor OK? (For the characteristics of outdoor air temperature sensor, see the following graph.) — NO	Defective outdoor air temperature sensor→ Replace.
YES	Defective outdoor main PCB→Replace. (Defective outdoor air temperature sensor input circuit)

Temperature-resistance characteristics



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E39	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Discharge pipe temperature sensor anomaly
	Outdoor	—	8-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detection of anomalously low temperature (resistance) on the discharge pipe temperature sensor

3. Condition of Error displayed

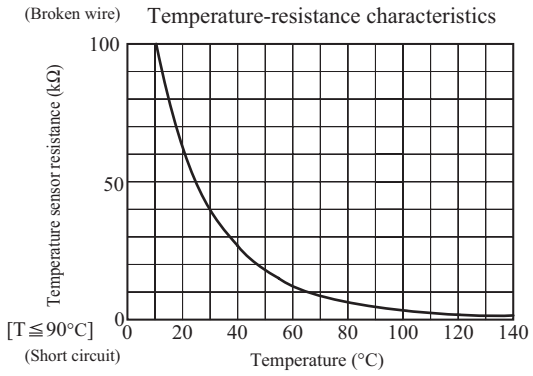
When the temperature sensor detects -25 °C or lower for 5 seconds continuously within 10 minutes to 10 minutes 20 seconds after the compressor ON, the compressor stops. After 3-minutes delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this anomalous temperature is detected 3 times within 40 minutes.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor main PCB
- Broken sensor harness or temperature sensing section (Check molding.)
- Disconnected wire connection (connector)

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the discharge pipe temperature sensor connector connected properly? → NO	Correct connector.
YES → Are the characteristics of discharge pipe temperature sensor OK? (For the characteristics of discharge pipe temperature sensor, see the following graph.) → NO	Defective discharge pipe temperature sensor→ Replace.
YES	Defective outdoor main PCB→Replace. (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E40	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Service valve (gas side) closing operation
	Outdoor	—	4-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

If the inverter output current value exceeds the setting value within 80 seconds after the compressor ON in the heating mode, the compressor stops.

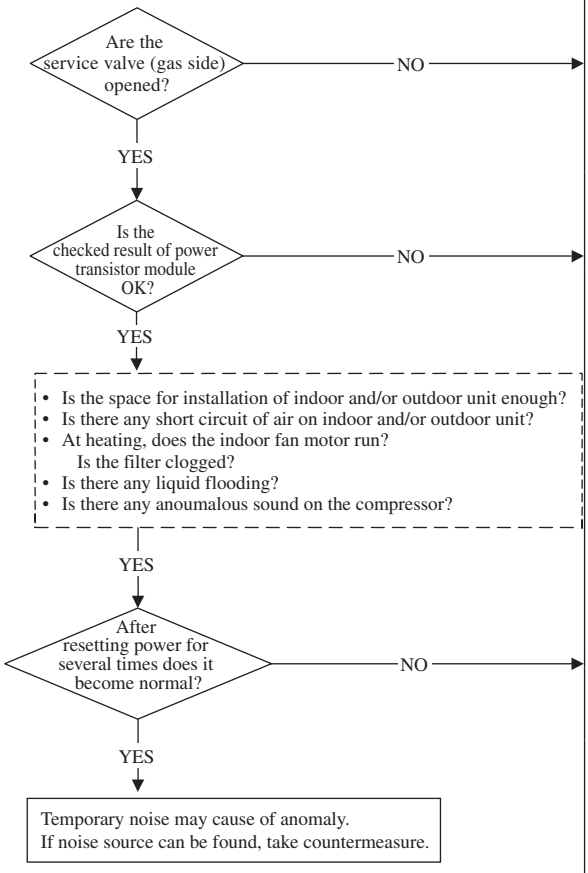
3. Condition of Error displayed

- If the output current of inveter exceeds the specifications, it makes the compressor stopping. (In heating mode)
- After 3-minute delay, the compressor restarts, but if this anomaly occurs 2 times within 20 minute after the intial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Service valve (gas side) closing
- Defective outdoor main PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E42	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Current cut (1/2)
	Outdoor	—	1-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

In order to prevent from overcurrent of inverter, if the current exceeds the specifications, it makes the compressor stopping.

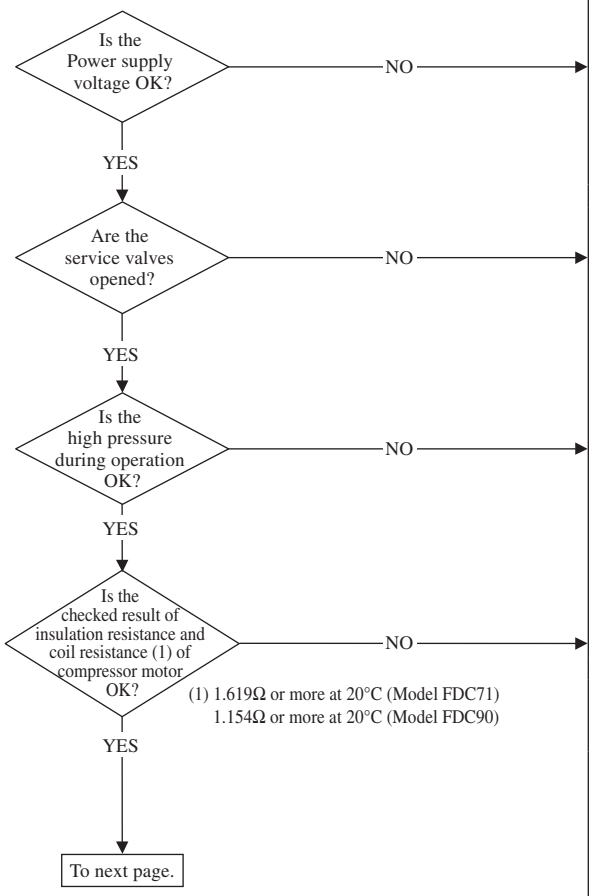
3. Condition of Error displayed

- If the output current of inveter exceeds the specifications, it makes the compressor stopping.

4. Presumable cause

- The valves closed
- Faulty power supply
- Insufficient refrigerant amount
- Faulty compressor
- Faulty power transistor module

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E42	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Current cut (2/2)
	Outdoor	—	1-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

In order to prevent from overcurrent of inverter, if the current exceeds the specifications, it makes the compressor stopping.

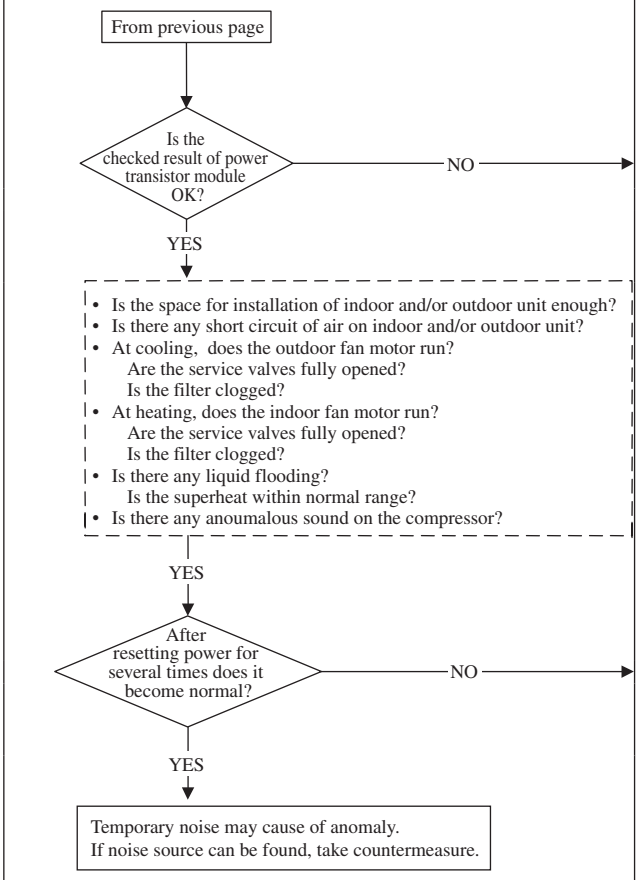
3. Condition of Error displayed

- If the output current of inveter exceeds the specifications, it makes the compressor stopping.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor main PCB
- Faulty power supply
- Insufficient refrigerant amount
- Faulty compressor
- Faulty power transistor module

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E47	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Active filter voltage error
	Outdoor	—	2-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Error is displayed if the converter voltage exceeds target voltage (3 times within 20 minutes). Remote control may be set after 3 minutes delay.
Error is displayed if the converter voltage is lower than 210V (1-time within 5 seconds after power ON)

3. Condition of Error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor main PCB
- Dust on outdoor main PCB
- Anomalous power supply

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the power supply normal? — NO	Restore normal condition.
YES → Is voltage within the specified range? — NO	Restore normal condition.
YES → Check soldered surfaces on the outdoor main PCB for foreign matter like dust, fouling, etc. — NO	Remove foreign matter like dust, fouling, etc.
YES	Defective outdoor main PCB→Replace.

• If the overvoltage (DC voltage is higher than 400V) occurs, Red LED flashes 1-time.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E48	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Outdoor fan motor anomaly
	Outdoor	—	ON	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detected by rotation speed of outdoor fan motor

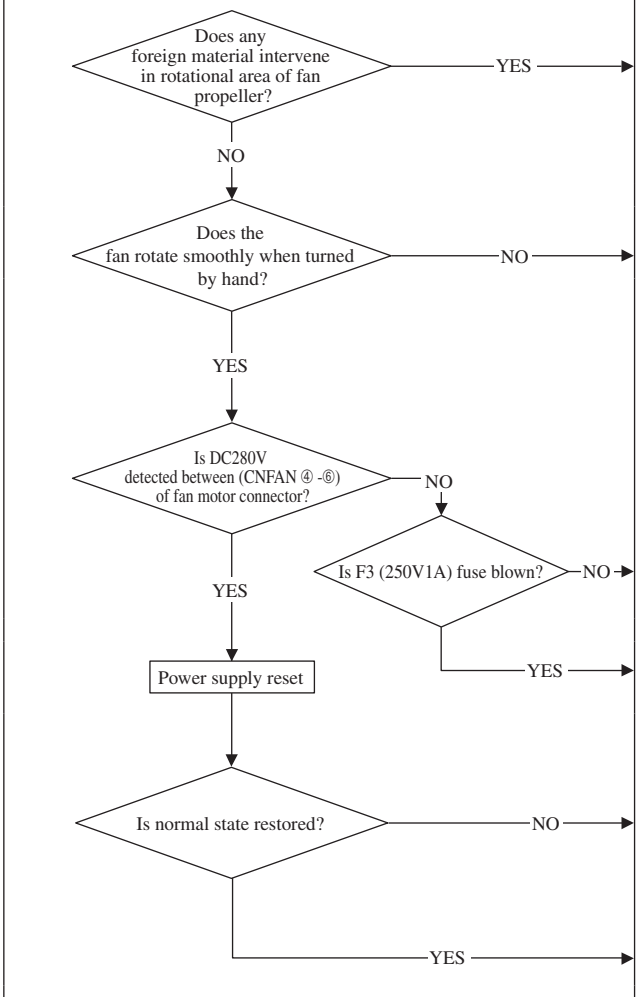
3. Condition of Error displayed

When actual rotation speed of outdoor fan motor drops to 75min^{-1} or lower for 30 minutes continuously, the compressor and the outdoor fan motor stop. After 3-minutes delay, it starts again automatically, but if this anomaly occurs 3 times within 60 minutes after the initial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor main PCB
- Foreign material at rotational area of fan propeller
- Defective fan motor
- Dust on outdoor main PCB
- Blown F3 fuse

5. Troubleshooting



Note: When E48 error occurs, in almost cases F3 fuse (1A) on the outdoor main PCB is blown. There are a lot of cases that fuse is blown and E48 occurs due to defective fan motor. And even though only the outdoor main PCB (or fuse) is replaced,, another trouble could occur. Therefore when fuse is blown, check whether the fan motor is OK or not.
After confirming the fan motor normal, check by power ON. (Don't power ON without confirming the fan motor normal.)

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E51	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Power transistor anomaly
	Outdoor	—	1-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Power transistor primary current

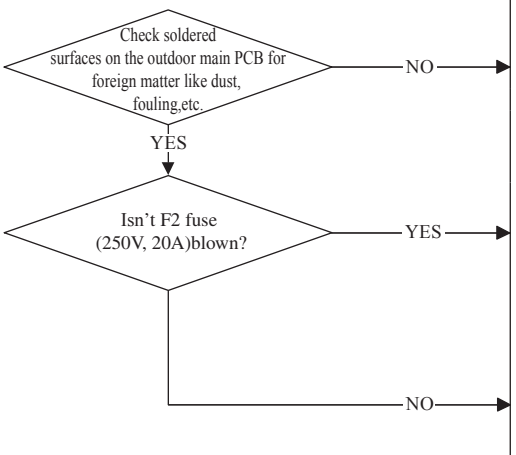
3. Condition of Error displayed

If the power transistor primary current exceeds the setting value for 3 seconds, the compressor stops.

4. Presumable cause

- Faulty outdoor main PCB
- Dust on outdoor main PCB
- Blown F2 fuse

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E57	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Insufficient refrigerant amount or detection of service valve closure
	Outdoor	—	2-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

- Judge insufficient refrigerant amount by detecting the temperature differnce between indoor heat exchanger (ThI-R) and indoor return air (ThI-A).

3. Condition of Error displayed

When the insufficient refrigerant amount is detected 3 times within 60 minutes.

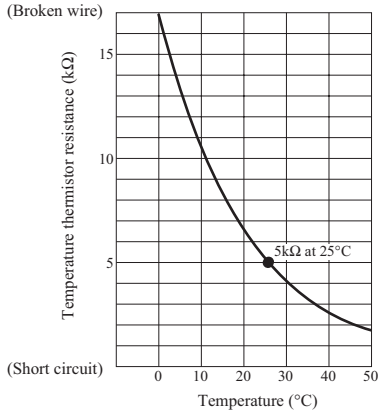
4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor
- Defective indoor return air temperature thermistor
- Defective indoor control PCB
- Insufficient refregerant amount

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the service valve fully opened? — NO	Open fully.
YES → Are the connections of indoor heat exchanger and/or return air temperature thermistor connectors OK? — NO	Correct indoor heat exchanger, return air temperature thermistor connector connections.
YES → Are the characteristics of indoor heat exchanger and/or return air temperature thermistor OK? — NO	Defective indoor heat exchanger, return air temperature thermistor → Replace.
YES → Is the low pressure during operation normal? — NO	Charge refrigerant.
YES	Defective indoor control PCB→Replace. (Defective indoor heat exchanger, return air temperature thermistor input circuits)

Indoor heat exchanger, return air temperature thermistor
Temperature-resistance characteristics



Note: When the compressor speed is 40 rps or under at 5 minutes after the start of compressor or the completion of defrosting, the low refrigerant protection control judges, by detecting the difference between the indoor heat exchanger temperature (ThI-R) and the indoor return air temperature (ThI-A), that it is in the state of gas low, and stops the compressor.
Cooling: Indoor return air temperature (ThI-A) – Indoor heat exchanger temperature (ThI-R) ≧ 4 deg
Heating: Indoor heat exchanger temperature (ThI-R) – Indoor return air temperature (ThI-A) ≦ 4 deg

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E58	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Current safe stop
	Outdoor	—	3-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When the current safe control has operated at the compressor speed of 30 rps or under.

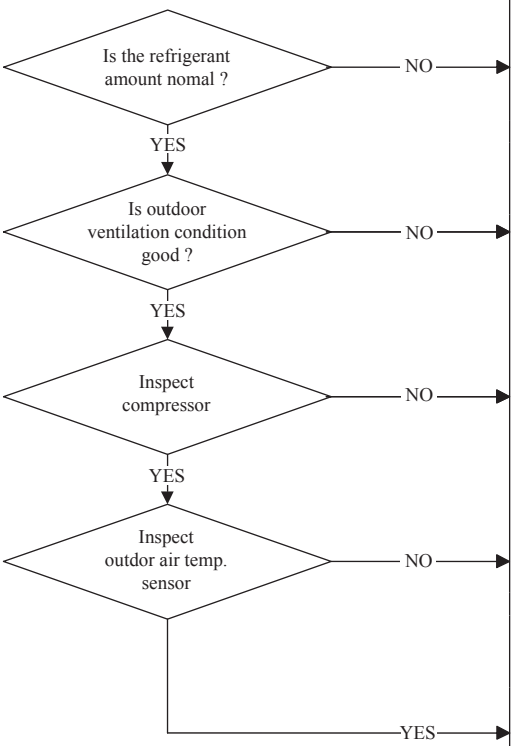
3. Condition of Error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Excessive refrigerant amount
- Indoor,outdoor unit installation spaces
- Faulty compressor
- Defective outdor air temp. sensor
- Defective outdoor main PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E59	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Compressor startup failure
	Outdoor	—	2-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

- If it fails to change over to the rotor detection operation of compressor motor
- Power supply voltage is less than 120V

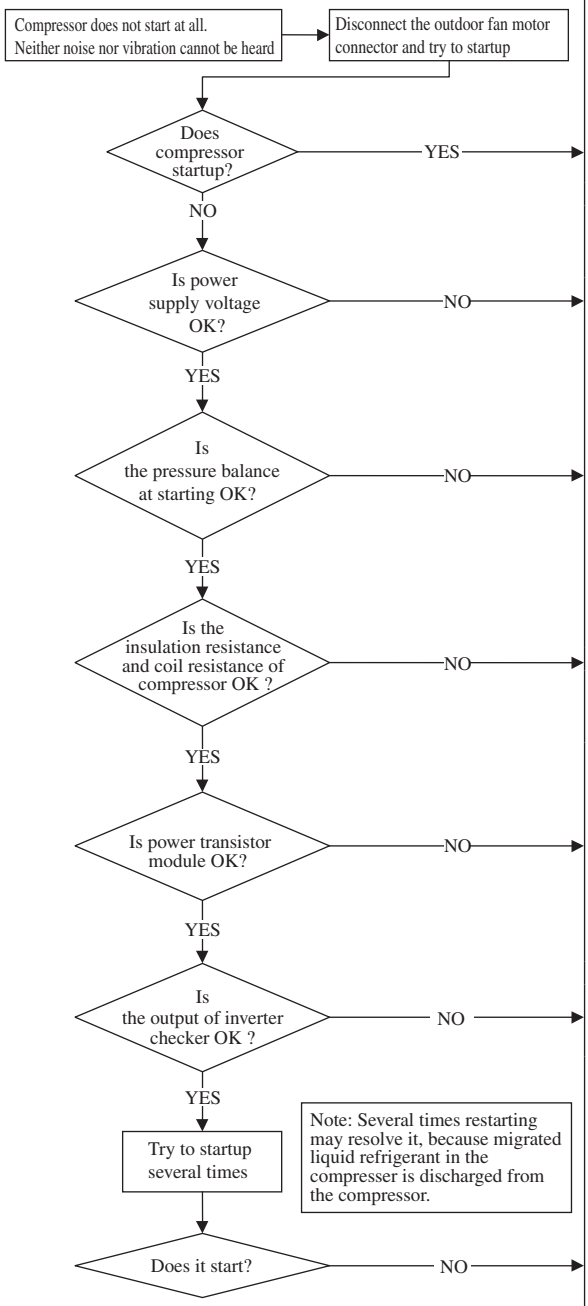
3. Condition of Error displayed

If compressor fails to startup for 42 times

4. Presumable cause

- Faulty outdoor fan motor
- Faulty outdoor main PCB
- Anomalous power supply voltage
- Improper refrigerant amount and refrigerant circuit
- Faulty compressor (Motor bearing)

5. Troubleshooting



Note: Insulation resistance
- The unit is left for long period without power supply or soon after installation, migrated liquid refrigerant may dissolve in the refrigerant oil in the compressor. In such case insulation resistance decreases upto several MΩ or lower. If the electric leakage breaker is activated due to low insulation resistance, check followings.
  ① Check whehter the insulation resistance can recover or not, ater 6 hours has passed since power ON. (By energize the crankcase heater, migrated liquid refrigerant in the refrigerant oil in compressor can be evaporated)
  ② Check whether the electric leakage breake conforms to high-hermonic specifications (As units has inverter, in order to prevent from improper operation, be sure to use high-hermonic one.)

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E60	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Compressor rotor lock error
	Outdoor	—	7-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Compressor rotor position

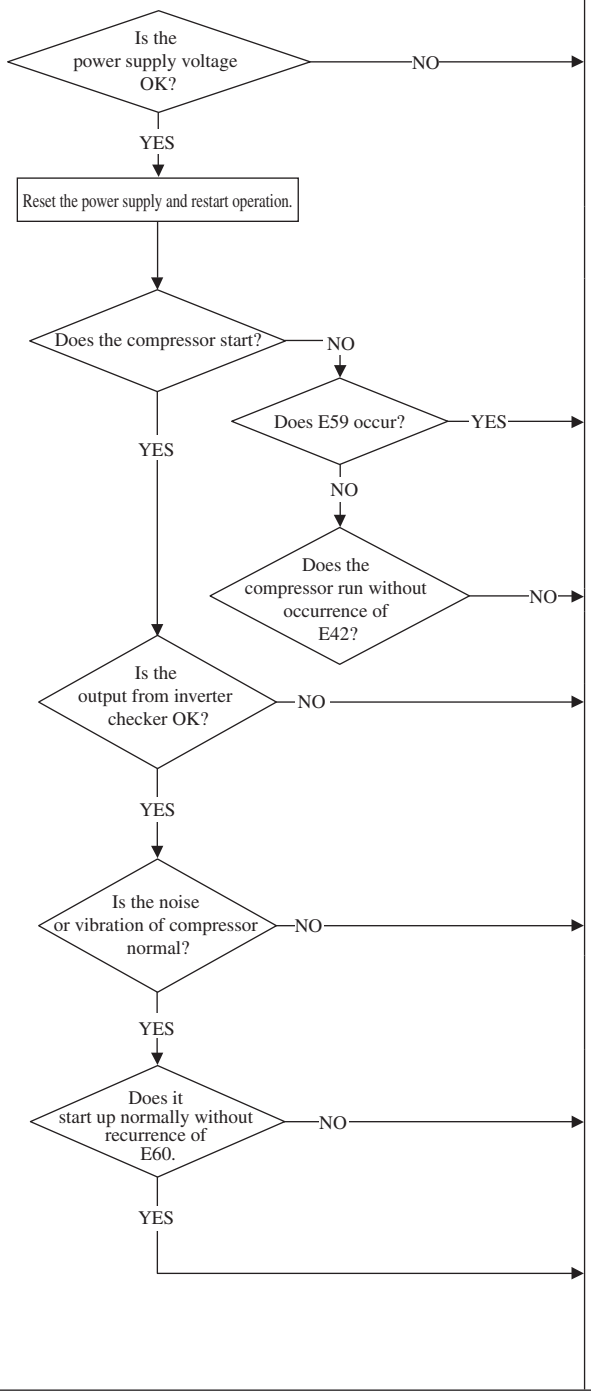
3. Condition of Error displayed

If it fails again to detect the rotor position after shifting to the compressor rotor position detection operation, the compressor stops.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor fan motor
- Defective outdoor main PCB
- Anomalous power supply voltage
- Improper refrigerant amount and refrigerant circuit
- Defective compressor (motor, bearing)

5. Troubleshooting



Note: Insulation resistance
- The unit is left for long period without power supply or soon after installation, migrated liquid refrigerant may dissolve in the refrigerant oil in the compressor. In such case insulation resistance decreases upto several MΩ or lower. If the electric leakage breaker is activated due to low insulation resistance, check followings.
  ① Check whehter the insulation resistance can recover or not, ater 6 hours has passed since power ON. (By energize the crankcase heater, migrated liquid refrigerant in the refrigerant oil in compressor can be evaporated)
  ② Check whether the electric leakage breake conforms to high-hermonic specifications (As units has inverter, in order to prevent from improper operation, be sure to use high-hermonic one.)

2.2 SRK series

This chapter has described about an indoor unit. Look at 2.1 chapters about the outdoor unit.

(1) Cautions

(a) If you are disassembling and checking an air conditioner, be sure to turn off the power before beginning. When working on indoor units, let the unit sit for about 1 minute after turning off the power before you begin work.

(b) When taking out printed circuit boards, be sure to do so without exerting force on the circuit boards or package components.

(c) When disconnecting and connecting connectors, take hold of the connector housing and do not pull on the lead wires.

(2) Items to check before troubleshooting

(a) Have you thoroughly investigated the details of the trouble which the customer is complaining about?

(b) Is the air conditioner running? Is it displaying any self-diagnosis information?

(c) Is a power supply with the correct voltage connected?

(d) Are the control lines connecting the indoor and outdoor units wired correctly and connected securely?

(e) Is the outdoor unit's service valve open?

(3) Troubleshooting procedure (If the air conditioner does not run at all)

If the air conditioner does not run at all, diagnose the trouble using the following troubleshooting procedure. If the air conditioner is running but breaks down, proceed to troubleshooting step (4).

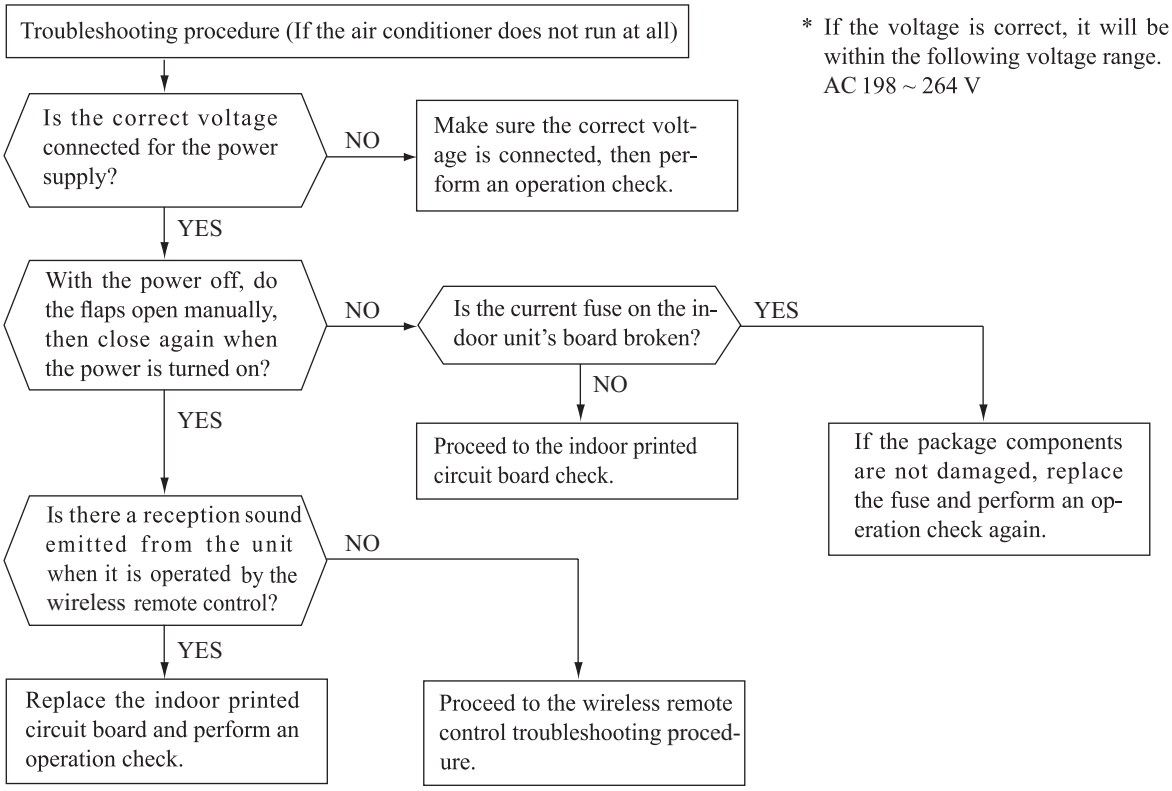
Important When all the following conditions are met, we say that the air conditioner will not run at all.

(a) The RUN light does not light up.

(b) The flaps do not open.

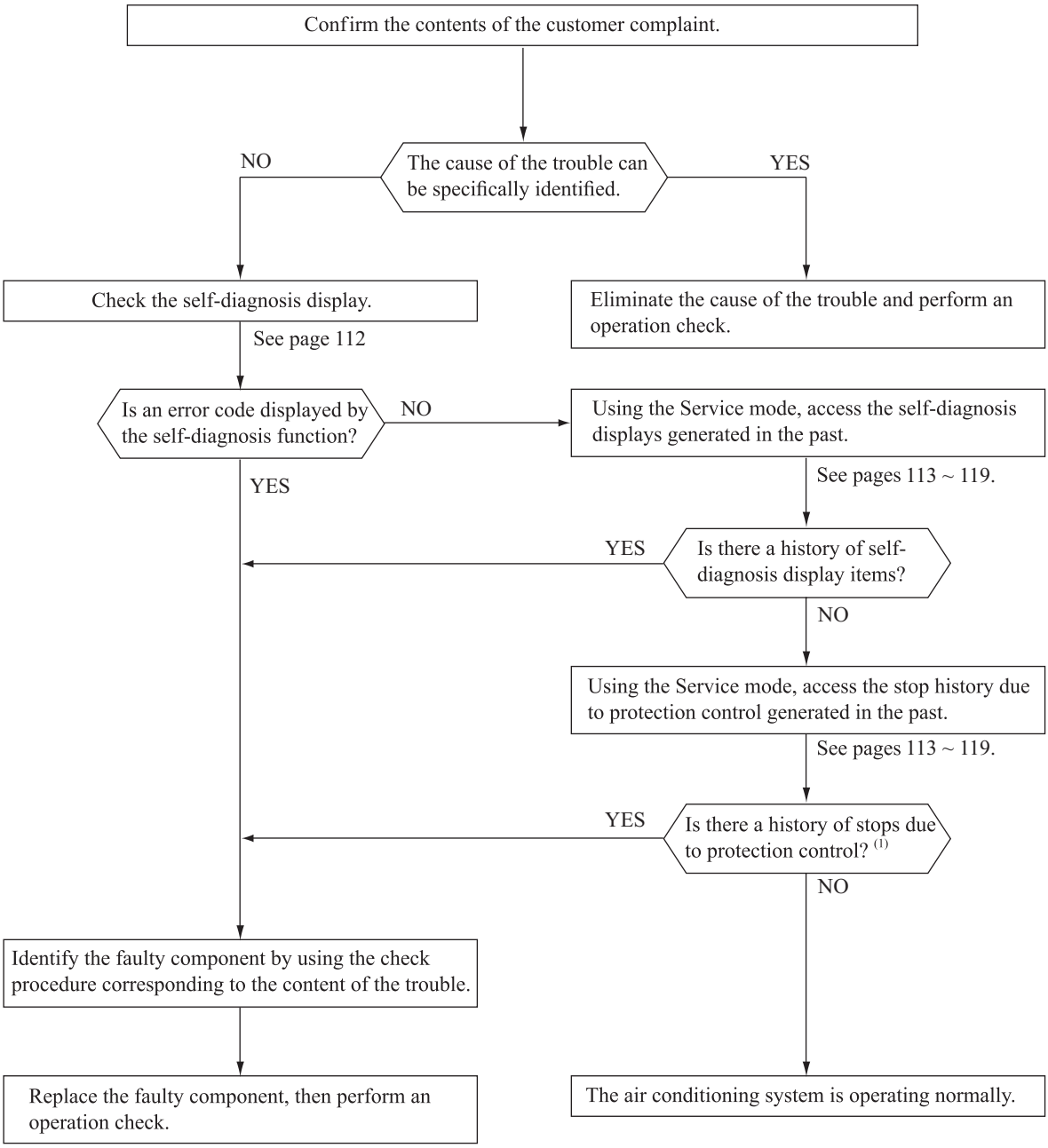
(c) The indoor unit fan motors do not run.

(d) The self-diagnosis display does not function.



* If the voltage is correct, it will be within the following voltage range.
AC 198 ~ 264 V

(4) Troubleshooting procedure (If the air conditioner runs)



Note (1) Even in cases where only intermittent stop data are generated, the air conditioning system is normal. However, if the same protective operation recurs repeatedly (3 or more times), it will lead to customer complaints. Judge the conditions in comparison with the contents of the complaints.

(5) Self-diagnosis table

When this air conditioner performs an emergency stop, the reason why the emergency stop occurred is displayed by the flashing of display lights. If the air conditioner is operated using the remote control 3 minutes or more after the emergency stop, the trouble display stops and the air conditioner resumes operation.(1)

Indoor unit display panel		Outdoor control PCB Red LED	Wired(2) remote control display	Description of trouble	Cause	Display (flashing) condition
RUN light	TIMER light					
1-time flash	ON	—	—	Heat exchanger sensor 1 error	• Broken heat exchanger sensor 1 wire, poor connector connection • Indoor PCB is faulty	When a heat exchanger sensor 1 wire disconnection is detected while operation is stopped. (If a temperature of –28ºC or lower is detected for 15 seconds, it is judged that the wire is disconnected.) (Not displayed during operation.)
2-time flash	ON	—	—	Room temperature sensor error	• Broken room temperature sensor wire, poor connector connection • Indoor PCB is faulty	When a room temperature sensor wire disconnection is detected while operation is stopped. (If a temperature of –45ºC or lower is detected for 15 seconds, it is judged that the wire is disconnected.) (Not displayed during operation.)
3-time flash	ON	—	—	Heat exchanger sensor 2 error	• Broken heat exchanger sensor 2 wire, poor connector connection • Indoor PCB is faulty	When a heat exchanger sensor 2 wire disconnection is detected while operation is stopped. (If a temperature of –28ºC or lower is detected for 15 seconds, it is judged that the wire is disconnected.) (Not displayed during operation.)
6-time flash	ON	—	E 16	Indoor fan motor error	• Defective fan motor, poor connector connection	When conditions for turning the indoor unit's fan motor on exist during air conditione roperation, an indoor unit fan motor speed of 300 min^{-1} or lower is measured for 30 seconds or longer. (The air conditioner stops.)
Keeps flashing	1-time flash	8-time flash	E 38	Outdoor air temperature sensor anomaly	• Outdoor aie temperature sensor • Outdoor main PCB is faulty	–55ºC or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous temperature. Or –55ºC or lower is detected for within 20 seconds after power ON.
Keeps flashing	2-time flash	8-time flash	E 37	Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor anomaly	• Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor • Outdoor main PCB is faulty	–55ºC or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous sensor. Or –55ºC or lower is detected for within 20 seconds after power ON.
Keeps flashing	4-time flash	8-time flash	E 39	Discharge pipe temperature sensor anomaly	• Discharge pipe temperature sensor • Outdoor main PCB	–25ºC or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous sensor.
ON	1-time flash	1-time flash	E 42	Current cut	• Outdoor main PCB is faulty • Defective compressor • Installation, operation status	If the output current of inveter exceeds the specifications, it makes the compressor stopping.
ON	2-time flash	2-time flash	E 59	Compressor startup failure	• Defective compressor • Outdoor main PCB is faulty	If compressor fails to startup for 42 times.
ON	3-time flash	3-time flash	E 58	Current safe stop	• Overload operation • Overcharge • Compressor locking	When the current safe control has operated at the compressor speed of 30 rps or under.
ON	4-time flash	1-time flash	E 51	Power transistor anomaly	• Power transistor error (Outdoor main PCB is faulty)	If the power transistor primary current exceeds the setting value for 3 seconds, the compressor stops.
ON	5-time flash	5-time flash	E 36	Discharge pipe temperature error	• Installation, operation status • Discharge pipe temperature sensor • Outdoor main PCB is faulty	When discharge pipe temperature anomaly is detected 2 times within 60 minutes is compressor stop.
ON	6-time flash	—	E 5	Error of signal transmission	• Defective power supply, Broken signal wire, defective indoor/outdoor PCB	When there is no signal between the indoor PCB and outdoor PCB for 10 seconds or longer (when the power is turned on), or when there is no signal for 7 minute 35 seconds or longer (during operation)(the compressor is stopped).
ON	7-time flash	ON	E 48	Outdoor fan motor anomaly	• Defective fan motor • Outdoor main PCB is faulty	When actual rotation speed of outdoor fan motor drops to 75min^{-1} or lower for 30 minutes continuously, the compressor and the outdoor fan motor stop. After 3-minutes delay, it starts again automatically, but if this anomaly occurs 3 times within 60 minutes after the initial detection.
ON	Keeps flashing	2-time flash	E 35	Cooling overload operation	• Installation, operation status • Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor • Outdoor main PCB is faulty	When anomalous outdoor heat exchanger temperature occurs 5 times within 60 minutes or 63℃ or higher continues for 10 minutes, including the compressor stop.
2-time flash	2-time flash	7-time flash	E 60	Compressor rotor lock error	• Defective compressor	If it fails again to detect the rotor position after shifting to the compressor rotor position detection operation, the compressor stops.
5-time flash	ON	2-time flash	E 47	Active filter voltage error	• Outdoor main PCB is faulty	Error is displayed if the converter voltage exceeds target voltage (3 times within 20 minutes). Remote control may be set after 3 minutes delay. Error is displayed if the converter voltage is lower than 210V (1-time within 5 seconds after power ON)
7-time flash	ON	1-time flash	E 57	Insufficient refri -gerant amount or detection of servi -ce valve closure	• Operation status • Installation status	When the insufficient refrigerant amount is detected 3 times within 60 minutes.
7-time flash	1-time flash	4-time flash	E 40	Service valve (gas side) closing opertion	• Service valve is closing. • Installation, operation status	If the output current of inverter exceeds the specifications, it makes the compressor stopping. (In heating mode) After 3-minute delay, the compressor restarts, but if this anomaly occurs 2 times within 20 minute after the initial detection.
—	—	—	E 1	Error of wired remote control wiring	• Broken wired remote control wire, defective indoor PCB	The wired remote control wire Y is open. The wired remote control wires X and Y are reversely connected. Noise is penetrating the wired remote control lines. The wired remote control or indoor PCB is faulty. (The communications circuit is faulty.)

Notes (1) The air conditioner cannot be restarted using the remote control for 3 minutes after operation stops.
(2) The wired remote control is optional parts.

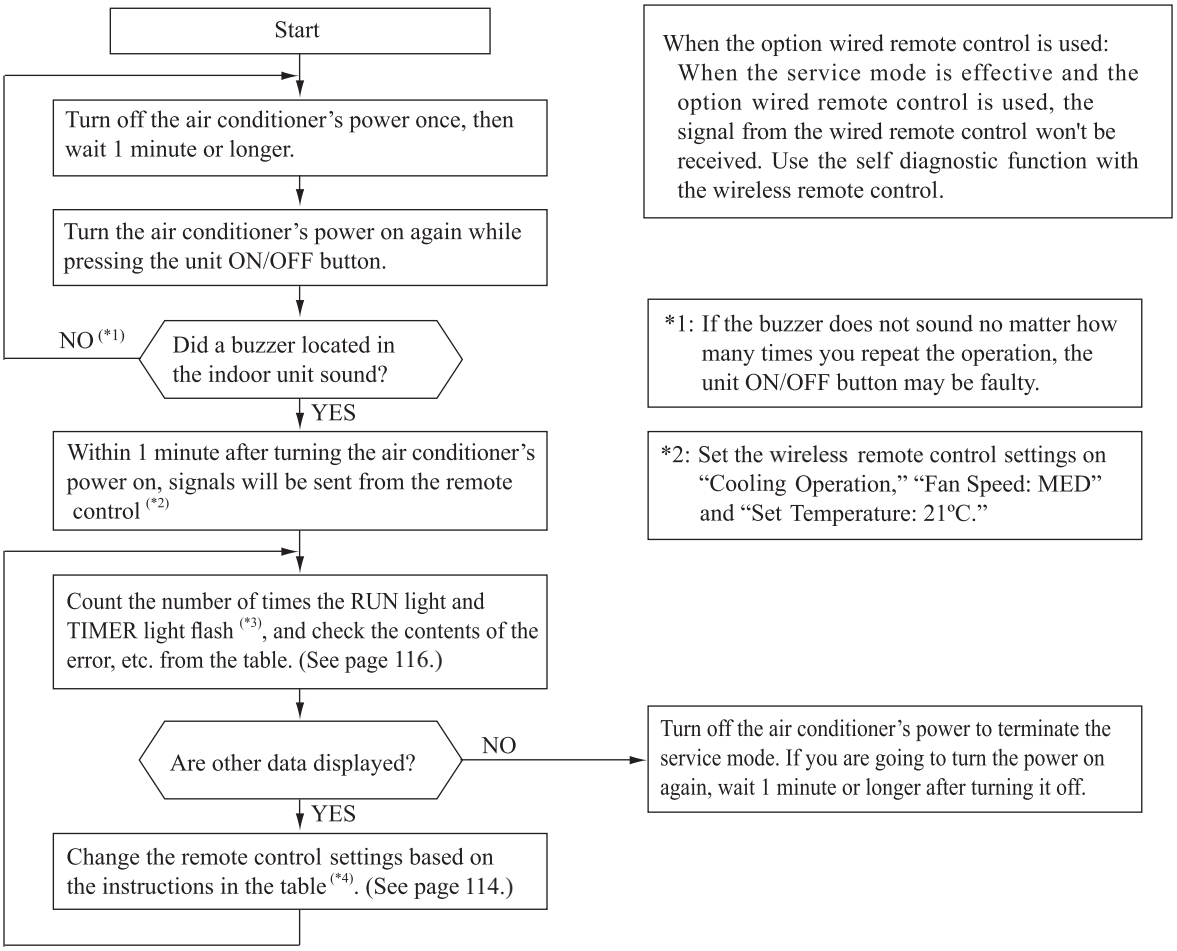
(6) Service mode (Trouble mode access function)

This air conditioner is capable of recording error displays and protective stops (service data) which have occurred in the past. If self-diagnosis displays cannot be confirmed, it is possible to get a grasp of the conditions at the time trouble occurred by checking these service data.

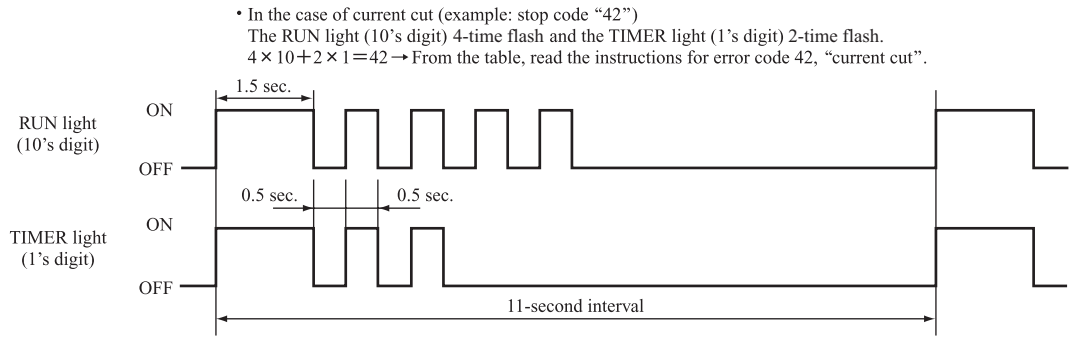
(a) Explanation of terms

Term	Explanation
Service mode	The service mode is the mode where service data are displayed by flashing of the display lights when the operations in item (b) below are performed with the indoor controller.
Service data	These are the contents of error displays and protective stops which occurred in the past in the air conditioner system. Error display contents and protective stop data from past anomalous operations of the air conditioner system are saved in the indoor unit controller's non-volatile memory (memory which is not erased when the power goes off). There are two types of data, self-diagnosis data and stop data, described below.
Self-diagnosis data	These are the data which display the reason why a stop occurred when an error display(self-diagnosis display) occurred in an indoor unit. Data are recorded for up to 5 previous occurrences. Data which are older than the 5th previous occurrence are erased. In addition, data on the temperature of each sensor (room temperature, indoor heat exchanger, outdoor heat exchanger, outdoor air temperature, discharge pipe), remote control information (operation switching, fan speed switching) are recorded when trouble occurs, so more detailed information can be checked.
Stop data	These are the data which display the reason by a stop occurred when the air conditioning system performed protective stops, etc. in the past. Even if stop data alone are generated, the system restarts automatically. (After executing the stop mode while the display is normal, the system restarts automatically.) Data for up to 10 previous occasions are stored. Data older than the 10th previous occasion are erased. (Important) In cases where transient stop data only are generated, the air conditioner system may still be normal. However, if the same protective stop occurs frequently (3 or more times), it could lead to customer complaints.

(b) Service mode display procedure



*3: To count the number of flashes in the service mode, count the number of flashes after the light lights up for 1.5 second initially (start signal). (The time that the light lights up for 1.5 second (start signal) is not counted in the number of flashes.)



*4: When in the service mode, when the wireless remote control settings (operation mode, fan speed mode, temperature setting) are set as shown in the following table and sent to the air conditioner unit, the unit switches to display of service data.

(i) Self-diagnosis data

What are Self-diagnosis Data? .....These are control data (reasons for stops, temperature at each sensor, wireless remote control information) from the time when there were error displays (abnormal stops) in the indoor unit in the past.

Data from up to 5 previous occasions are stored in memory. Data older than the 5th previous occasion are erased.

The temperature setting indicates how many occasions previous to the present setting the error display data are and the operation mode and fan speed mode data show the type of data.

Wireless remote control setting		Contents of output data
Operation mode	Fan speed mode	
Cooling	MED	Displays the reason for stopping display in the past (error code).
	HI	Displays the room temperature sensor temperature at the time the error code was displayed in the past.
	AUTO	Displays the indoor heat exchanger sensor temperature at the time the error code was displayed in the past.
Heating	LO	Displays the wireless remote control information at the time the error code was displayed in the past.
	MED	Displays the outdoor air temperature sensor temperature at the time the error code was displayed in the past.
	HI	Displays the outdoor heat exchanger sensor temperature at the time the error code was displayed in the past.
	AUTO	Displays the discharge pipe sensor temperature at the time the error code was displayed in the past.

Wireless remote control setting	Indicates the number of occasions previous to the present the error display data are from.
Temperature setting	
21ºC	1 time previous (previous time)
22ºC	2 times previous
23ºC	3 times previous
24ºC	4 times previous
25ºC	5 times previous

Only for indoor heat exchanger sensor 2

Wireless remote control setting	Indicates the number of occasions previous to the present the error display data are from.
Temperature setting	
26ºC	1 time previous (previous time)
27ºC	2 times previous
28ºC	3 times previous
29ºC	4 times previous
30ºC	5 times previous

(Example)

Wireless remote control setting			Displayed data
Operation mode	Fan speed mode	Temperature setting	
Cooling	MED	21ºC	Displays the reason for the stop (error code) the previous time an error was displayed.
		22ºC	Displays the reason for the stop (error code) 2 times previous when an error was displayed.
		23ºC	Displays the reason for the stop (error code) 3 times previous when an error was displayed.
		24ºC	Displays the reason for the stop (error code) 4 times previous when an error was displayed.
		25ºC	Displays the reason for the stop (error code) 5 times previous when an error was displayed.

(ii) Stop data

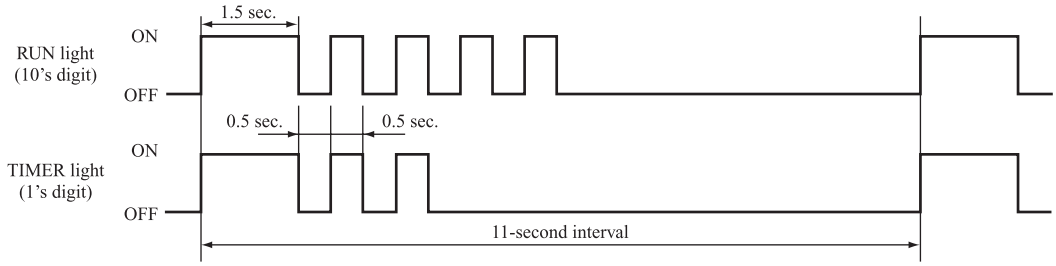
Wireless remote control setting			Displayed data
Operation mode	Fan speed mode	Temperature setting	
Cooling	LO	21ºC	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) the previous time when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		22ºC	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 2 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		23ºC	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 3 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		24ºC	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 4 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		25ºC	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 5 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		26ºC	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 6 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		27ºC	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 7 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		28ºC	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 8 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		29ºC	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 9 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		30ºC	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 10 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.

(c) Error code, stop code table (Assignment of error codes and stop codes is done in common for all models.)

Number of flashes when in service mode		Stop coad or Error coad	Error content	Cause	Occurrence conditions	Error display	Auto recovery
RUN light (10's digit)	TIMER light (1's digit)						
OFF	OFF	0	Normal	—	—	—	—
	5-time flash	05	Can not receive signals for 35 seconds (if communications have recovered)	Power supply is faulty. Power supply cables and signal lines are improperly wired. Indoor or outdoor PCB are faulty.	When 35 seconds passes without communications signals from either the outdoor unit or the indoor unit being detected correctly.	○	—
3-time flash	5-time flash	35	Cooling high pressure control	Cooling overload operation. Outdoor unit fan speed drops. Outdoor heat exchanger sensor is short circuit.	When the outdoor heat exchanger sensor's value exceeds the set value.	○ (5 times)	○
	6-time flash	36	Compressor overheat 115°C	Refrigerant is insufficient. Discharge pipe sensor is faulty. Service valve is closed.	When the discharge pipe sensor's value exceeds the set value.	○ (2 times)	○
	7-time flash	37	Outdoor heat exchanger sensor is abnormal	Outdoor heat exchanger sensor wire is disconnected. Connector connections are poor. Outdoor main PCB is faulty.	–55°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after intial detection of this anomalous temperature. Or–55°C lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 20 seconds after power ON.	○ (3 times)	○
	8-time flash	38	Outdoor air temperature sensor is abnormal	Outdoor air temperature sensor wire is disconnected. Connector connections are poor. Outdoor main PCB is faulty.	–55°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after intial detection of this anomalous temperature. Or–55°C lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 20 seconds after power ON.	○ (3 times)	○
	9-time flash	39	Discharge pipe sensor is abnormal (anomalous stop)	Discharge pipe sensor wire is disconnected. Connector connections are poor. Outdoor main PCB is faulty.	–25°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after intial detection of this anomalous temperature.	○ (3 times)	○
4-time flash	OFF	40	Service valve (gas side) closed operation	Service valve (gas side)closed Outdoor main PCB is faulty.	If the inverter output current value exceeds the setting value within 80 seconds after the compressor ON in the heating mode, the compressor stops.	○ (2 times)	○
	2-time flash	42	Current cut	Compressor lock. Compressor wiring short circuit. Compressor output is open phase. Outdoor main PCB is faulty. Service valve is closed. Electronic expansion valve is faulty. Compressor is faulty.	In order to prevent from overcurrent of inverter, if the current exceeds the specifications, it makes the compressor stopping.	○ (2 times)	○
	7-time flash	47	Active filter voltage error	Defective active filter.	Error is displayed if the converter voltage exceeds target voltage (3 times within 20 minutes). Remote control may be set after 3 minutes delay. Error is displayed if the converter voltage is lower than 210V (1-time within 5 seconds after power ON)	○	—
	8-time flash	48	Outdoor unit's fan motor is abnormal	Outdoor fan motor is faulty. Connector connections are poor. Outdoor PCB is faulty.	When a fan speed of 75 min^{-1} or lower continues for 30 seconds or longer.	○ (3 times)	○
5-time flash	1-time flash	51	Short circuit in the power transistor (high side) Current cut circuit breakdown	Outdoor main PCB is faulty. Power transistor is damaged.	When it is judged that the power transistor was damaged at the time the compressor started.	○	—
	7-time flash	57	Refrigeration cycle system protective control	Service valve is closed. Refrigerant is insufficient.	When refrigeration cycle system protective control operates.	○ (3 times)	○
	8-time flash	58	Current safe	Refrigerant is overcharge. Compressor lock. Overload operation.	When there is a current safe stop during operation.	—	○
	9-time flash	59	Compressor wiring is unconnection Voltage drop Low speed protective control	Compressor wiring is disconnected. Power transistor is damaged. Power supply construction is defective. Outdoor main PCB is faulty. Compressor is faulty.	When the current is 1A or less at the time the compressor started. When the power supply voltage drops during operation. When the compressor command speed is 1ower than 32 rps for 60 minutes.	○	○
6-time flash	OFF	60	Rotor lock	Compressor is faulty. Compressor output is open phase. Electronic expansion valve is faulty. Overload operation. Outdoor main PCB is faulty.	After the compressor starts, when the compressor stops due to rotor lock.	○ (2 times)	○
	1-time flash	61	Connection lines between the indoor and outdoor units are faulty	Connection lines are faulty. Indoor or outdoor PCB are faulty.	When 10 seconds passes after the power is turned on without communications signals from the indoor or outdoor unit being detected correctly.	○	—
	2-time flash	62	Serial transmission error	Indoor or outdoor PCB are faulty. Noise is causing faulty operation.	When 7 minute 35 seconds passes without communications signals from either the outdoor unit or the indoor unit being detected correctly.	○	—
8-time flash	OFF	80	Indoor unit's fan motor is abnormal	Indoor fan motor is faulty. Connector connections are poor. Indoor PCB is faulty.	When the indoor unit's fan motor is detected to be running at 300 min^{-1} or lower speed with the fan motor in the ON condition while the air conditioner is running.	○	—
	2-time flash	82	Indoor heat exchanger sensor is abnormal (anomalous stop)	Indoor heat exchanger sensor wire is disconnected. Connector connections are poor.	When a temperature of –28°C or lower is sensed continuously for 40 minutes during heating operation. (the compressor stops).	○	—
	4-time flash	84	Anti-condensation control	High humidity condition. Humidity sensor is faulty.	Anti-condensation prevention control is operating.	—	○
	5-time flash	85	Anti-frost control	Indoor unit fan speed drops. Indoor heat exchanger sensor is broken wire.	When the anti-frost control operates and the compressor stops during cooling operation.	—	○
	6-time flash	86	Heating high pressure control	Heating overload operation. Indoor unit fan speed drops. Indoor heat exchanger sensor is short circuit.	When high pressure control operates during heating operation and the compressor stops.	—	○

Notes (1) The number of flashes when in the Service Mode do not include the 1.5 second period when the lights light up at first (start signal). (See the example shown below.)

• In the case of current cut (example: stop code "42")
The RUN light (10's digit) 4-time flash and the TIMER light (1's digit) 2-time flash.
4 × 10 + 2 × 1 = 42 → From the table, read the instructions for error code 42, "current cut".



(2) Error display: – Is not displayed. (automatic recovery only)
○ Displayed.
If there is a ( ) displayed, the error display shows the number of times that an auto recovery occurred for the same reason has reached the number of times in ( ).
If no ( ) is displayed, the error display shows that the trouble has occurred once.

(3) Auto Recovery: – Does not occur
○ Auto recovery occurs.

(d) Operation mode, Fan speed mode information tables

(i) Operation mode

Display pattern when in service mode RUN light (10's digit)	Operation mode when there is an abnormal stop
–	AUTO
1-time flash	DRY
2-time flash	COOL
3-time flash	FAN
4-time flash	HEAT

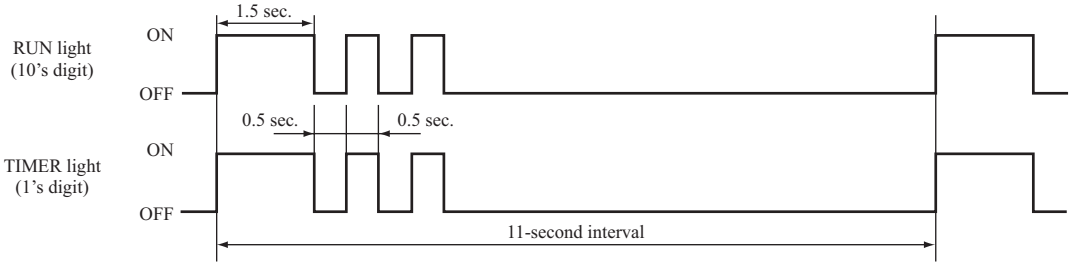
(ii) Fan speed mode

Display pattern when in service mode TIMER light (1's digit)	Fan speed mode when there is an abnormal stop
–	AUTO
2-time flash	HI
3-time flash	MED
4-time flash	LO
5-time flash	ULO
6-time flash	HI POWER
7-time flash	ECONO

* If no data are recorded (error code is normal), the information display in the operation mode and fan speed mode becomes as follows.

Mode	Display when error code is normal.
Operation mode	AUTO
Fan speed mode	AUTO

(Example): Operation mode: COOL, Fan speed mode: HI



(e) Temperatare information

(i) Room temperature sensor, indoor heat exchanger sensor, outdoor air temperature sensor, outdoor heat exchanger sensor temperature

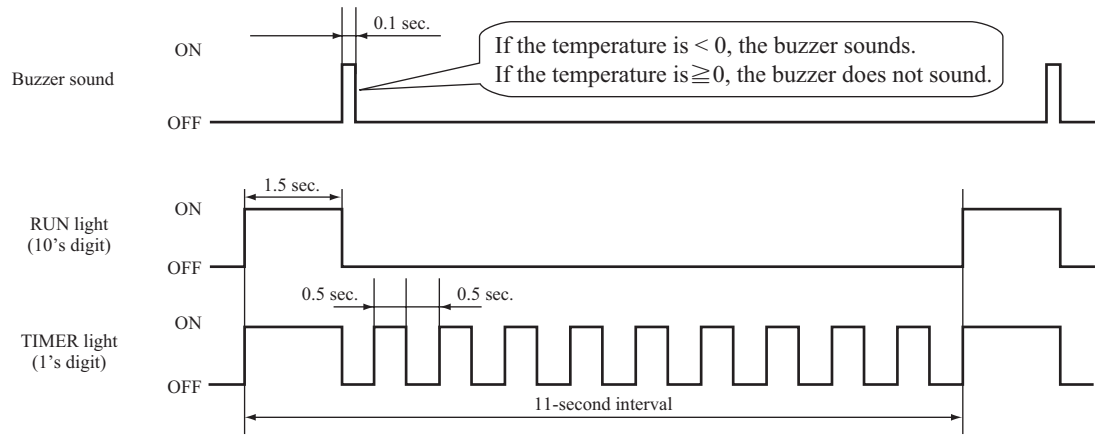
Units: °C

Buzzer sound / RUN light (10's digit) / TIMER light (1's digit)		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Yes (sounds for 0.1 second)	6	-60	-61	-62	-63	-64					
	5	-50	-51	-52	-53	-54	-55	-56	-57	-58	-59
	4	-40	-41	-42	-43	-44	-45	-46	-47	-48	-49
	3	-30	-31	-32	-33	-34	-35	-36	-37	-38	-39
	2	-20	-21	-22	-23	-24	-25	-26	-27	-28	-29
	1	-10	-11	-12	-13	-14	-15	-16	-17	-18	-19
	0		-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	-6	-7	-8	-9
No (does not sound)	0	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	1	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19
	2	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29
	3	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39
	4	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49
	5	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59
	6	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69
	7	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79
	8	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89
	9	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99

* If no data are recorded (error code is normal), the display for each temperature information becomes as shown below.

Sensor name	Sensor value displayed when the error code is normal
Room temperature sensor	-64ºC
Indoor heat exchanger sensor	-64ºC
Outdoor air temperature sensor	-64ºC
Outdoor heat exchanger sensor	-64ºC

(Example) Outdoor heat exchanger temperature data: "-9ºC"



(ii) Discharge pipe sensor temperature

Units: °C

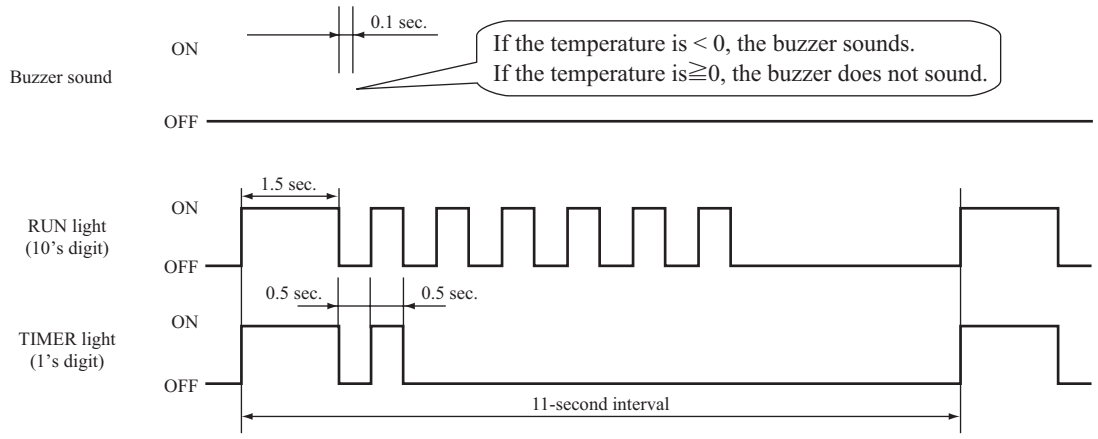
Buzzer sound	RUN light (10's digit) \ TIMER light (1's digit)	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Yes (sounds for 0.1 second)	3	-60	-62	-64							
	2	-40	-42	-44	-46	-48	-50	-52	-54	-56	-58
	1	-20	-22	-24	-26	-28	-30	-32	-34	-36	-38
	0		-2	-4	-6	-8	-10	-12	-14	-16	-18
No (does not sound)	0	0	2	4	6	8	10	12	14	16	18
	1	20	22	24	26	28	30	32	34	36	38
	2	40	42	44	46	48	50	52	54	56	58
	3	60	62	64	66	68	70	72	74	76	78
	4	80	82	84	86	88	90	92	94	96	98
	5	100	102	104	106	108	110	112	114	116	118
	6	120	122	124	126	128	130	132	134	136	138
	7	140	142	144	146	148	150				

* If no data are recorded (error code is normal), the display for each temperature information becomes as shown below.

Sensor name	Sensor value displayed when the error code is normal
Discharge pipe sensor	-64ºC

(Example) Discharge pipe temperature data: "122ºC"

* In the case of discharge pipe data, multiply the reading value by 2. (Below, 61 x 2 = "122ºC")



Service data record form

Customer		Model	
Date of investigation			
Machine name			
Content of complaint			

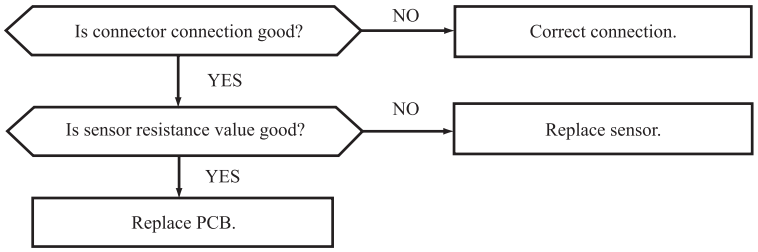
Wireless remote control settings			Content of displayed data	Display results			Display content
Temperature setting	Operation mode	Fan speed mode		Buzzer (Yes/No.)	RUN light (Times)	TIMER light (Times)	
21	Cooling	MED	Error code on previous occasion.				
		HI	Room temperature sensor on previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Indoor heat exchanger sensor 1 on previous occasion.				
	Heating	LO	Wireless remote control information on previous occasion.				
		MED	Outdoor air temperature sensor on previous occasion.				
		HI	Outdoor heat exchanger sensor on previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Discharge pipe sensor on previous occasion.				
26	Cooling	AUTO	Indoor heat exchanger sensor 2 on previous occasion.				
22	Cooling	MED	Error code on second previous occasion.				
		HI	Room temperature sensor on second previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Indoor heat exchanger sensor 1 on second previous occasion.				
	Heating	LO	Wireless remote control information on second previous occasion.				
		MED	Outdoor air temperature sensor on second previous occasion.				
		HI	Outdoor heat exchanger sensor on second previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Discharge pipe sensor on second previous occasion.				
27	Cooling	AUTO	Indoor heat exchanger sensor 2 on second occasion.				
23	Cooling	MED	Error code on third previous occasion.				
		HI	Room temperature sensor on third previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Indoor heat exchanger sensor 1 on third previous occasion.				
	Heating	LO	Wireless remote control information on third previous occasion.				
		MED	Outdoor air temperature sensor on third previous occasion.				
		HI	Outdoor heat exchanger sensor on third previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Discharge pipe sensor on third previous occasion.				
28	Cooling	AUTO	Indoor heat exchanger sensor 2 on third occasion.				
24	Cooling	MED	Error code on fourth previous occasion.				
		HI	Room temperature sensor on fourth previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Indoor heat exchanger sensor 1 on fourth previous occasion.				
	Heating	LO	Wireless remote control information on fourth previous occasion.				
		MED	Outdoor air temperature sensor on fourth previous occasion.				
		HI	Outdoor heat exchanger sensor on fourth previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Discharge pipe sensor on fourth previous occasion.				
29	Cooling	AUTO	Indoor heat exchanger sensor 2 on fouth occasion.				
25	Cooling	MED	Error code on fifth previous occasion.				
		HI	Room temperature sensor on fifth previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Indoor heat exchanger sensor 1 on fifth previous occasion.				
	Heating	LO	Wireless remote control information on fifth previous occasion.				
		MED	Outdoor air temperature sensor on fifth previous occasion.				
		HI	Outdoor heat exchanger sensor on fifth previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Discharge pipe sensor on fifth previous occasion.				
30	Cooling	AUTO	Indoor heat exchanger sensor 2 on fifth occasion.				
21	Cooling	LO	Stop code on previous occasion.				
22			Stop code on second previous occasion.				
23			Stop code on third previous occasion.				
24			Stop code on fourth previous occasion.				
25			Stop code on fifth previous occasion.				
26			Stop code on sixth previous occasion.				
27			Stop code on seventh previous occasion.				
28			Stop code on eighth previous occasion.				
29			Stop code on ninth previous occasion.				
30			Stop code on tenth previous occasion.				
Judgment							Examiner
Remarks							

Note (1) In the case of indoor heat exchanger sensor 2, match from 26 to 30 the temperature setting of wireless remote control. (Refor to page 114)

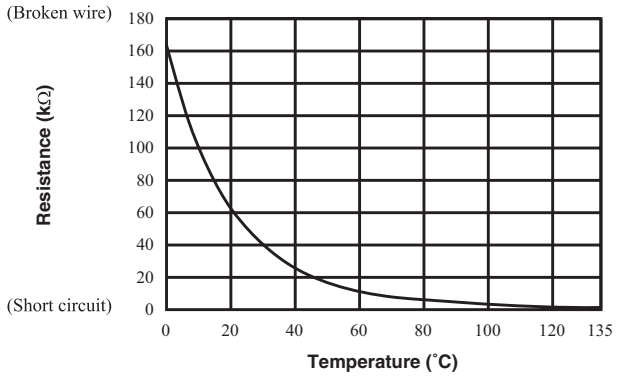
(7) Inspection procedures corresponding to detail of trouble

Sensor error

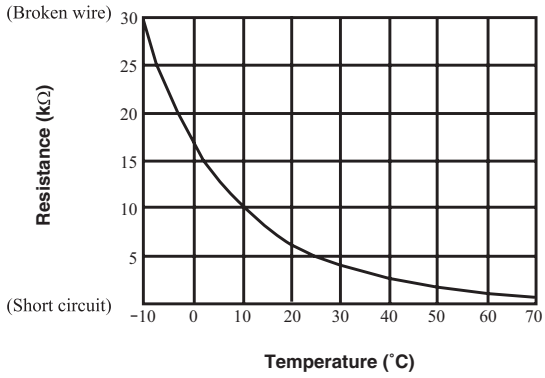
[Broken sensor wire, connector poor connection]



◆ **Discharge pipe sensor temperature characteristics**

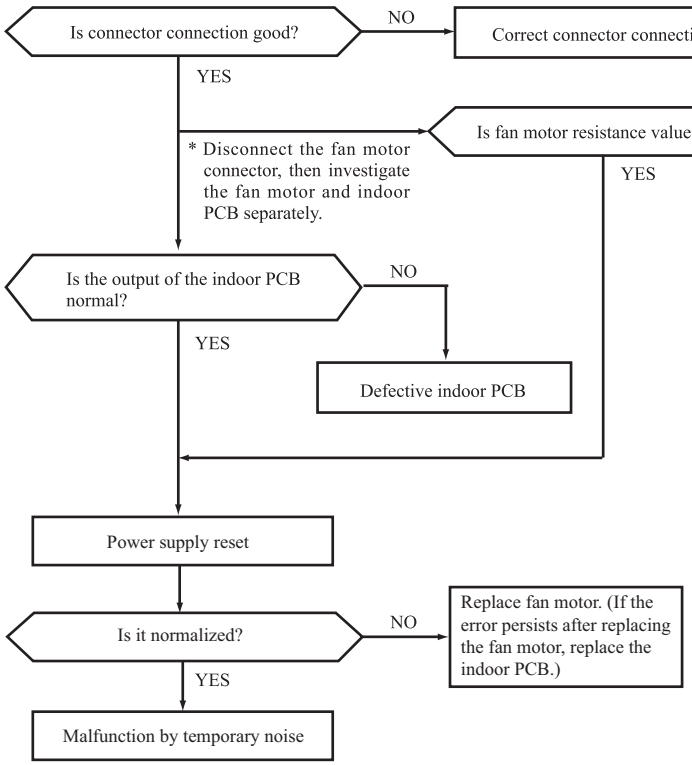


◆ **Sensor temperature characteristics (Room temp., indoor heat exchanger temp., outdoor heat exchanger temp., outdoor air temp.)**



Indoor fan motor error

[Defective fan motor, connector poor connection, defective indoor PCB]

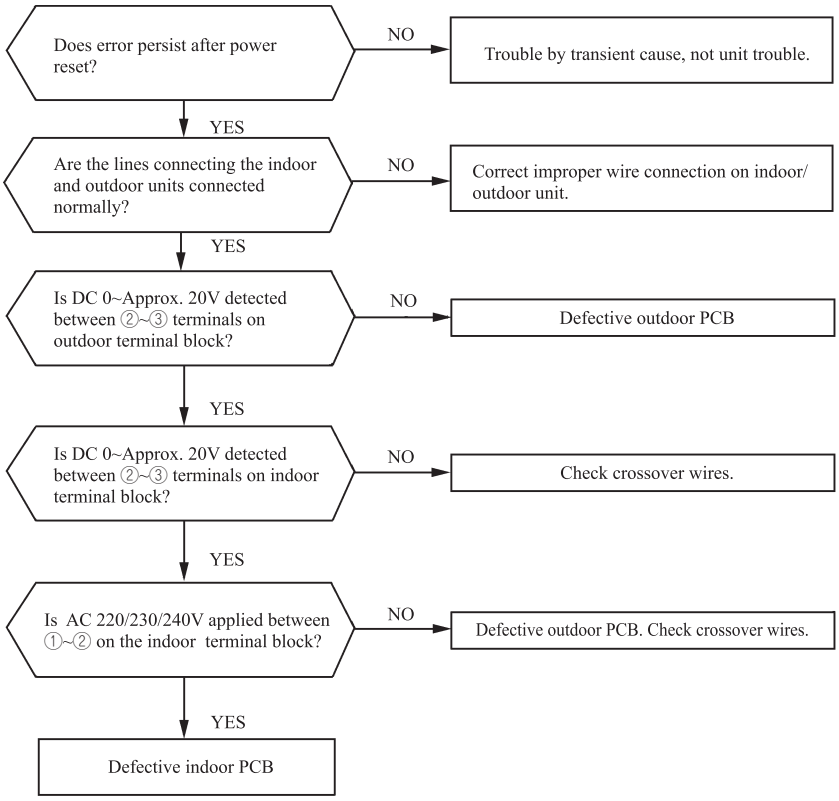


Notes (1) See pages 124 for the fan motor and indoor PCB check procedure.

(2) After making sure the fan motor and indoor PCB are normal, connect the connectors and confirm that the fan motor is turning.
(If power is turned on while one or the other is broken down, it could cause the other to break down also.)

Error of signal transmission

[Wiring error including power cable, defective indoor/ outdoor PCB]



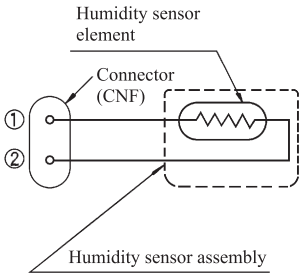
(8) Phenomenon observed after shortcircuit, wire breakage on sensor

Sensor	Operation mode	Phenomenon	
		Shortcircuit	Disconnected wire
Room temperature sensor	Cooling	Release of continuous compressor operation command.	Continuous compressor operation command is not released.
	Heating	Continuous compressor operation command is not released.	Release of continuous compressor operation command.
Heat exchanger sensor	Cooling	Freezing cycle system protection trips and stops the compressor.	Continiuous compressor operation command is not released. (Anti-frosting)
	Heating	High pressure control mode (Compressor stop command)	Hot keep (Indoor fan stop)
Humidity sensor	Cooling	Refer to the table below.	Refer to the table below.
	Heating	Normal system operation is possible.	

■ Humidity sensor operation

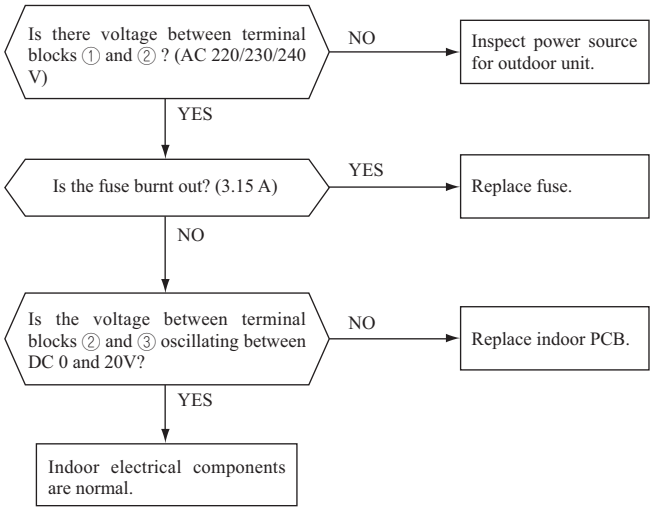
Failure mode		Control input circuit resding	Air conditioning system operation
Disconnected wire	① Disconnected wire	Humidity reading is 0%	Anti-condensation control is not done.
	② Disconnected wire		
	①② Disconnected wire		
Short circuit	① and ② are shot circuited	Humidity reading is 100%	Anti-condensation control keep doing.

Remark: Do not perform a continuity check of the humidity sensor with a tester. If DC current is applied, it could damage the sensor.



(9) Checking the indoor electrical equipment

(a) Indoor PCB check procedure



(b) Indoor unit fan motor check procedure

This is a diagnostic procedure for determining if the indoor unit's fan motor or the indoor PCB is broken down.

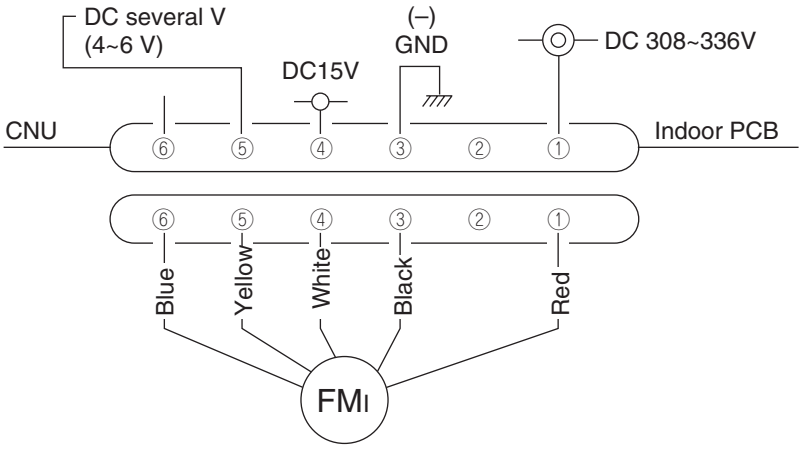
1) Indoor PCB output check

a) Turn off the power.

b) Remove the front panel, then disconnect the fan motor lead wire connector.

c) Turn on the power. If the unit operates when the ON/OFF button is pressed, if trouble is detected after the voltages in the following figure are output for approximately 30 seconds, it means that the indoor PCB is normal and the fan motor is broken down.

If the voltages in the following figure are not output at connector pins No. ①, ④ and ⑤, the indoor PCB has failed and the fan motor is normal.



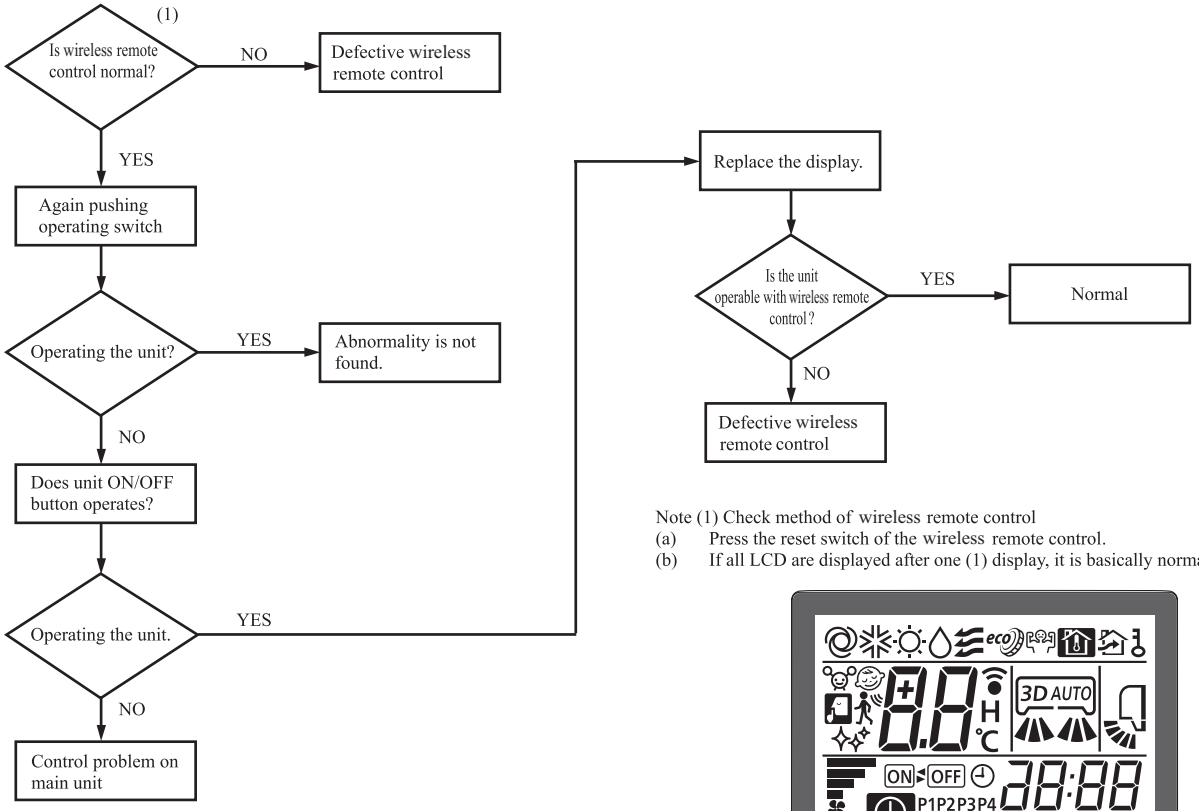
Measuring point	Voltage range when normal
① - ③	DC 308~336V
④ - ③	DC 15V
⑤ - ③	DC several V (4~6V)

2) Fan motor resistance check

Measuring point	Resistance when normal
① - ③ (Red - Black)	20 MΩ or higher
④ - ③ (White - Black)	20 kΩ or higher

Notes (1) Remove the fan motor and measure it without power connected to it.
(2) If the measured value is below the value when the motor is normal, it means that the fan motor is faulty.

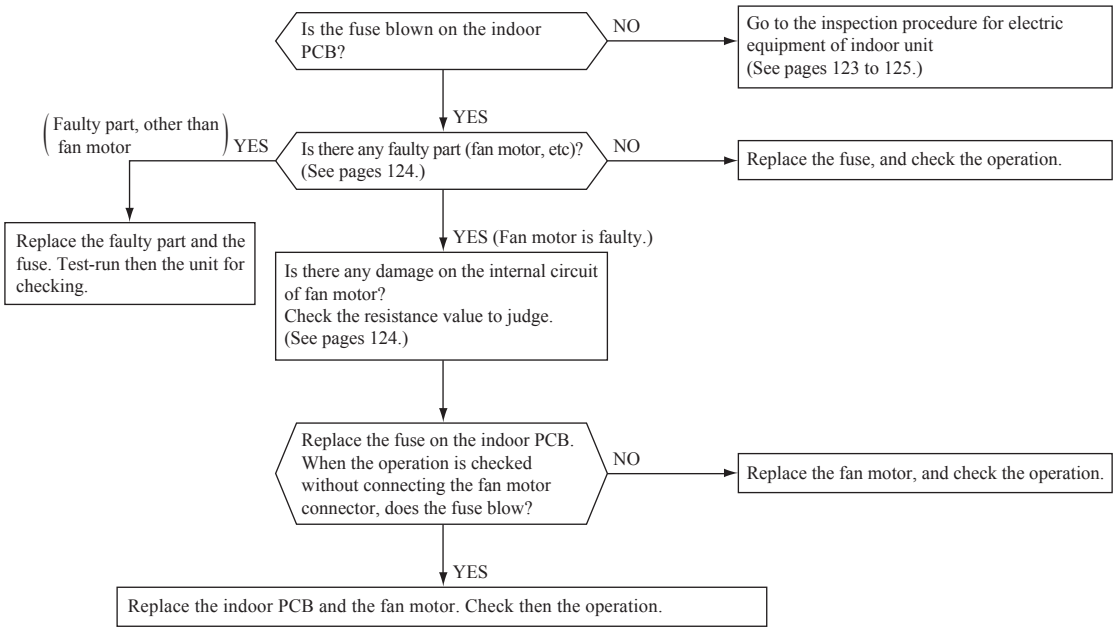
(10) How to make sure of wireless remote control



Note (1) Check method of wireless remote control
(a) Press the reset switch of the wireless remote control.
(b) If all LCD are displayed after one (1) display, it is basically normal.

◆ Simplified check methd of wireless remote control
It is normal if the signal transmission section of the wireless remote control emits a whitish light at each transmission on the monitor of digital camera or camera of mobile phone.

(11) Inspection procedure for blown fuse on the indoor PCB



3. ELECTRICAL WIRING

(1) Indoor units

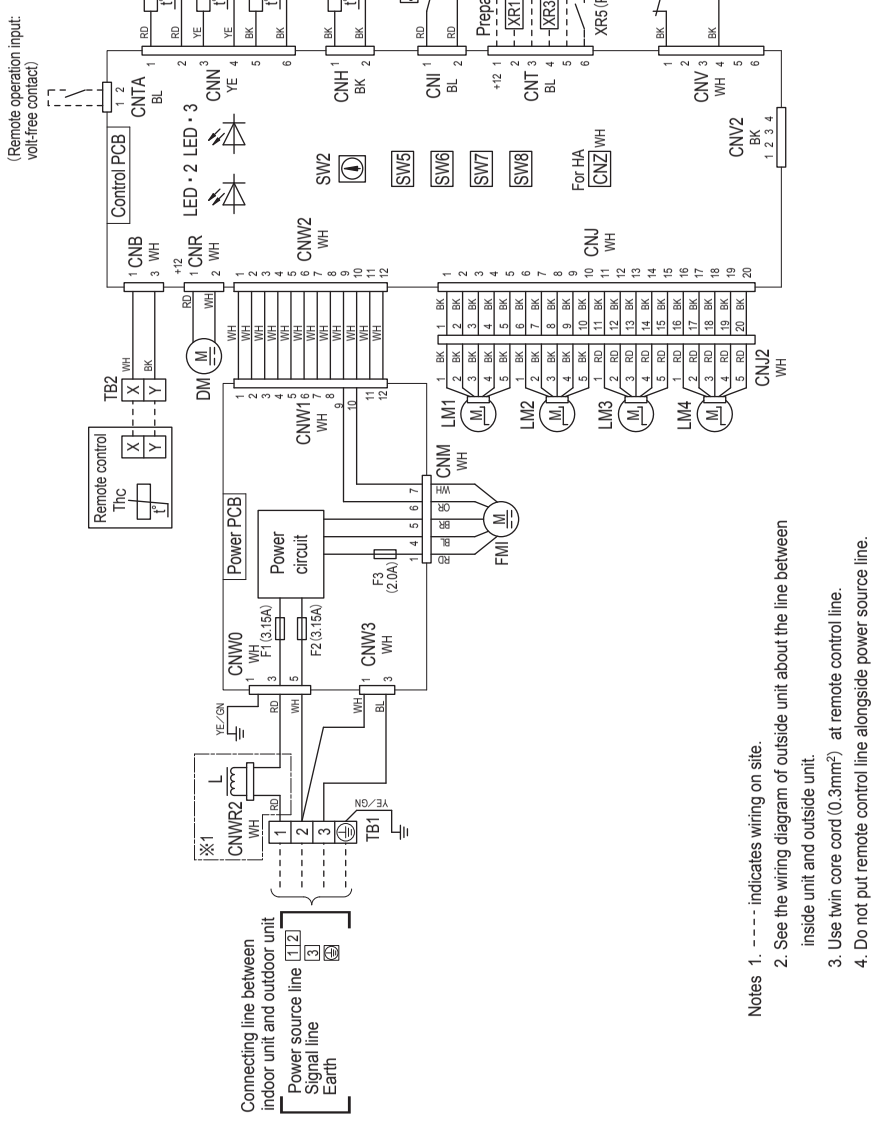
(a) Ceiling cassette-4way type (FDT)

Models FDT71VF1, 100VF1

CNB~Z	Connector
DM	Drain motor
F1~3	Fuse
FMI	Fan motor
FS	Float switch
L	Reactor
LED・2	Indication lamp (Green-Normal operation)
LED・3	Indication lamp (Red-Inspection)
LM1~4	Louver motor
PS	Panel switch
SW2	Remote control communication address
SW5	Plural units Master／Slave setting
SW6	Model capacity setting
SW7-1	Operation check, Drain motor test run
SW7-3	Powerful mode Valid／Invalid
TB1	Terminal block (Power source) (□mark)
TB2	Terminal block (Signal line) (□mark)
Thc	Thermistor (Remote control)
Thl-A	Thermistor (Return air)
Thl-R1,2,3	Thermistor (Heat exchanger)

Color Marks

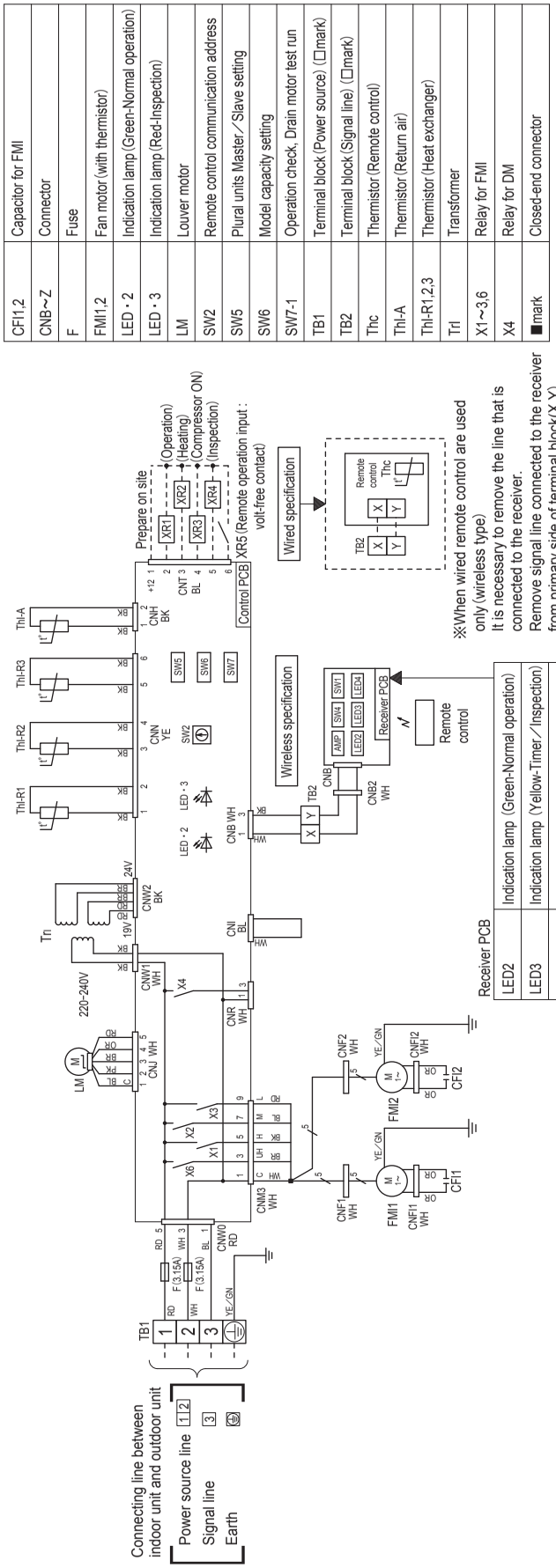
Mark	Color	Mark	Color
BK	Black	RD	Red
BL	Blue	WH	White
BR	Brown	YE	Yellow
OR	Orange	YE／GN	Yellow／Green



Notes 1. - - - - indicates wiring on site.
2. See the wiring diagram of outside unit about the line between inside unit and outside unit.
3. Use twin core cord (0.3mm²) at remote control line.
4. Do not put remote control line alongside power source line.
5. Section 1 (※1) is provided on the model FDT100 only.

PJF000Z286 B

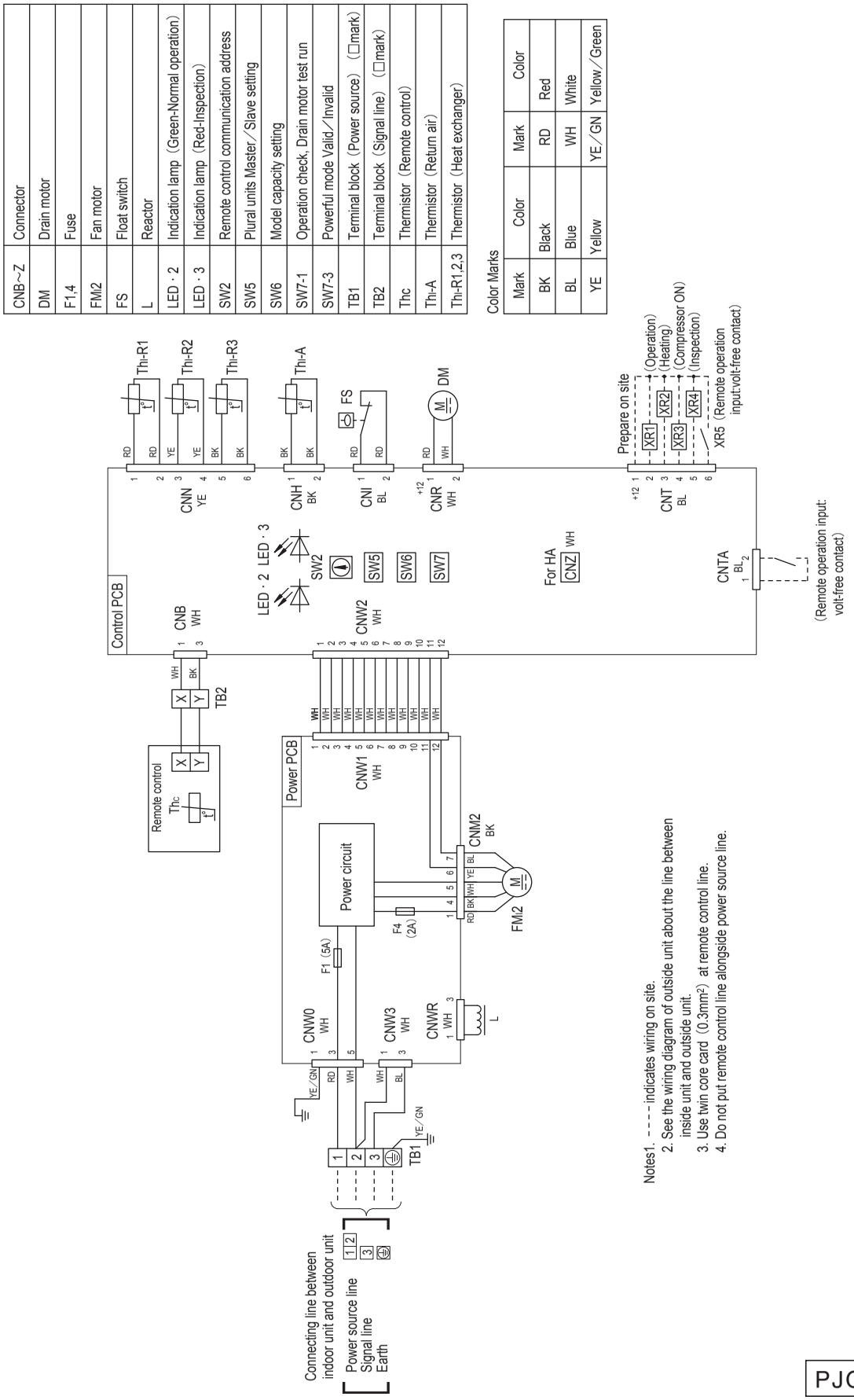
(b) Ceiling suspended type (FDEN)
Models FDEN71VF1, 100VF1



Notes 1. ---- indicates wiring on site.
2. See the wiring diagram of outside unit about the line between indoor unit and outdoor unit.
3. Use twin core cord (0.3mm²X2) at remote control line.
4. Do not put remote control line alongside power source line.

PFA003Z820 Ⓓ

(c) Duct connected-High static pressure type (FDU)
Model FDU71VF1



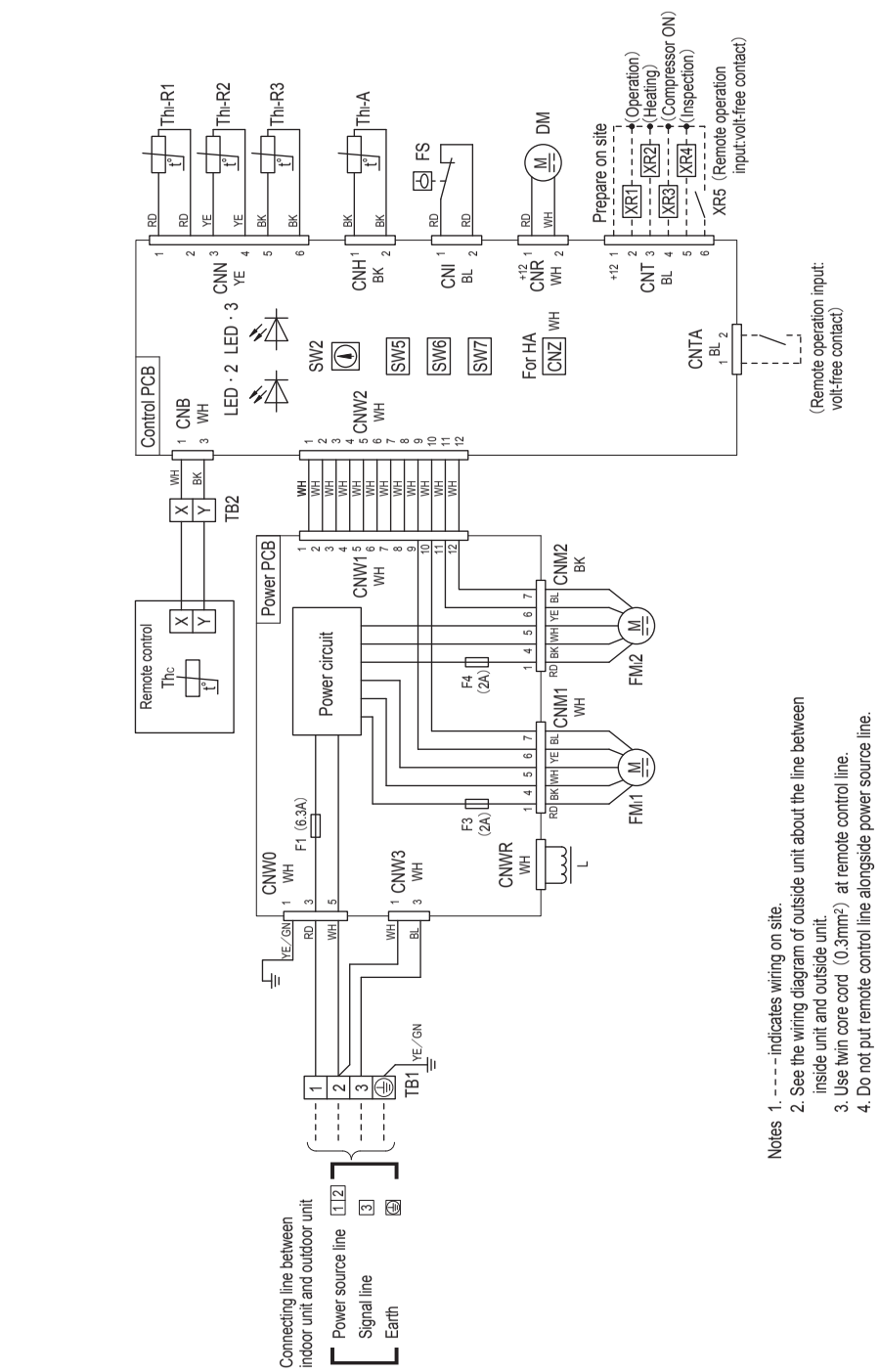
PJG000Z049 A

Model FDU100VF1

CNB~Z	Connector
DM	Drain motor
F1,3,4	Fuse
FM1;2	Fan motor (with thermostat)
FS	Float switch
L	Reactor
LED・2	Indication lamp (Green-Normal operation)
LED・3	Indication lamp (Red-Inspection)
SW2	Remote control communication address
SW5	Plural units Master／Slave setting
SW6	Model capacity setting
SW7-1	Operation check, Drain motor test run
SW7-3	Powerful mode Valid／Invalid
TB1	Terminal block (Power source) (□mark)
TB2	Terminal block (Signal line) (□mark)
Thc	Thermistor (Remote control)
Th-A	Thermistor (Return air)
Th-R1,2,3	Thermistor (Heat exchanger)

Color Marks

Mark	Color	Mark	Color
BK	Black	RD	Red
BL	Blue	WH	White
YE	Yellow	YE／GN	Yellow／Green



Notes 1. - - - - indicates wiring on site.
2. See the wiring diagram of outside unit about the line between inside unit and outside unit.
3. Use twin core cord (0.3mm²) at remote control line.
4. Do not put remote control line alongside power source line.

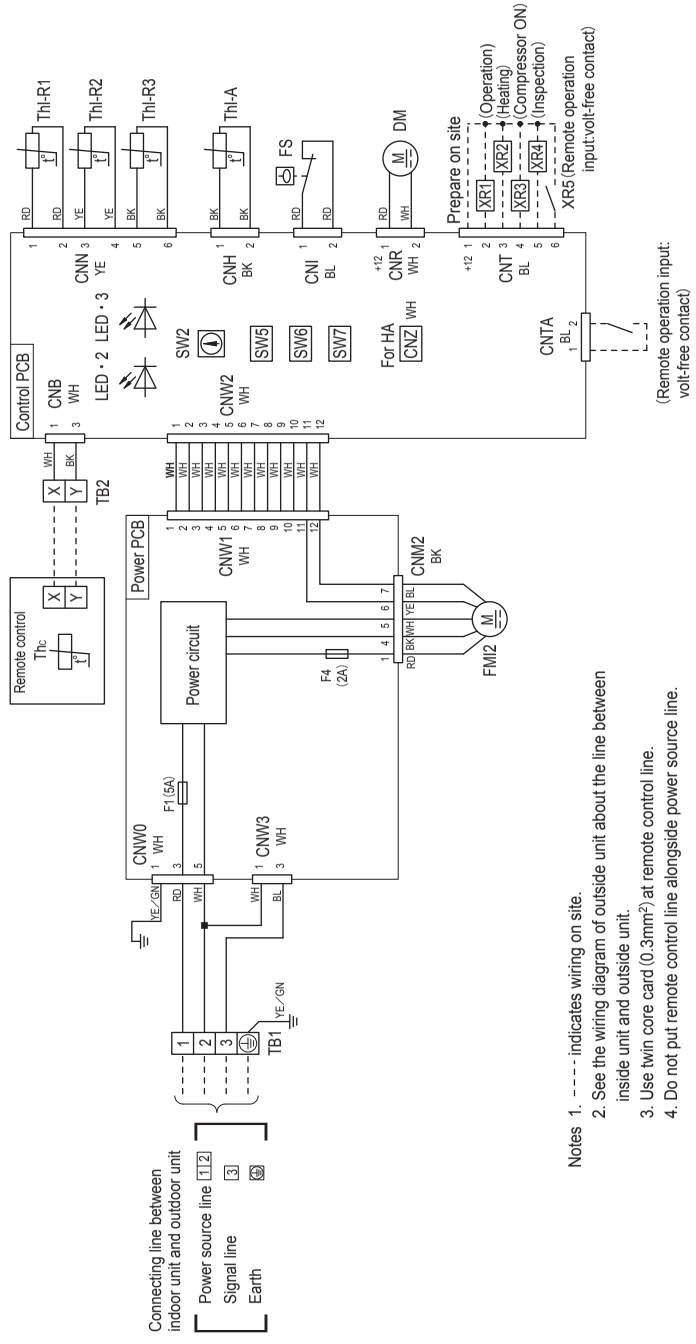
PJG000Z050 A

(d) Duct connected-Low / Middle static pressure type (FDUM)
Model FDUM71VF1

CNB~Z	Connector
DM	Drain motor
F1,4	Fuse
FMI2	Fan motor (with thermostat)
FS	Float switch
LED・2	Indication lamp (Green-Normal operation)
LED・3	Indication lamp (Red-Inspection)
SW2	Remote control communication address
SW5	Plural units Master／Slave setting
SW6	Model capacity setting
SW7-1	Operation check, Drain motor test run
SW7-3	Powerful mode Valid／Invalid
TB1	Terminal block (Power source) (□mark)
TB2	Terminal block (Signal line) (□mark)
Thc	Thermistor (Remote control)
Thl-A	Thermistor (Return air)
Thl-R1,2,3	Thermistor (Heat exchanger)
■mark	Closed-end connector

Color Marks

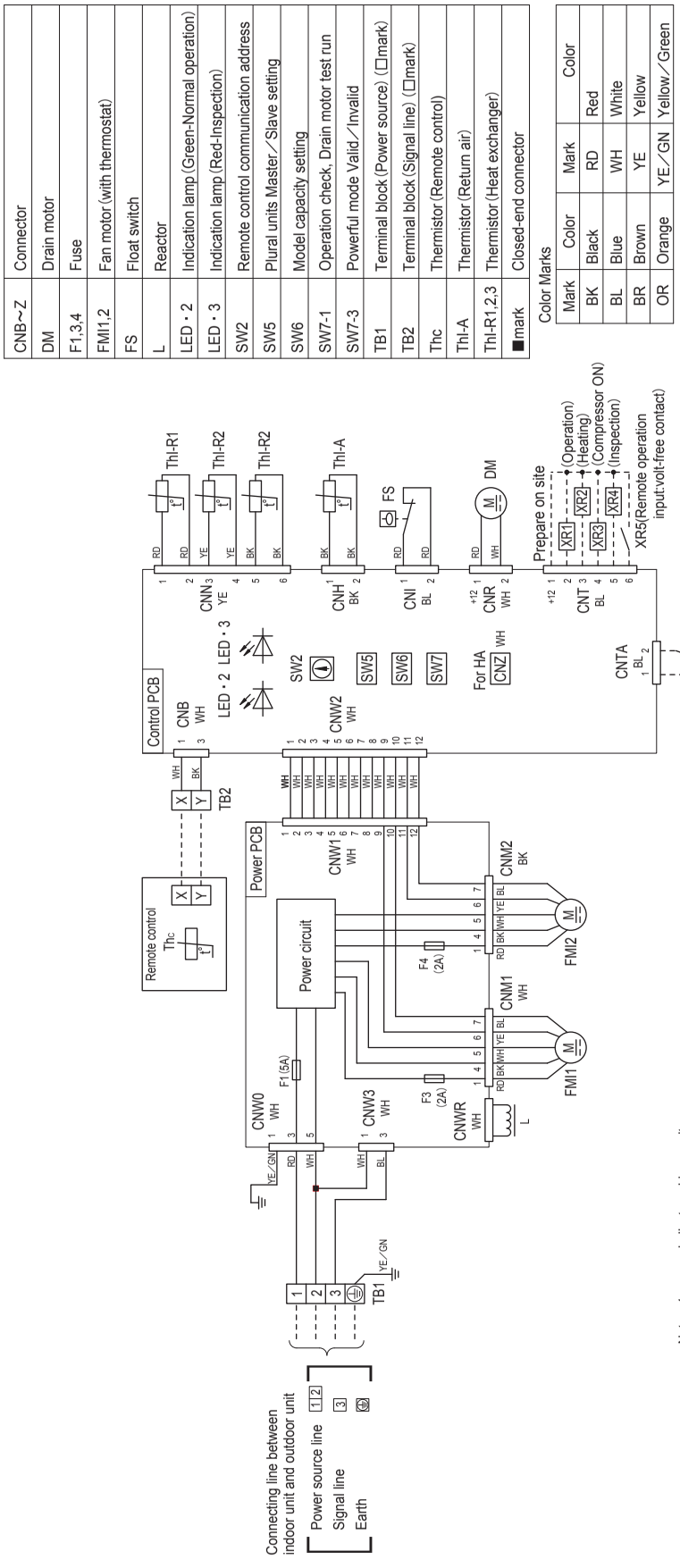
Mark	Color	Mark	Color
BK	Black	RD	Red
BL	Blue	WH	White
BR	Brown	YE	Yellow
OR	Orange	YE／GN	Yellow／Green



Notes 1. - - - - indicates wiring on site.
2. See the wiring diagram of outside unit about the line between inside unit and outside unit.
3. Use twin core card (0.3mm²) at remote control line.
4. Do not put remote control line alongside power source line.

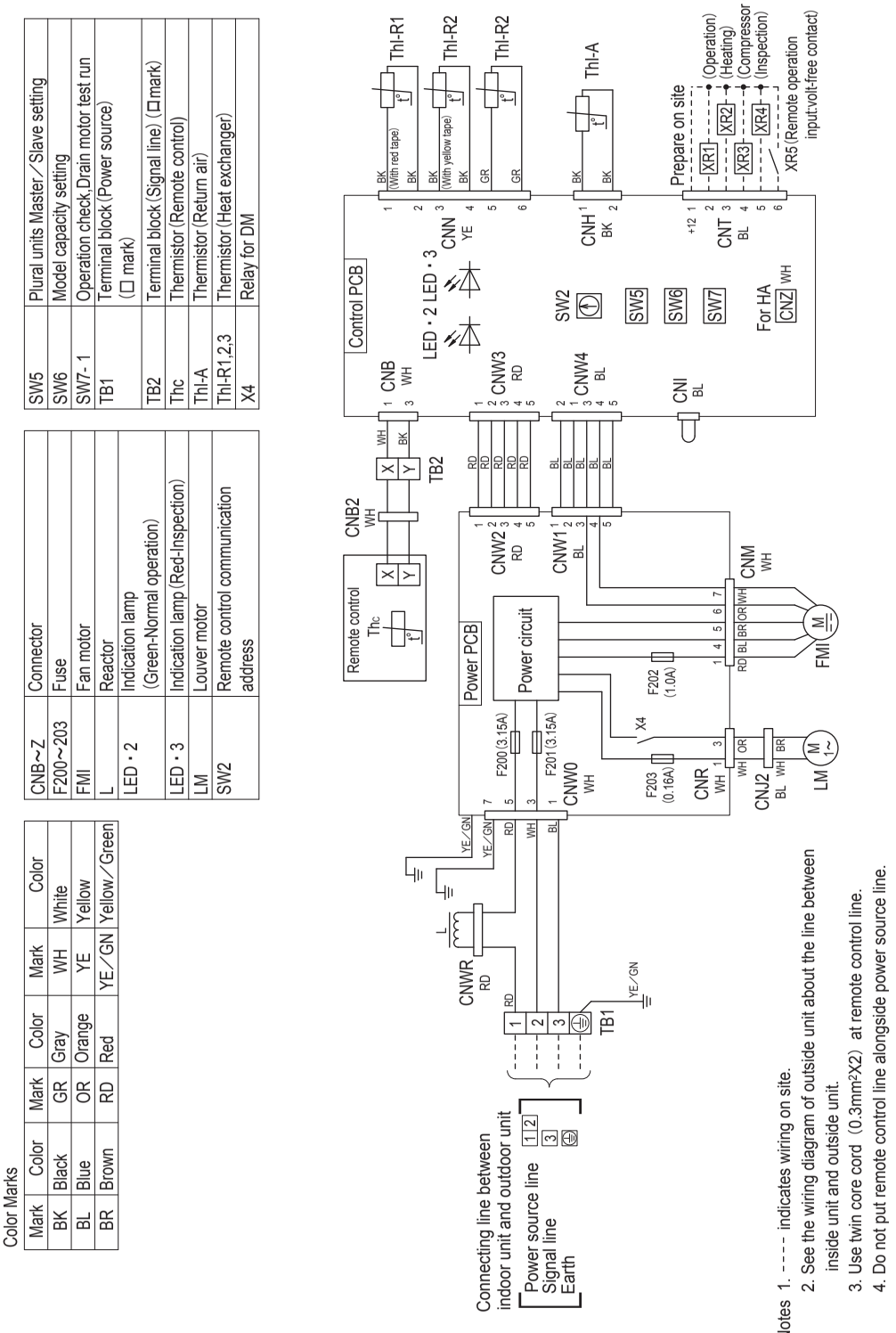
PJG000Z028 A

Model FDUM100VF1



PJG000Z029 A

(e) Floor standing type (FDF)
Models FDF71VD1, 100VD1



PGA000Z783 A

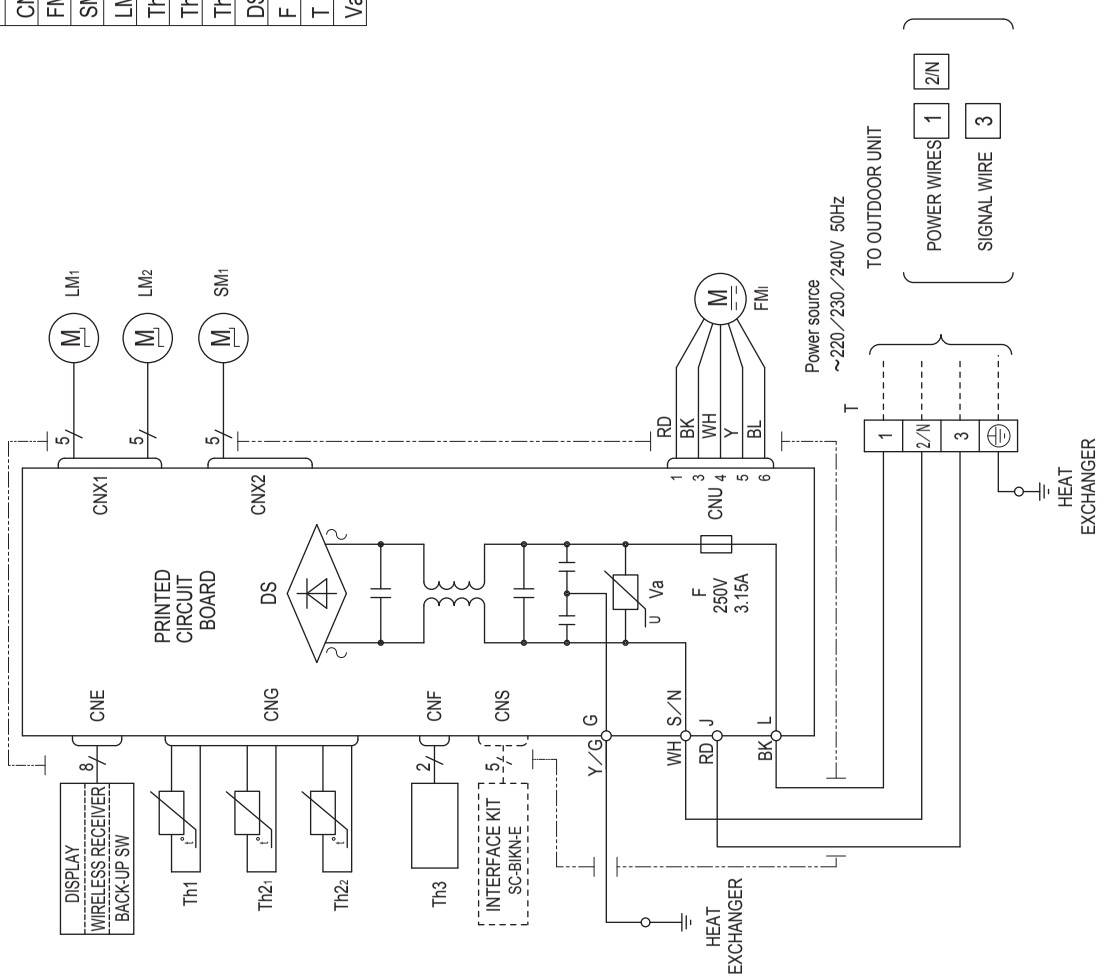
(f) Wall mounted type (SRK)

Models SRK71ZM-S

Item	Description
CNE-CNX2	Connector
FM_1	Fan motor
SM_1	Flap motor
$LM_{1,2}$	Louver motor
Th1	Room temp. sensor
$Th2_{1,2}$	Heat exch. sensor
Th3	Humidity sensor
DS	Diode stack
F	Fuse
T	Terminal block
Va	Varistor

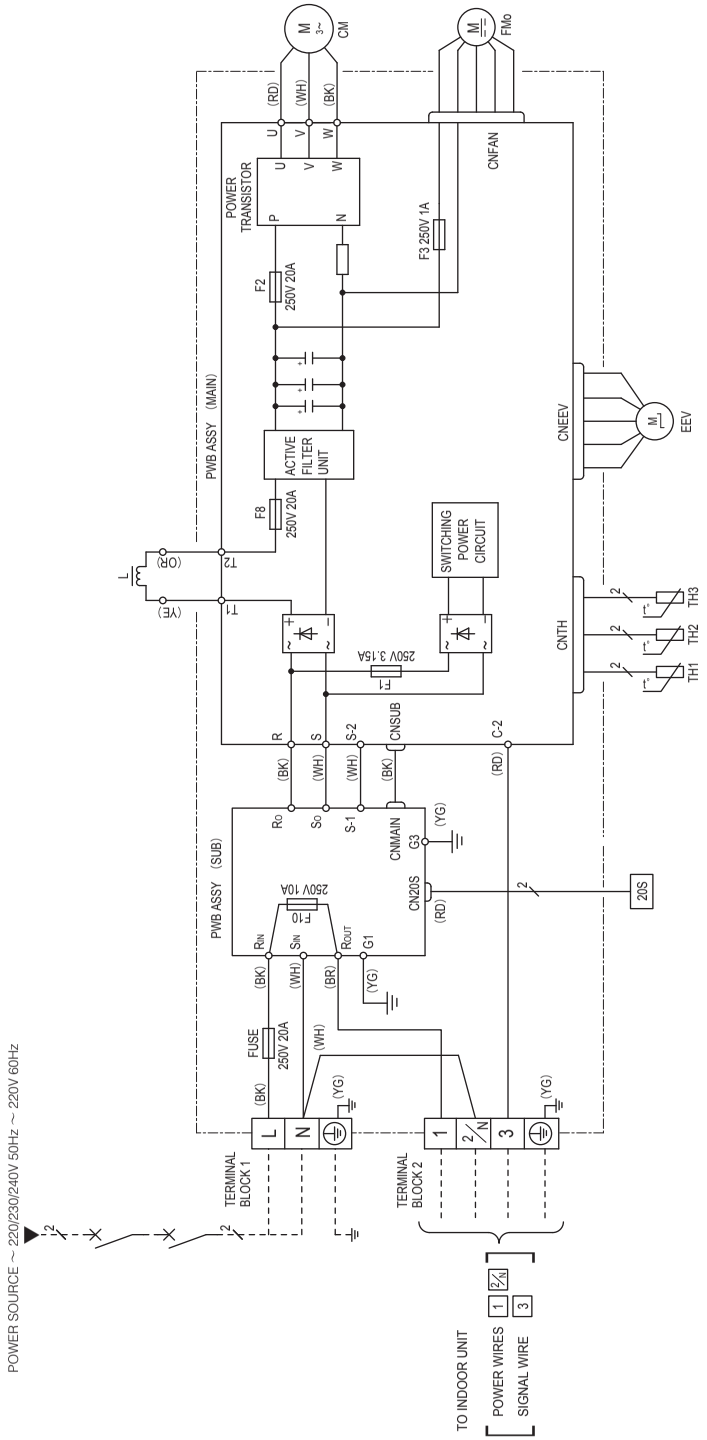
Color Marks

Mark	Color
BK	Black
BL	Blue
RD	Red
WH	White
Y	Yellow
Y／G	Yellow／Green



RWA000Z405

(2) Outdoor units
Model FDC71VNP



Item	Description
CM	Compressor motor
CN20S CNTH CNEEV CNFAN	Connector
EEV	Electric expansion valve (coil)
FMo	Fan motor
L	Reactor
TH1	Heat exchanger sensor (outdoor unit)
TH2	Outdoor air temp.sensor
TH3	Discharge pipe temp.sensor
20S	Solenoid coil for 4 way valve

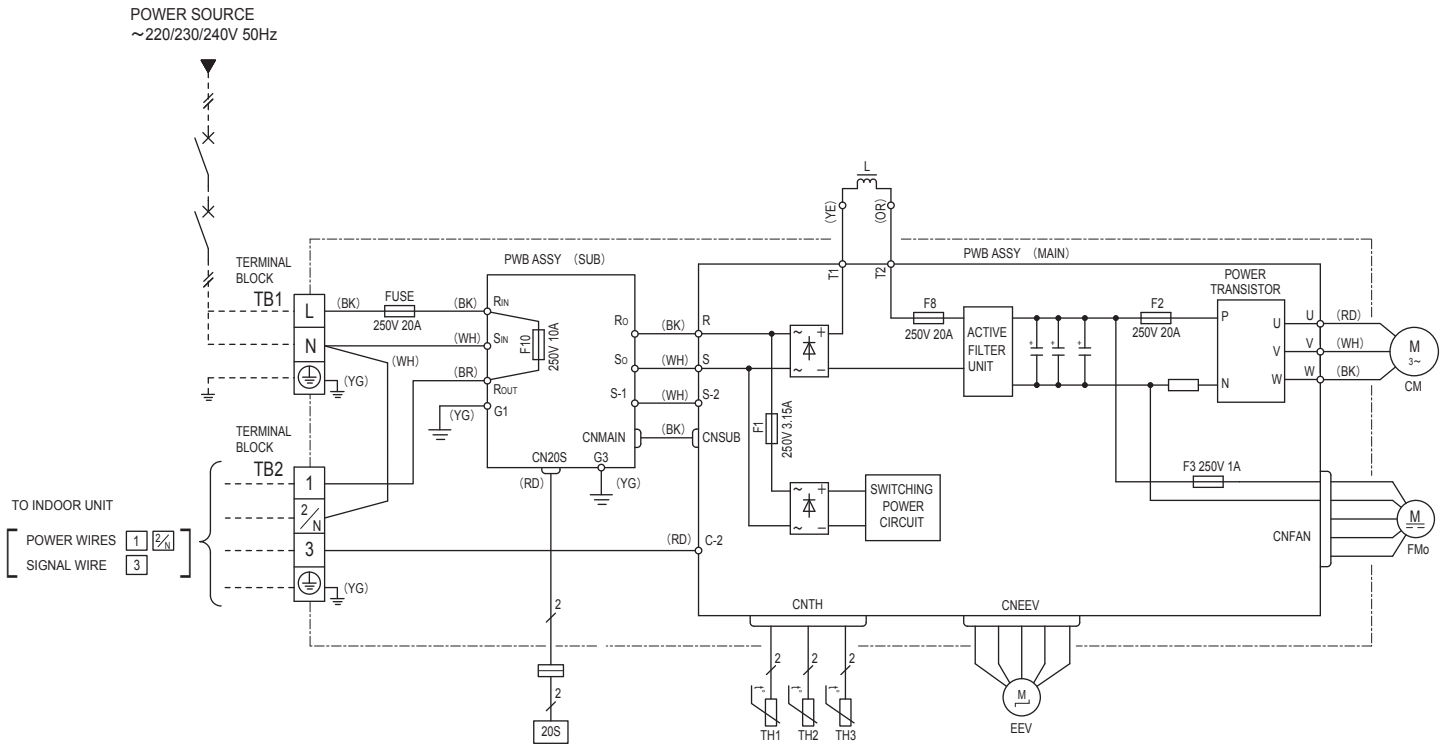
Mark	Color
BK	Black
BR	Brown
OR	Orange
RD	Red
WH	White
YE	Yellow
YG	Yellow/Green

Power cable, indoor-outdoor connecting wires

Model	MAX running current (A)	Power cable size (mm^2)	Power cable length (m)	indoor-outdoor wire size x number	Earth wire size (mm^2)
71	14.5	2.0	15	1.5mm^2 x 4	1.5

- The specifications shown in the above table are for units without heaters. For units with heaters, refer to the installation instructions or the construction instructions of the indoor unit.
- Switchgear of Circuit breaker capacity which is calculated from MAX. over current should be chosen along the regulations in each country.
- The cable specifications are based on the assumption that a metal or plastic conduit is used with no more than three cables contained in a conduit and a voltage drop is 2%. For an installation falling outside of these conditions, please follow the internal cabling regulations. Adapt it to the regulation in effect in each country.

PCA001Z715



Power cable, indoor-outdoor connecting wires

Model	MAX running current (A)	Power cable size (mm^2)	Power cable length (m)	indoor-outdoor wire size x number	Earth wire size (mm^2)
90	18	2.5	15	1.5mm^2 x 4	1.5

- The specifications shown in the above table are for units without heaters. For units with heaters, refer to the installation instructions or the construction instructions of the indoor unit.
- Switchgear of Circuit breaker capacity which is calculated from MAX. over current should be chosen along the regulations in each country.
- The cable specifications are based on the assumption that a metal or plastic conduit is used with no more than three cables contained in a conduit and a voltage drop is 2%. For an installation falling outside of these conditions, please follow the internal cabling regulations. Adapt it to the regulation in effect in each country.

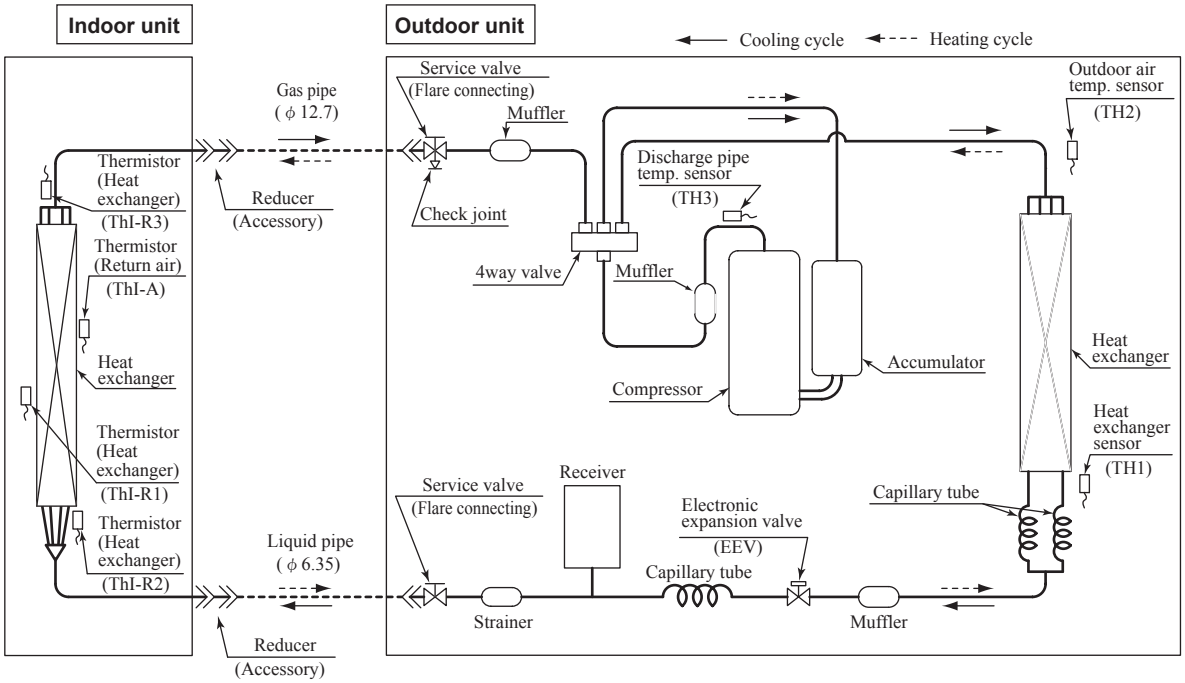
Item	Description
CM	Compressor motor
CN20S CNTH CNEEV CNFAN	Connector
EEV	Electric expansion valve（coil）
FMo	Fan motor
L	Reactor
TH1	Heat exchanger sensor（outdoor unit）
TH2	Outdoor air temp.sensor
TH3	Discharge pipe temp.sensor
20S	Solenoid coil for 4 way valve

Mark	Color
BK	Black
BR	Brown
OR	Orange
RD	Red
WH	White
YE	Yellow
YG	Yellow/Green

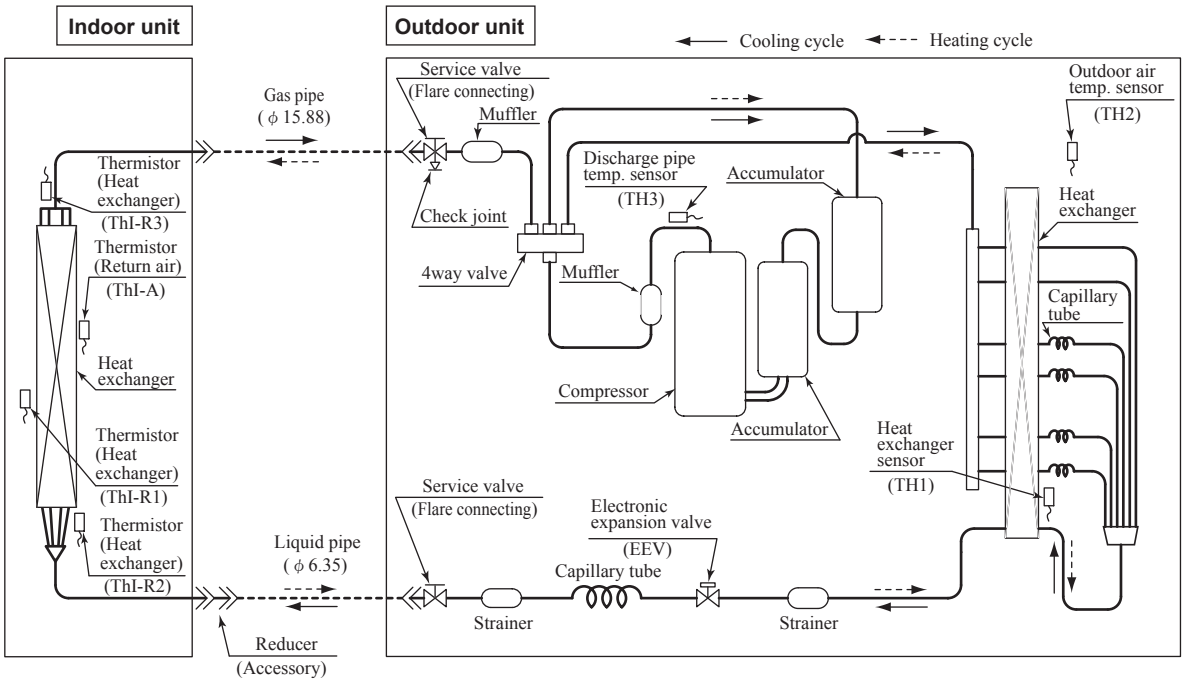
4. PIPING SYSTEM

(1) FDT, FDEN, FDU, FDUM, FDF series

Model 71



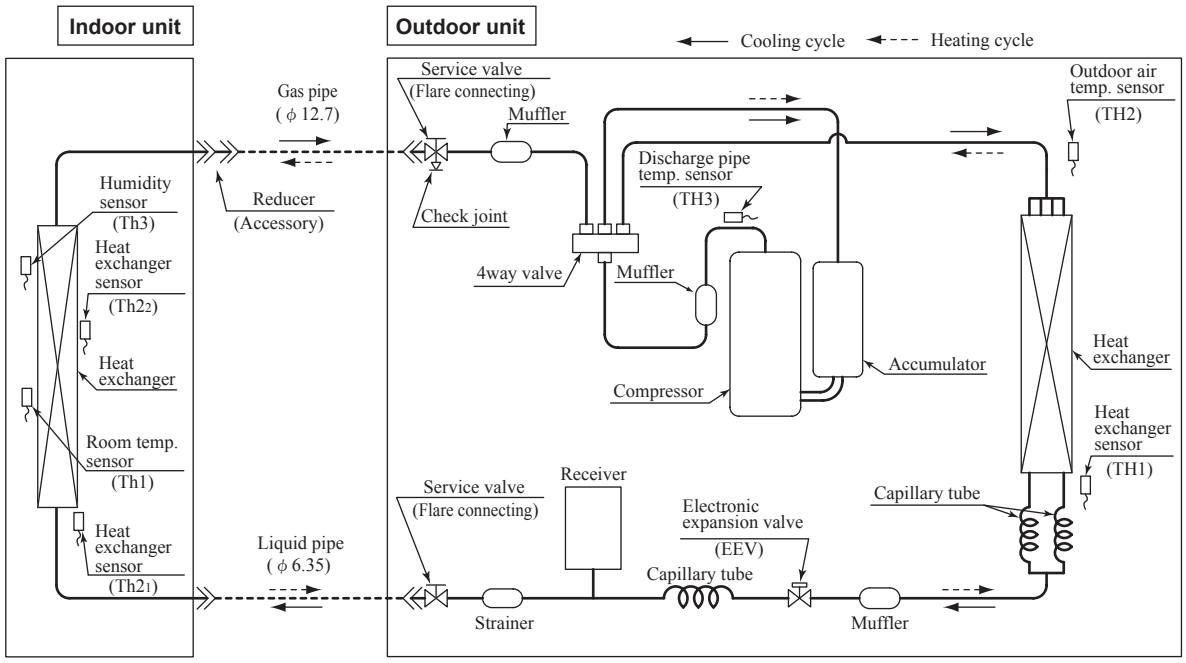
Model 90



Preset point of the protective devices

Parts name	Mark	Equipped unit	All models
Thermistor (for protection overloading in heating)	**ThI-R**	Indoor unit	OFF 63℃ , ON 56℃
Thermistor (for frost prevention)			OFF 1.0℃ , ON 10℃
Sensor (for protection high pressure in cooling.)	**TH1**	Outdoor unit	OFF 63℃ , ON 53℃
Sensor (for detecting discharge pipe temp.)	**TH3**		OFF 115℃ , ON 95℃

(2) SRK series
Model 71



Preset point of the protective devices

Parts name	Mark	Equipped unit	SRK series
Sensor (for protection overloading in heating)	**Th2**	Indoor unit	OFF 60℃ , ON 48.5℃
Sensor (for frost prevention)			OFF 2.5℃ , ON 8℃
Sensor (for protection high pressure in cooling.)	**TH1**	Outdoor unit	OFF 63℃ , ON 53℃
Sensor (for detecting discharge pipe temp.)	**TH3**		OFF 115℃ , ON 95℃

5. APPLICATION DATA

5.1 Installation of indoor unit

(1) Ceiling cassette-4way type (FDT)

PJF012D016C D

This manual is for the installation of an indoor unit.
For electrical wiring work (Indoor), refer to page 170. For remote control installation, refer to page 182. For electrical wiring work (Outdoor) and refrigerant pipe work installation for outdoor unit, refer to page 196.
This unit always be used with the panel.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.
- The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION .
  ⚠WARNING : Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠CAUTION : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
- The meanings of "Marks" used here are as shown on the right:
  ⃠ Never do it under any circumstances. ❗ Always do it according to the instruction.
- After completing the installation, do commissioning to confirm there are no abnormalities, and explain to the customers about "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS", correct operation method and maintenance method (air filter cleaning, operation method and temperature setting method) with user's manual of this unit.
  Ask your customers to keep this installation manual together with the user's manual. Also, ask them to hand over the user's manual to the new user when the owner is changed.

⚠WARNING

- **Installation should be performed by the specialist.**
  If you install the unit by yourself, it may lead to serious trouble such as water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit. ❗
- **Install the system correctly according to these installation manuals.**
  Improper installation may cause explosion, injury, water leakage, electric shock, and fire. ❗
- **Check the density refered by the foumula (accordance with ISO5149).**
  If the density exceeds the limit density, please consult the dealer and installate the ventilation system. ❗
- **Use the genuine accessories and the specified parts for installation.**
  If parts unspecified by our company are used it could cause water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit. ❗
- **Ventilate the working area well in case the refrigerant leaks during installation.**
  If the refrigerant contacts the fire, toxic gas is produced. ❗
- **Install the unit in a location that can hold heavy weight.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents. ❗
- **Install the unit properly in order to be able to withstand strong winds such as typhoons, and earthquakes.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents. ❗
- **Do not mix air in to the cooling cycle on installation or removal of the air conditioner.**
  If air is mixed in, the pressure in the cooling cycle will rise abnormally and may cause explosion and injuries. ⃠
- **Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient capacity and improper work can cause electric shock and fire. ❗
- **Use specified wire for electrical wiring, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.**
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire. ❗
- **Arrange the electrical wires in the control box properly to prevent them from rising. Fit the lid of the services panel property.**
  Improper fitting may cause abnormal heat and fire. ❗
- **Check for refrigerant gas leakage after installation is completed.**
  If the refrigerant gas leaks into the house and comes in contact with a fan heater, a stove, or an oven, toxic gas is produced. ❗
- **Use the specified pipe, flare nut, and tools for R410A.**
  Using existing parts (R22) could cause the unit failure and serious accident due to explosion of the cooling cycle. ❗
- **Tighten the flare nut according to the specified method by with torque wrench.**
  If the flare nut were tightened with excess torque, it could cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period. ❗
- **Do not put the drainage pipe directly into drainage channels where poisonous gases such as sulfide gas can occur.**
  Poisonous gases will flow into the room through drainage pipe and seriously affect the user's health and safety. This can also cause the corrosion of the indoor unit and a resultant unit failure or refrigerant leak. ⃠
- **Connect the pipes for refrigeration circuit securely in installation work before compressor is operated.**
  If the compressor is operated when the service valve is open without connecting the pipe, it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the system. ❗
- **Stop the compressor before removing the pipe after shutting the service valve on pump down work.**
  If the pipe is removed when the compressor is in operation with the service valve open, air would be mixed in the refrigeration circuit and it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the cooling cycle. ❗
- **Only use prescribed optional parts. The installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.**
  If you install the system by yourself, it can cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire. ❗
- **Do not repair by yourself. And consult with the dealer about repair.**
  Improper repair may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire. ⃠
- **Consult the dealer or a specialist about removal of the air conditioner.**
  Improper installation may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire. ❗
- **Turn off the power source during servicing or inspection work.**
  If the power is supplied during servicing or inspection work, it could cause electric shock and injury by the operating fan. ❗
- **Do not run the unit when the panel or protection guard are taken off.**
  Touching the rotating equipment, hot surface, or high voltage section could cause an injury to be caught in the machine, to get burned, or electric shock. ⃠
- **Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.**
  It could cause electric shock, unit failure and improper running. ❗

⚠ CAUTION

- **Perform earth wiring surely.**
  Do not connect the earth wiring to the gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod and telephone earth wiring. Improper earth could cause unit failure and electric shock due to a short circuit.
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed.**
  If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it can cause electric shocks. ❗
- **Use the circuit breaker of correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect one could cause the system failure and fire. ❗
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse of correct capacity where a fuse should be used.**
  Connecting the circuit by wire or copper wire could cause unit failure and fire. ⃠
- **Do not install the indoor unit near the location where there is possibility of flammable gas leakages.**
  If the gas leaks and gathers around the unit, it could cause fire. ⃠
- **Do not install and use the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfurous acid gas etc.) or flammable gas (such as thinner, petroleum etc.) may be generated or accumulated, or volatile flammable substances are handled.**
  It could cause the corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts etc. And inflammable gas could cause fire. ⃠
- **Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual.**
  Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place. ❗
- **Do not use the indoor unit at the place where water splashes such as laundry.**
  Indoor unit is not waterproof. It could cause electric shock and fire. ⃠
- **Do not use the indoor unit for a special purpose such as food storage, cooling for precision instrument, preservation of animals, plants, and a work of art.**
  It could cause the damage of the items. ⃠
- **Do not install nor use the system near equipments which generate electromagnetic wave or high harmonics.**
  Equipments like inverter equipment, private power generator, high-frequency medical equipment, or telecommunication equipment might influence the air conditioner and cause a malfunction and breakdown. Or the air conditioner might influence medical equipments or telecommunication equipments, and obstruct their medical activity or cause jamming. ⃠
- **Do not install the remote control at the direct sunlight.**
  It could cause breakdown or deformation of the remote control. ⃠
- **Do not install the indoor unit at the place listed below.**
  · Places where flammable gas could leak.
  · Places where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floated.
  · Place where the substances which affect the air conditioner are generated such as sulfide gas, chloride gas, acid, alkali or ammonic atmospheres.
  · Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly.
  · On vehicles and ships
  · Places where machinery which generates high harmonics is used.
  · Places where cosmetics or special sprays are frequently used.
  · Highly salted area such as beach.
  · Heavy snow area
  · Places where the system is affected by smoke from a chimney.
  · Altitude over 1000m ⃠
- **Do not install the indoor unit in the locations listed below (Be sure to install the indoor unit according to the installation manual for each model because each indoor unit has each limitation)**
  · Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit
  · Locations where vibration can be amplified due to insufficient strength of structure.
  · Locations where the infrared receiver is exposed to the direct sunlight or the strong light beam. (in case of the infrared specification unit)
  · Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed. (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 5m)
  · Locations where drainage cannot run off safely.
  It can affect performance or function and etc.. ⃠
- **Do not put any valuables which will break down by getting wet under the air conditioner.**
  Condensation could drop when the relative humidity is higher than 80% or drain pipe is clogged, and it damages user's belongings. ⃠
- **Do not use the base frame for the outdoor unit which is corroded or damaged after a long period of use.**
  It could cause the unit falling down and injury. ⃠
- **Pay attention not to damage the drain pan by weld sputter when brazing work is done near the unit.**
  If sputter entered into the unit during brazing work, it could cause damage (pinhole) of drain pan and leakage of water. To avoid damaging, keep the indoor unit packed or cover the indoor unit. ❗
- **Install the drain pipe to drain the water surely according to the installation manual.**
  Improper connection of the drain pipe may cause dropping water into room and damaging user's belongings. ❗
- **Do not share the drain pipe for indoor unit and GHP (Gas Heat Pump system) outdoor unit.**
  Toxic exhaust gas would flow into room and it might cause serious damage (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen) to user's health and safety. ⃠
- **Be sure to perform air tightness test by pressurizing with nitrogen gas after completed refrigerant piping work.**
  If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of refrigerant leakage in the small room, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents. ❗
- **For drain pipe installation, be sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100, not to make traps, and not to make air-bleeding.**
  Check if the drainage is correctly done during commissioning and ensure the space for inspection and maintenance. ❗
- **Ensure the insulation on the pipes for refrigeration circuit so as not to condense water.**
  Incomplete insulation could cause condensation and it would wet ceiling, floor, and any other valuables. ❗
- **Do not install the outdoor unit where is likely to be a nest for insects and small animals.**
  Insects and small animals could come into the electronic components and cause breakdown and fire. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean. ⃠
- **Pay extra attention, carrying the unit by hand.**
  Carry the unit with 2 people if it is heavier than 20kg. Do not use the plastic straps but the grabbing place, moving the unit by hand. Use protective gloves in order to avoid injury by the aluminum fin. ❗
- **Make sure to dispose of the packaging material.**
  Leaving the materials may cause injury as metals like nail and woods are used in the package. ❗
- **Do not operate the system without the air filter.**
  It may cause the breakdown of the system due to clogging of the heat exchanger. ⃠
- **Do not touch any button with wet hands.**
  It could cause electric shock. ⃠
- **Do not touch the refrigerant piping with bare hands when in operation.**
  The pipe during operation would become very hot or cold according to the operating condition, and it could cause a burn or frostbite. ⃠
- **Do not clean up the air conditioner with water.**
  It could cause electric shock. ⃠
- **Do not turn off the power source immediately after stopping the operation.**
  Be sure to wait for more than 5 minutes. Otherwise it could cause water leakage or breakdown. ⃠
- **Do not control the operation with the circuit breaker.**
  It could cause fire or water leakage. In addition, the fan may start operation unexpectedly and it may cause injury. ⃠

①Before installation

- Install correctly according to the installation manual.
- Confirm the following points:
  - ○Unit type/Power supply specification
  - ○Pipes/Wires/Small parts
  - ○Accessory items

Accessory item

For unit hanging		For refrigerant pipe			For drain pipe			
Flat washer (M10)	Level gauge	Pipe cover(big)	Pipe cover (small)	Strap	Pipe cover(big)	Pipe cover(small)	Drain hose	Hose clamp
								
8	1	1	1	4	1	1	1	1
For unit hanging	For unit hanging and adjustment	For heat insulation of gas pipe	For heat insulation of liquid tube	For pipe cover fixing	For heat insulation of drain socket	For heat insulation of drain socket	For drain pipe connecting	For drain hose mounting

②Selection of installation location for the indoor unit

① Select the suitable areas to install the unit under approval of the user.

- Areas where the indoor unit can deliver hot and cold wind sufficiently. Suggest to the user to use a circulator if the ceiling height is over 3m to avoid warm air being accumulated on the ceiling.
- Areas where there is enough space to install and service.
- Areas where it can be drained properly. Areas where drain pipe descending slope can be taken.
- Areas where there is no obstruction of airflow on both air return grille and air supply port.
- Areas where fire alarm will not be accidentally activated by the air conditioner.
- Areas where the supply air does not short-circuit.
- Areas where it is not influenced by draft air.
- Areas not exposed to direct sunlight.
- Areas where dew point is lower than around 28°C and relative humidity is lower than 80%.
  This indoor unit is tested under the condition of JIS (Japan Industrial Standard) high humidity condition and confirmed there is no problem. However, there is some risk of condensation drop if the air conditioner is operated under the severer condition than mentioned above.
  If there is a possibility to use it under such a condition, attach additional insulation of 10 to 20mm thick for entire surface of indoor unit, refrigeration pipe and drain pipe.
- Areas where TV and radio stays away more than 1m. (It could cause jamming and noise.)
- Areas where any items which will be damaged by getting wet are not placed such as food, table wares, server, or medical equipment under the unit.
- Areas where there is no influence by the heat which cookware generates.
- Areas where not exposed to oil mist, powder and/or steam directly such as above fryer.
- Areas where lighting device such as fluorescent light or incandescent light doesn't affect the operation.
  (A beam from lighting device sometimes affects the infrared receiver for the wireless remote control and the air conditioner might not work properly.)

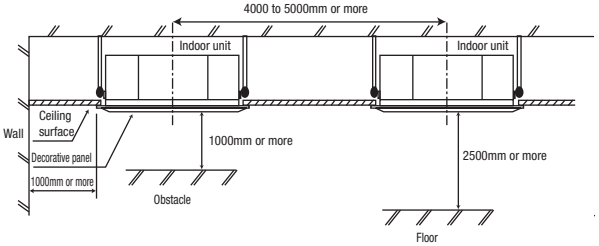
②Check if the place where the air conditioner is installed can hold the weight of the unit. If it is not able to hold, reinforce the structure with boards and beams strong enough to hold it. If the strength is not enough, it could cause injury due to unit falling.

③If there are 2 units of wireless type, keep them away for more than 6m to avoid malfunction due to cross communication.

④When plural indoor units are installed nearby, keep them away for more than 4 to 5m.

Space for installation and service

- When it is not possible to keep enough space between indoor unit and wall or between indoor units, close the air supply port where it is not possible to keep space and confirm there is no short circuit of airflow.
- Install the indoor unit at a height of more than 2.5m above the floor.



Where there are pipe joints on the way of embedded piping, provide adequate openings for inspection of the joints.

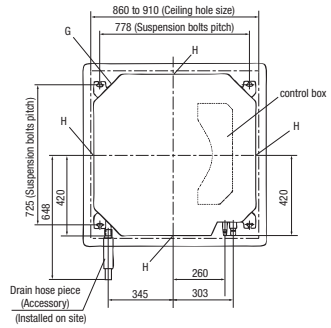
Set blow-out pattern

- Select the most proper number of blow-out air supply port direction from 4 way, 3 way or 2 way according to the shape of the room and installation position. (1 way is not available.)
- If it is necessary to change the number of air supply port, prepare the covering materials.
- Instruct the user not to use low fan speed when 2way or 3way air supply is used.
- Do not use 2way air supply port under high temperature and humidity environment. (Otherwise it could cause condensation and leakage of water.)
- It is possible to set the airflow direction port by port independently. Refer to tne user's manual for details.

③Preparation before installation

- If suspension bolt becomes longer, do reinforcement of earthquake resistant.
  - ○For grid ceiling
    When suspension bolt length is over 500mm, or the gap between the ceiling and roof is over 700mm, apply earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.
  - ○In case the unit is hanged directly from the slab and is installed on the ceiling plane which has enough strength.
    When suspension bolt length is over 1000mm, apply the earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.
- Prepare four (4) sets of suspension bolt, nut and spring washer (M10 or M8) on site.

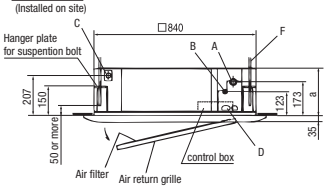
Ceiling opening, Suspension bolts pitch, Pipe position

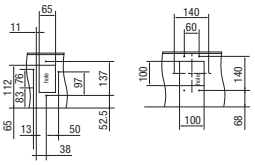


(mm)

Series	Type	a
Single Split (PAC) series	40 to 71 type	246
	100 to 140 type	298
VRF (KX) series	28 to 71 type	246
	90 to 160 type	298

Symbol	
A	Gas piping
B	Liquid piping
C	Drain piping
D	Hole for wiring
F	Suspension bolts
G	Outside air opening for ducting
H	Air outlet opening for ducting

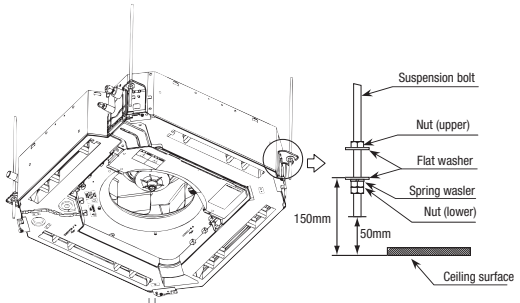


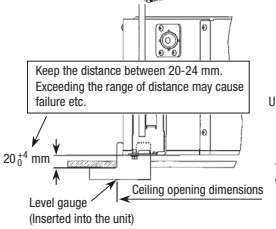


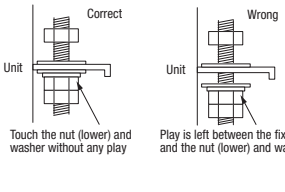
④Installation of indoor unit

Work procedure

1. Prepare a ceiling hole with the size of from 860mm × 860mm to 910mm × 910mm referring to the template attached in the package.
2. Arrange the suspension bolt at the right position (725mm×778mm).
3. Make sure to use four suspension bolts and fix them so as to be able to hold 500N load.
4. Ensure that the lower end of the suspension bolt should be 50mm above the ceiling plane. Temporarily put the four lower nuts 150mm above the ceiling plane and the upper nuts on distant place from the lower nuts in order not to obstruct hanging the indoor unit or adjust the indoor unit position, and then hang the indoor unit.
5. Adjust the indoor unit position after hanging it by inserting the level gauge attached on the package into the air supply port and checking if the gap between the ceiling plane and the indoor unit is appropriate. In order to adjust the indoor unit position, adjust the lower nuts while the upper nuts are put on distant place. Confirm there is no backlash between the hanger plate for suspension bolt and the lower nut and washer.

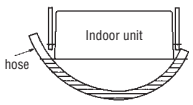






④Installation of indoor unit (continued)

6. Make sure to install the indoor unit horizontally. Confirm the levelness of the indoor unit with a level gauge or transparent hose filled with water. Keep the height difference at both ends of the indoor unit within 3mm.
7. Tighten four upper nuts and fix the unit after height and levelness adjustment.



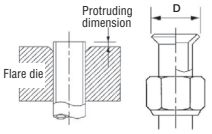
Caution

- ●Do not adjust the height by adjusting upper nuts. It will cause unexpected stress on the indoor unit and it will lead to deformation of the unit, failure of attaching a panel, and generating noise from the fan.
- ●Make sure to install the indoor unit horizontally and set the gap between the unit underside and the ceiling plane properly. Improper installation may cause air leakage, dew condensation, water leakage and noise.
- ●Even after decorative panel attached, still the unit height can be adjusted finely. Refer to the installation manual for decorative panel for details.
- ●Make sure there is no gap between decoration panel and ceiling surface, and between decoration panel and the indoor unit. The gap may cause air leakage, dew condensation and water leakage.
- ●In case decorative panel is not installed at the same time, or ceiling material is installed after the unit installed, put the cardboard template for installation attached on the package (packing material of cardboard box) on the bottom of the unit in order to avoid dust coming into the indoor unit.

⑤Refrigerant pipe

Caution

- ●Be sure to use new pipes for the refrigerant pipes. Use the flare nut attached to the product or a nut compatible with JIS B 8607, Class 2.
  Regarding whether existing pipes can be reused or not, and the washing method, refer to the instruction manual of the outdoor unit, catalogue or technical data.
  1) In case of reuse: Do not use old flare nut, but use the one attached to the unit or compatible with JIS B 8607, Class 2.
  2) In case of reuse: Flare the end of pipe replaced partially for R410A.



Pipe dia. d mm	Min. pipe wall thickness mm	Protruding dimension for flare, mm		Flare O.D. D mm	Flare nut tightening torque N·m
		Rigid (Clutch type)			
		For R410A	Conventional tool		
6.35	0.8	0 ~ 0.5	0.7 ~ 1.3	8.9 ~ 9.1	14 ~ 18
9.52	0.8			12.8 ~ 13.2	32 ~ 42
12.7	0.8			16.2 ~ 16.6	49 ~ 61
15.88	1			19.3 ~ 19.7	68 ~ 72
19.05	1.2			23.6 ~ 24.0	100 ~ 120

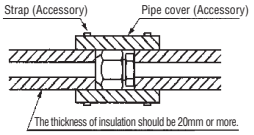
- ●Use phosphorus deoxidized copper alloy seamless pipe (C1220T specified in JIS H3300) for refrigeration pipe installation.
  In addition, make sure there is no damage both inside and outside of the pipe, and no harmful substances such as sulfur, oxide, dust or a contaminant stuck on the pipes.
- ●Do not use any refrigerant other than R410A.
  Using other refrigerant except R410A (R22 etc.) may degrade inside refrigeration oil. And air getting into refrigeration circuit may cause over-pressure and resultant it may result in bursting, etc.
- ●Store the copper pipes indoors and seal the both end of them until they are brazed in order to avoid any dust, dirt or water getting into pipe. Otherwise it will cause degradation of refrigeration oil and compressor breakdown, etc.
- ●Use special tools for R410A refrigerant.

Work procedure

1. Remove the flare nut and blind flanges on the pipe of the indoor unit.
   ※ Make sure to loosen the flare nut with holding the nut on pipe side with a spanner and giving torque to the nut with another spanner in order to avoid unexpected stress to the copper pipe, and then remove them.
   (Gas may come out at this time, but it is not abnormal.)
   ● Pay attention whether the flare nut pops out. (as the indoor unit is sometimes pressured.)
2. Make a flare on liquid pipe and gas pipe, and connect the refrigeration pipes on the indoor unit.
   ※Bend radius of pipe must be 4D or larger. Once a pipe is bent, do not readjust the bending. Do not twist a pipe or collapse to 2/3D or smaller.
   ※Do a flare connection as follows:
   ● Make sure to loosen the flare nut with holding the nut on pipe side with a spanner and giving torque to the nut with another spanner in order to avoid unexpected stress to the copper pipe, and then remove them.
   ● When fastening the flare nut, align the refrigeration pipe with the center of flare nut, screw the nut for 3-4 times by hand and then tighten it by spanner with the specified torque mentioned in the table below. Make sure to hold the pipe on the indoor unit securely by a spanner when tightening the nut in order to avoid unexpected stress on the copper pipe.
3. Cover the flare connection part of the indoor unit with attached insulation material after a gas leakage inspection, and tighten both ends with attached straps.
   ●Make sure to insulate both gas pipes and liquid pipes completely.
   ※Incomplete insulation may cause dew condensation or water dropping.
4. Refrigerant is charged in the outdoor unit.
   As for the additional refrigerant charge for the indoor unit and piping, refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.

⑤Refrigerant pipe (continued)

Caution:
Refrigerating machine oil should not be applied to the threads of union or external surface of flare. It is because, even if the same tightening torque is applied, the oil is likely to decrease the slide friction force on the threads and increase, in turn, the axial component force so that it could crack the flare by the stress corrosion. Refrigerating machine oil may be applied to the internal surface of flare only.



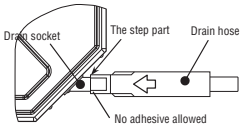
⑥Drain pipe

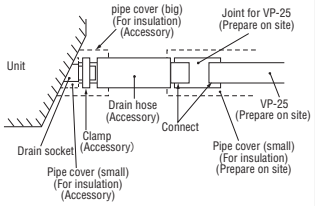
Caution

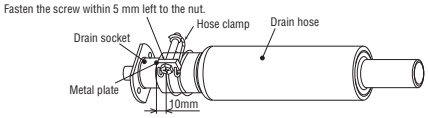
- ● Install the drain pipe according to the installation manual in order to drain properly. Imperfection in draining may cause flood indoors and wetting the household goods, etc.
- ● Do not put the drain pipe directly into the ditch where toxic gas such as sulfur, the other harmful and inflammable gas is generated. Toxic gas would flow into the room and it would cause serious damage to user's health and safety (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen). In addition, it may cause corrosion of heat exchanger and bad smell.
- ● Connect the pipe securely to avoid water leakage from the joint.
- ● Insulate the pipe properly to avoid condensation drop.
- ● Check if the water can flow out properly from both the drain outlet on the indoor unit and the end of the drain pipe after installation.
- ● Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway. In addition, do not put air vent on the drain pipe. Check if water is drained out properly from the pipe during commissioning. Also, keep sufficient space for inspection and maintenance.

Work procedure

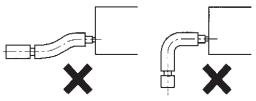
1. Make sure to insert the drain hose (the end mode of soft PVC) to the end of the step part of drain socket.
   Attach the hose clamp to the drain hose around 10mm from the end, and fasten the screw within 5mm left to the nut.
   ●Do not apply adhesives on this end.



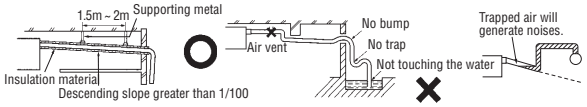




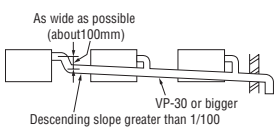
2. Prepare a joint for connecting VP-25 pipe, adhere and connect the joint to the drain hose (the end made of rigid PVC), and adhere and connect VP-25 pipe (prepare on site).
   ※As for drain pipe, apply VP-25 made of rigid PVC which is on the market.
   ● Make sure that the adhesive will not get into the supplied drain hose.
   It may cause the flexible part broken after the adhesive is dried up and gets rigid.
   ● The flexible drain hose is intended to absorb a small difference at installation of the unit or drain pipes. Intentional bending, expanding may cause the flexible hose broken and water leakage.



3. Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway.
   ● Pay attention not to give stress on the pipe on the indoor unit side, and support and fix the pipe as close place to the unit as possible when connecting the drain pipe.
   ● Do nt set up air vent.



● When sharing a drain pipe for more than one unit, lay the main pipe 100mm below the drain outlet of the unit. In addition, select VP-30 or bigger size for main drain pipe.

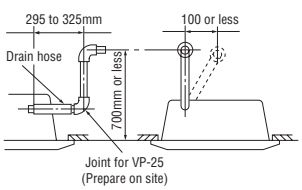


4. Insulate the drain pipe.
   ● Be sure to insulate the drain socket and rigid PVC pipe installed indoors otherwise it may cause dew condensation and water leakage.
   ※After drainage test implementation, cover the drain socket part with pipe cover (small size), then use the pipe cover (big size) to cover the pipe cover (small size), clamps and part of the drain hose, and fix and wrap it with tapes to wrap and make joint part gapless.

⑥Drain pipe (continued)

Drain up

● The position for drain pipe outlet can be raised up to 700mm above the ceiling. Use elbows for installation to avoid obstacles inside ceiling. If the horizontal drain pipe is too long before vertical pipe, the backflow of water will increase when the unit is stopped, and it may cause overflow of water from the drain pan on the indoor unit. In order to avoid overflow, keep the horizontal pipe length and offset of the pipe within the limit shown in the figure below.

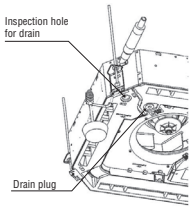


Drain test

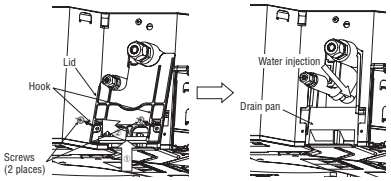
- ● After installation of drain pipe, make sure that drain system work in good condition and no water leakage from joint and drain pan. Check if the motor sound of drain pump is normal or not.
- ● Do drain test even if installation of heating season.
- ● For new building cases, make sure to complete the test before hanging the ceiling.

1. Fill water of approx. 1,000 cc in the drain pan of the main unit. Take care not to wet electrical equipment such as the drain pump, etc.
   Inject water through the blow outlet using a feed water pump, or the like, or through the refrigerant pipe joint.

●When injecting water through the blow outlet



●When removing the lid to inject water through the refrigerant joint
(1) Remove screws at 2 places.
(2) While pressing the lid in the direction ① , pull and remove the lid in the direction ② .
(Remove the lid by releasing the catches from the hooks in the figure.)



2. Make sure that water is drained out properly and there is no water leakage from any joints of the drain pipe at the test.
   Confirm that the water is properly drained out while the drain motor is operating. At the drain socket (transparent), it is possible to check if the water is drained out properly.
3. Unplug the drain plug on the indoor unit to remove remaining water on the drain pan after the test, and re-plug it. And insulate the drain pipe properly finally.

Drain pump operation

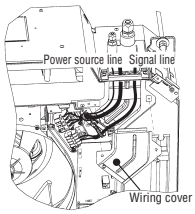
○In case electrical wiring work finished
Drain pump can be operated by remote control (wired).
For the operation method, refer to Operation for drain pump in the installation manual for wiring work.

○In case electrical wiring work not finished
Drain pump will run continuously when the dip switch"SW7-1" on the indoor unit PCB is turned ON, the Connector CNB is disconnected, and then the power supply (230VAC on the terminal block ① and ②) is turned ON.
Make sure to turn OFF "SW7-1" and reconnect the Connector CNB after the test.

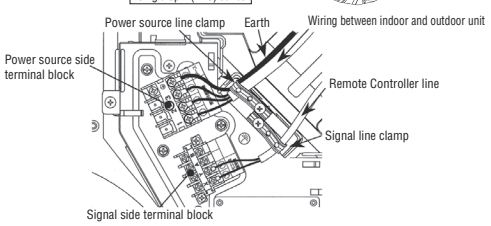
⑦Wiring-out position and wiring connection

- ● Electrical installation work must be performed according to the installation manual by an electrical installation service provider qualified by a power provider of the country, and be executed according to the technical standards and other regulations applicable to electrical installation in the country.
  Be sure to use an exclusive circuit.
- ● Use specified cord, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cord securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.
- ● Do not put both power source line and signal line on the same route. It may cause miscommunication and malfunction.
- ● Be sure to do D type earth work.
- ● For the details of electrical wiring work, see attached instruction manual for electrical wiring work.

1. Remove a lid of the control box (3 screws) and the wiring cover (2 screws).
2. Hold each wiring inside the unit and fasten them to terminal block securely.
3. Fix the wiring with clamps.
4. Install the removed parts back to original place.

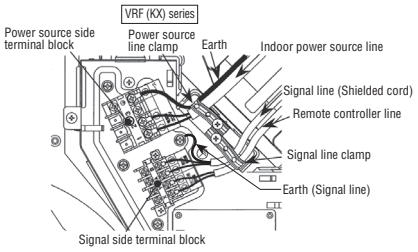


Single Split (PAC) series



⑦Wiring-out position and wiring connection (continued)

VRF (KX) series



⑧Panel installation

- ●Attach the panel on the indoor unit after electrical wiring work.
- ●Refer to attached manual for panel installation for details.

⑨Check list after installation

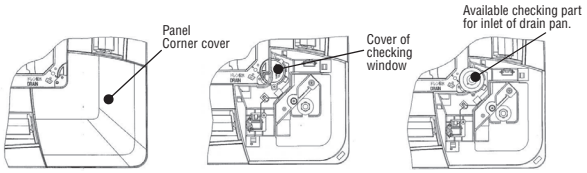
●Check the following items after all installation work completed.

Check if;	Expected trouble	Check
The indoor and outdoor units are fixed securely?	Falling, vibration, noise	
Inspection for leakage is done?	Insufficient capacity	
Insulation work is properly done?	Water leakage	
Water is drained properly?	Water leakage	
Supply voltage is same as mentioned in the model name plate?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
There is mis-wiring or mis-connection of piping?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Earth wiring is connected properly?	Electric shock	
Cable size comply with specified size?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Any obstacle blocks airflow on air inlet and outlet?	Insufficient capacity	

⑩How to check the dirt of drain pan (Maintenance)

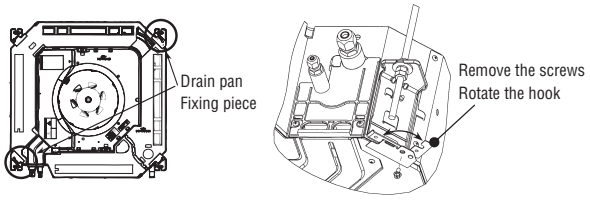
The method of checking the dirt of drain pan

- ●It is possible to check the dirt for inlet of drain pan without detaching the panel.
  (Inspection is not possible when the high efficient filter and option spacer is installed.)
- 1. Open the air return grille and remove the panel corner cover on drain pan side.
- 2. Remove the cover of inspection window. (1screw)
- 3. Check the drain pan from the inspection window.
  If the drain pan is very dirty, remove the drain pan and clean it.
- 4. After checking of the dirty of drain pan, restore the cover of the inspection window securely. Improper restoration of the cover may cause dew condensation and water leakage.



Attention for removing drain pan

- ●The fixing components have been attached the with drain pan. Pay attention to these components during installation and removing. Take off the hanging hook after removing four screws. During the installation of drain pan, fix the drain pan firmly by using four screws after hanging it up with the fixing hook.



PANEL INSTALLATION MANUAL

PJF012D003C F

Read this manual together with the indoor unit's installation manual.

⚠ WARNING

- **Fasten the wiring to the terminal securely and hold the cable securely so as not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal. Loose connection or hold will cause abnormal heat generation or fire.**
- **Make sure the power supply is turned off when electric wiring work. Otherwise, electric shock, malfunction and improper running may occur.**

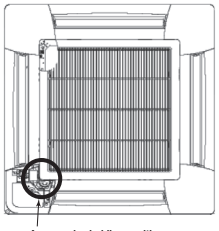
① Before installation

- Follow installation manual carefully, and install the panel properly.
- Check the following items.
  - ○ Accessories

Accessories

Bolt		4 pieces	For panel installation
Strap		4 pieces	For avoiding the corner panel from falling
Screw		4 pieces	For fixing the corner panel

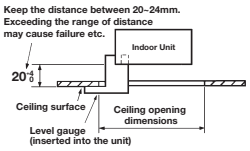
Note: Accessories are laid in the position removing the corner panel.



② Checking the indoor unit installation position

- Read this manual together with the air conditioner installation manual carefully.
- Check if the opening size for the indoor unit is correct with the level gauge supplied in the indoor unit.
- Check if the gap between the ceiling plane and the indoor unit is correct by inserting the level gauge into the air outlet port of the indoor unit. (See below drawing)
- Adjust the installation elevation if necessary.

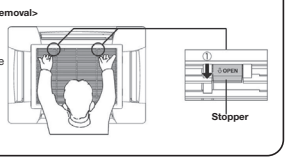
Caution
If there is a height difference beyond the design limit between the installation level of the indoor unit and the ceiling plane, the panel may be subject to excessive stress during installation, it may cause distortion and damage.



- The installation level of the indoor unit can be adjusted finely from the opening provided on the corner, even after panel is attached. (Refer to ⑥ Attaching the panel for details.)

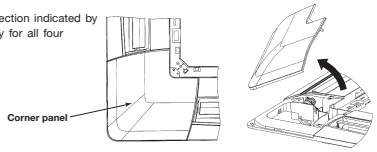
③ Removing the air return grille

1. Hold the stoppers on the air return grille (2 places) toward OPEN direction, open the air return grille.
2. Remove the hooks of the air return grille from the decorative panel while it is in the open position.



④ Removing a corner panel

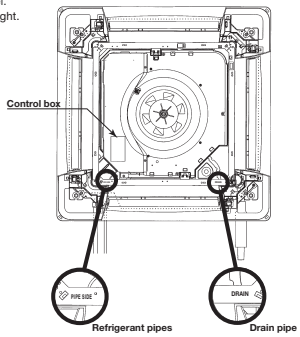
- Pull the corner panel toward the direction indicated by the arrow and remove it. (Same way for all four corner panels)



⑤ Orientation of the panel installation

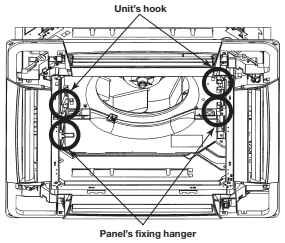
Take note that there is an orientation to install the panel.
- Attach the panel with the orientation shown on the right.
- Align the "PIPE SIDE" mark (on the panel) with the refrigerant pipes on the indoor unit.
- Align the "DRAIN" mark (on the panel) with the drain pipe on the indoor unit.

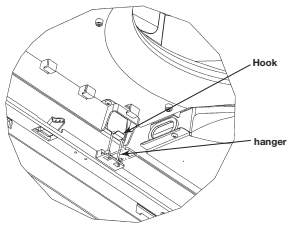
CAUTION
In case the orientation of the panel is not correct, it will lead to air leakage and also it is not possible to connect the louver motor wiring.



⑥ Attaching the panel

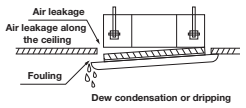
1. Temporary attaching
   - Lift up the hanger (2 places) on the panel for temporary support.
   - Hang the panel on the hook on the indoor unit.

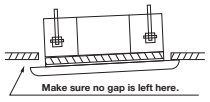




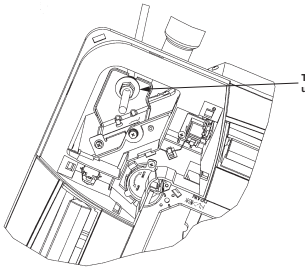
2. Fix the panel on the indoor unit
   - Fasten the panel on the indoor unit with the four bolts supplied with the panel.

Caution
- Improperly tightened hanging bolts can cause the problems listed below, so make sure that you have tightened them securely.
- If there is a gap remaining between the ceiling and the decorative panel even after the hanging bolts are tightened, adjust the installation level of the indoor unit again.





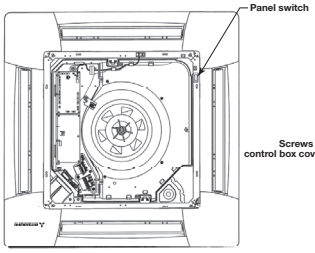
- It is possible to adjust the installation height of the indoor unit with the panel attached as long as there is no influence on the drain pipe inclination and/or the indoor unit levelness.

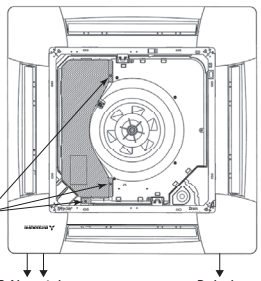


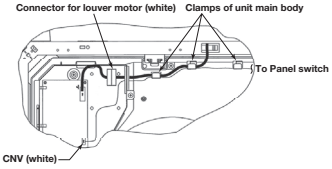
Caution
Make sure there is no stress given on the panel when adjusting the height of the indoor unit to avoid unexpected distortion. It may cause the distortion of panel or failing to close the air return grille.

⑦ Electrical wiring

1. After removing three screws of control box, detach the cover of control box (the hatched part).
2. Connect the connector for louver motor (white 20P).
   - Hold the wiring by using the clamps of the indoor unit.
   - Hold the connector inside the control box.
3. Connect the connector for panel switch.
   - Hold the wiring by using the clamps of the indoor unit.
   - Connect CNV (white) inside the control box.



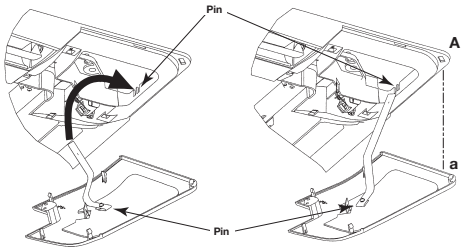


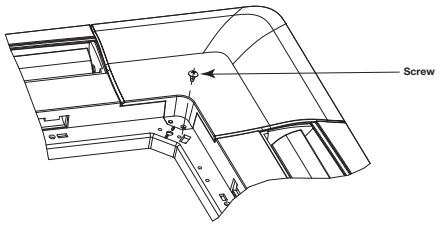


CAUTION
- If the air return grill is opened, the panel switch is turned off so that the air-conditioner cannot be operated any more.
- To start the air conditioner, close the air return grill.

⑧ Attaching a corner panel

1. To avoid unexpected falling of the corner panel, put the strap onto the corner panel's pin with turning the strap up.
2. Then hang the strap of a corner panel onto the decorative panel's pin.
3. First insert the part "a" of a corner panel into the part "A" of the decorative panel, and then engage four hooks.





4. Fix with screw.

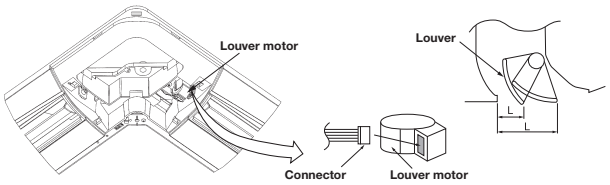
⑨ How to set the airflow direction

It is possible to change the movable range of the louver on the air outlet from the wired remote control. Once the top and bottom position is set, the louver will swing within the range between the top and the bottom when swing operation is chosen. It is also possible to apply different setting to each louver.

For the setting method of the louver's operating range, refer to the instruction manual of the wired remote control.

If it is necessary to fix the louver position manually, follow the procedure mentioned below.

1. Shut off the main power switch.
2. Unplug the connector of the louver motor which you want to fix the position. Make sure to insulate unplugged connectors electrically with a vinyl tape.
3. Adjust the louver position slowly by hand so as to be within the applicable range mentioned below table.



<Range of louver setting>

Vertical airflow direction	Horizontal 0°	Downwards 45°
Dimension L (mm)	43	26

※It can be set between 26~43mm freely.

Caution

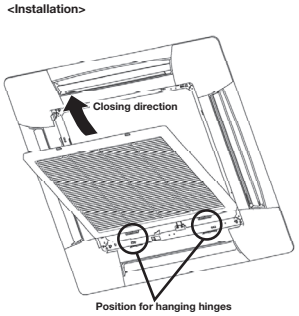
- Any automatic control or operation from the remote control will be disabled on the louver whose position is fixed in the above way.
- Do not set a louver beyond the specified range. Failure to observe this instruction may result in dripping, dew condensation, the fouling of the ceiling and the malfunctioning of the unit.

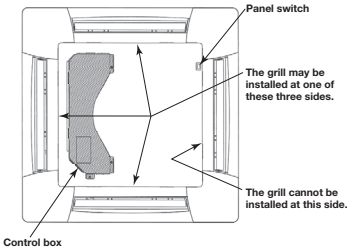
⑩ Attaching the air return grille

To attach the air return grille, follow the procedure described in ⑨ Removing the air return grille in the reverse order.

1. Hang the hooks of the air return grille in the hole of the panel. (The hooks of the grille can be hanged in three side of the panel as following.)
2. After the grille is hanged, close the grille while the stoppers on the grille (2 places) are kept pressed to "OPEN" direction. When the grille comes to the original position, release the stoppers to hold the grille. Make sure to hear the sound of "CLICK" in both stoppers.

<Installation>





Caution

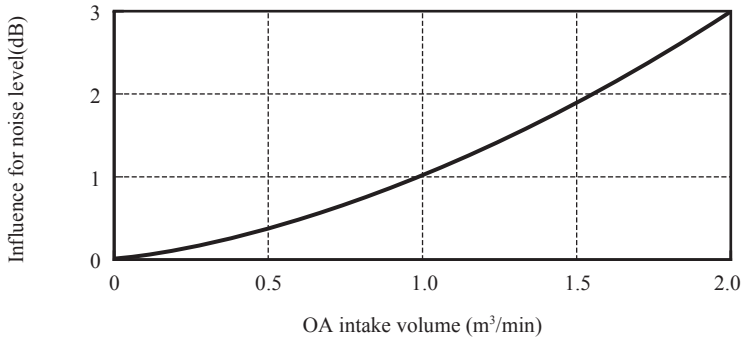
- Attaching the air return grille from the hinge side.
- Be careful in air return grille attaching, unstable attaching may cause grille falling.
- Repair or replace the distorted, broken stopper at once, or the grille falling may occur.

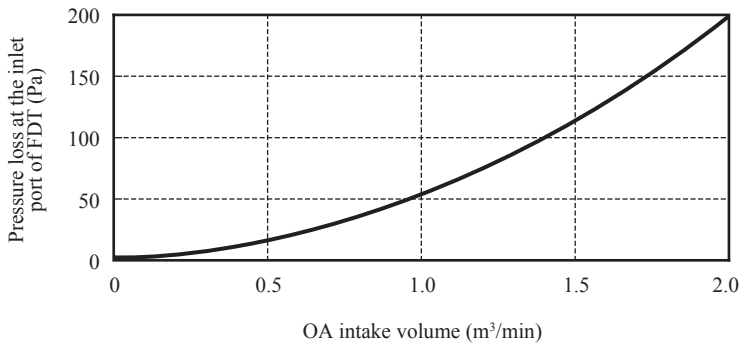
OUTDOOR AIR (OA) INTAKE FOR FDT

If it is required to intake OA through FDT unit, make sure to check following points carefully in order to conform to the requirement of customer.

If the OA intake volume through FDT unit is not satisfied with the required ventilation air volume, consider to install an indepemdent ventilation system.

1) Be sure to calculate cooling/heating load considering the ventilation heat load and to decide the air-conditioning system.
2) Be sure the OA intake volume to FDT unit should not exceed 20% of the Supply Air (SA) volume of FDT unit and it should be less than $2m^3$/min.
3) Be sure to decide the OA intake volume considering the mixed air temperature will be within the usage temperature range of FDT unit.
   Especially in following case, please consider to intake OA after processing OA or reducing the OA intake volume.
4) Be sure to equip a suitable filter for OA intaken in order to protect the dust.
   (Because OA does not pass through the filter equipped on FDT unit)
5) Be sure to insulate OA duct.
   (If not, it may have dew condensation.)
6) Be sure to interlock the booster fan for OA with the fan of FDT unit by using CNT connector.
   (If not, the dust trapped on the filter of FDT unit may be blown out to the room by the OA being intaken during the fan of FDT unit stopping)
7) Be sure to select a suitable booster fan for OA considering the pressure loss in the OA duct and the pressure loss at the inlet port of FDT with following diagram.
   (Please take into consideration the noise level as well)





<Selection of booster fan>

Booster fan should have a static pressure calculated with following formula.

Static pressure of booster fan

= the pressure loss at the inlet port of FDT (from above diagram)

+ Pressure loss in the OA duct (In case of ϕ100 duct, 5Pa/m is required.)

Select the booster fan from the fan characteristic diagram.

PFA012D621B△b

(2) Ceiling suspended type (FDEN)

This manual is for the installation of an indoor unit.
For electrical wiring work (Indoor), refer to page 170. For remote control installation, refer to page 182. For electrical wiring work (Outdoor) and refrigerant pipe work installation for outdoor unit, refer to the page 196.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.
- The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION .
  ⚠WARNING: Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠CAUTION : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
- The meanings of "Marks" used here are as shown as follows:
  ⃠ Never do it under any circumstances. ❗ Always do it according to the instruction.
- After completing the installation, do commissioning to confirm there are no abnormalities, and explain to the customers about "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS", correct operation method and maintenance method (air filter cleaning, operation method and temperature setting method) with user's manual of this unit.
  Ask your customers to keep this installation manual together with the user's manual. Also, ask them to hand over the user's manual to the new user when the owner is changed.

⚠WARNING

- **Installation should be performed by the specialist.**
  If you install the unit by yourself, it may lead to serious trouble such as water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit. ❗
- **Install the system correctly according to these installation manuals.**
  Improper installation may cause explosion, injury, water leakage, electric shock, and fire. ❗
- **When installing in small rooms, take prevention measures not to exceed the density limit of refrigerant in the event of leakage, referred by the formula (accordance with ISO5149).**
  If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit, please consult the dealer and install the ventilation system, otherwise lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents. ❗
- **Use the genuine accessories and the specified parts for installation.**
  If parts unspecified by our company are used it could cause water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit. ❗
- **Ventilate the working area well in case the refrigerant leaks during installation.**
  If the refrigerant contacts the fire, toxic gas is produced. ❗
- **Install the unit in a location that can hold heavy weight.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents. ❗
- **Install the unit properly in order to be able to withstand strong winds such as typhoons, and earthquakes.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents. ❗
- **Do not mix air in to the cooling cycle on installation or removal of the air conditioner.**
  If air is mixed in, the pressure in the cooling cycle will rise abnormally and may cause explosion and injuries. ⃠
- **Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient capacity and improper work can cause electric shock and fire. ❗
- **Use specified wire for electrical wiring, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.**
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire. ❗
- **Arrange the electrical wires in the control box properly to prevent them from rising. Fit the lid of the services panel property.**
  Improper fitting may cause abnormal heat and fire. ❗
- **Check for refrigerant gas leakage after installation is completed.**
  If the refrigerant gas leaks into the house and comes in contact with a fan heater, a stove, or an oven, toxic gas is produced. ❗
- **Use the specified pipe, flare nut, and tools for R410A.**
  Using existing parts (R22) could cause the unit failure and serious accident due to explosion of the cooling cycle. ❗
- **Tighten the flare nut according to the specified method by with torque wrench.**
  If the flare nut were tightened with excess torque, it could cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period. ❗
- **Do not put the drainage pipe directly into drainage channels where poisonous gases such as sulfide gas can occur.**
  Poisonous gases will flow into the room through drainage pipe and seriously affect the user's health and safety. This can also cause the corrosion of the indoor unit and a resultant unit failure or refrigerant leak. ⃠
- **Connect the pipes for refrigeration circuit securely in installation work before compressor is operated.**
  If the compressor is operated when the service valve is open without connecting the pipe, it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the system. ❗
- **Stop the compressor before removing the pipe after shutting the service valve on pump down work.**
  If the pipe is removed when the compressor is in operation with the service valve open, air would be mixed in the refrigeration circuit and it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the cooling cycle. ❗
- **Only use prescribed optional parts. The installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.**
  If you install the system by yourself, it can cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire. ❗
- **Do not repair by yourself. And consult with the dealer about repair.**
  Improper repair may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire. ⃠
- **Consult the dealer or a specialist about removal of the air conditioner.**
  Improper installation may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire. ❗
- **Turn off the power source during servicing or inspection work.**
  If the power is supplied during servicing or inspection work, it could cause electric shock and injury by the operating fan. ❗
- **Do not run the unit when the panel or protection guard are taken off.**
  Touching the rotating equipment, hot surface, or high voltage section could cause an injury to be caught in the machine, to get burned, or electric shock. ⃠
- **Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.**
  It could cause electric shock, unit failure and improper running. ❗

⚠ CAUTION

- **Perform earth wiring surely.**
  Do not connect the earth wiring to the gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod and telephone earth wiring. Improper earth could cause unit failure, electric shock and fire due to a short circuit. ⏚
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed.**
  If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it can cause fire and electric shocks. ❗
- **Use the circuit breaker of correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect one could cause the system failure and fire. ❗
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse of correct capacity where a fuse should be used.**
  Connecting the circuit by wire or copper wire could cause unit failure and fire. ⃠
- **Do not install the indoor unit near the location where there is possibility of flammable gas leakages.**
  If the gas leaks and gathers around the unit, it could cause fire. ⃠
- **Do not install and use the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfurous acid gas etc.) or flammable gas (such as thinner, petroleum etc.) may be generated or accumulated, or volatile flammable substances are handled.**
  It could cause the corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts etc. And inflammable gas could cause fire. ⃠
- **Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual.**
  Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place. ❗
- **Do not use the indoor unit at the place where water splashes such as laundry.**
  Indoor unit is not waterproof. It could cause electric shock and fire. ⃠
- **Do not use the indoor unit for a special purpose such as food storage, cooling for precision instrument, preservation of animals, plants, and a work of art.**
  It could cause the damage of the items. ⃠
- **Do not install nor use the system near equipments which generate electromagnetic wave or high harmonics.**
  Equipments like inverter equipment, private power generator, high-frequency medical equipment, or telecommunication equipment might influence the air conditioner and cause a malfunction and breakdown. Or the air conditioner might influence medical equipments or telecommunication equipments, and obstruct their medical activity or cause jamming. ⃠
- **Do not install the remote control at the direct sunlight.**
  It could cause breakdown or deformation of the remote control. ⃠
- **Do not install the indoor unit at the place listed below.** ⃠
  - Places where flammable gas could leak.
  - Places where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floated.
  - Place where the substances which affect the air conditioner are generated such as sulfide gas, chloride gas, acid, alkali or ammonic atmospheres.
  - Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly.
  - On vehicles and ships
  - Places where machinery which generates high harmonics is used.
  - Places where cosmetics or special sprays are frequently used.
  - Highly salted area such as beach.
  - Heavy snow area
  - Places where the system is affected by smoke from a chimney.
  - Altitude over 1000m
- **Do not install the indoor unit in the locations listed below (Be sure to install the indoor unit according to the installation manual for each model because each indoor unit has each limitation)** ⃠
  - Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit
  - Locations where vibration can be amplified due to insufficient strength of structure.
  - Locations where the infrared receiver is exposed to the direct sunlight or the strong light beam. (in case of the infrared specification unit)
  - Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed. (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 5m)
  - Locations where drainage cannot run off safely.

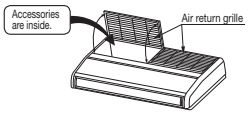
  It can affect performance or function and etc..
- **Do not put any valuables which will break down by getting wet under the air conditioner.**
  Condensation could drop when the relative humidity is higher than 80% or drain pipe is clogged, and it damages user's belongings. ⃠
- **Do not use the base frame for the outdoor unit which is corroded or damaged after a long period of use.**
  It could cause the unit falling down and injury. ⃠
- **Pay attention not to damage the drain pan by weld sputter when brazing work is done near the unit.**
  If sputter entered into the unit during brazing work, it could cause damage (pinhole) of drain pan and leakage of water. To avoid damaging, keep the indoor unit packed or cover the indoor unit. ❗
- **Install the drain pipe to drain the water surely according to the installation manual.**
  Improper connection of the drain pipe may cause dropping water into room and damaging user's belongings. ❗
- **Do not share the drain pipe for indoor unit and GHP (Gas Heat Pump system) outdoor unit.**
  Toxic exhaust gas would flow into room and it might cause serious damage (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen) to user's health and safety. ⃠
- **Be sure to perform air tightness test by pressurizing with nitrogen gas after completed refrigerant piping work.**
  If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of refrigerant leakage in the small room, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents. ❗
- **For drain pipe installation, be sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100, not to make traps, and not to make air-bleeding.**
  Check if the drainage is correctly done during commissioning and ensure the space for inspection and maintenance. ❗
- **Ensure the insulation on the pipes for refrigeration circuit so as not to condense water.**
  Incomplete insulation could cause condensation and it would wet ceiling, floor, and any other valuables. ❗
- **Do not install the outdoor unit where is likely to be a nest for insects and small animals.**
  Insects and small animals could come into the electronic components and cause breakdown and fire. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean. ⃠
- **Pay extra attention, carrying the unit by hand.**
  Carry the unit with 2 people if it is heavier than 20kg. Do not use the plastic straps but the grabbing place, moving the unit by hand. Use protective gloves in order to avoid injury by the aluminum fin. ❗
- **Make sure to dispose of the packaging material.**
  Leaving the materials may cause injury as metals like nail and woods are used in the package. ❗
- **Do not operate the system without the air filter.**
  It may cause the breakdown of the system due to clogging of the heat exchanger. ⃠
- **Do not touch any button with wet hands.**
  It could cause electric shock. ⃠
- **Do not touch the refrigerant piping with bare hands when in operation.**
  The pipe during operation would become very hot or cold according to the operating condition, and it could cause a burn or frostbite. ⃠
- **Do not clean up the air conditioner with water.**
  It could cause electric shock. ⃠
- **Do not turn off the power source immediately after stopping the operation.**
  Be sure to wait for more than 5 minutes. Otherwise it could cause water leakage or breakdown. ⃠
- **Do not control the operation with the circuit breaker.**
  It could cause fire or water leakage. In addition, the fan may start operation unexpectedly and it may cause injury. ⃠

①Before installation

- Install correctly according to the installation manual.
- Confirm the following points:
  ○Unit type/Power supply specification ○Pipes/Wires/Small parts ○Accessory items

Accessory item

For unit hanging		For refrigerant pipe			For drain pipe					For air return grille
Flat washer (M10)	Paper pattern	Pipe cover (large)	Pipe cover (small)	Strap	Drain hose (with clamp)	Hose clamp	Fixing bracket	Screw	Heay insulation	Screw
										
8	1	1	1	4	1	1	1	2	1	4
For unit hanging	For unit hanging and adjustment	For heat insulation of gas pipe	For heat insulation of liquid pipe	For fixing of pipe cover	For drain pipe connection	For drain hose mounting	For fixing of drain hose	For installing of fixing bracket	For drain hose	For fixing air return grille



②Selection of installation location for the indoor unit

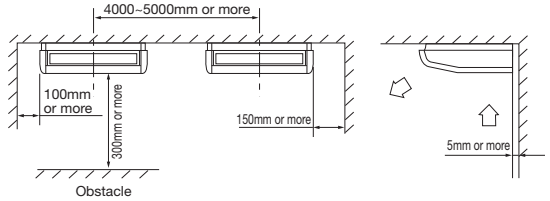
① Select the suitable areas to install the unit under approval of the user.
- Areas where the indoor unit can deliver hot and cold wind sufficiently. Suggest to the user to use a circulator if the ceiling height is over 3m to avoid warm air being accumulated on the ceiling.
- Areas where there is enough space to install and service.
- Areas where it can be drained properly. Areas where drain pipe descending slope can be taken.
- Areas where there is no obstruction of airflow on both air return grille and air supply port.
- Areas where fire alarm will not be accidentally activated by the air conditioner.
- Areas where the supply air does not short-circuit.
- Areas where it is not influenced by draft air.
- Areas not exposed to direct sunlight.
- Areas where dew point is lower than around 23°C and relative humidity is lower than 80%. This indoor unit is tested under the condition of JIS (Japan Industrial Standard) high humidity condition and confirmed there is no problem. However, there is some risk of condensation drop if the air conditioner is operated under the severer condition than mentioned above.
- Areas where TV and radio stays away more than 1m. (It could cause jamming and noise.)
- Areas where any items which will be damaged by getting wet are not placed such as food, table wares, server, or medical equipment under the unit.
- Areas where there is no influence by the heat which cookware generates.
- Areas where not exposed to oil mist, powder and/or steam directly such as above fryer.
- Areas where lighting device such as fluorescent light or incandescent light doesn't affect the operation.
  (A beam from lighting device sometimes affects the infrared receiver for the wireless remote control and the air conditioner might not work properly.)

② Check if the place where the air conditioner is installed can hold the weight of the unit. If it is not able to hold, reinforce the structure with boards and beams strong enough to hold it. If the strength is not enough, it could cause injury due to unit falling.

③ If there are 2 units of wireless type, keep them away for more than 6m to avoid malfunction due to cross communication.

④ When plural indoor units are installed nearby, keep them away for more than 4 to 5m.

Space for installation and service



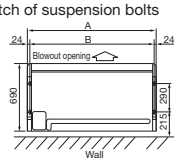
③Preparation before installation

- If suspension bolt becomes longer, do reinforcement of earthquake resistant.
  ○ For grid ceiling
  When suspension bolt length is over 500mm, or the gap between the ceiling and roof is over 700mm, apply earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.
  ○ In case the unit is hanged directly from the slab and is installed on the ceiling plane which has enough strength.
  When suspension bolt length is over 1000mm, apply the earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.
- Prepare four (4) sets of suspension bolt, nut and spring washer (M10) on site.

③Preparation before installation (continued)

Pitch of suspension bolts and pipe position

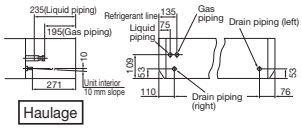
Pitch of suspension bolts



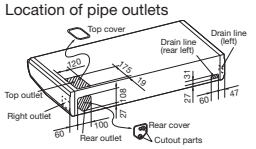
(mm)

Series	type	A	B
Single Split (PAC) series	40 to 50type	1070	1022
	60 to 71type	1320	1272
	100 to 140type	1620	1572
VRF (KX) series	36 to 56type	1070	1022
	71type	1320	1272
	112 to 140type	1620	1572

Pipe position



Location of pipe outlets



※The outlet through which the pipings are taken out is available in three directions.
※Pipes can be taken out in 3 directions (rear, right or top).
- Cut out holes using nippers, etc.
- Cut out holes to take out pipes along the cutoff line on the rear cover.
- Cut out the top face cover aligning to the piping position.
- When taking pipe out to right-hand side, cut out a hole along the groove at the inside of side panel.
- After installing pipes and wires, seal clearances around pipes and wires with putty, etc. to shut off dust.

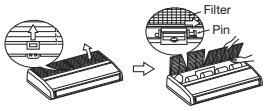
Make sure to install the covers at rear and top in order to protect the inside of unit from intrusion of dust or protect wires from damages by sharp edges. When taking them out to the right-hand side, remove burrs or sharp edges from the cutout.

Haulage

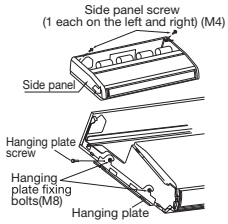
- Move the box as close to the installation area as possible packed.
- If it must be unpacked, wrap the unit with a nylon sling, and be careful not to damage the unit.
- If you need to lay the unit on a floor after unpacking, always put it with the intake grille facing upward.

Preparation before instalation

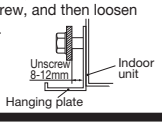
1. Remove the air return grille.
Slide stoppers (4 places) of the catches, then pull out the pins (4 or 6 places).



2. Remove the side panel.
Remove the screw and detach the side panel by sliding it toward the direction indicated by the arrow mark.



3. Remove the hanging plate.
Remove the screw, and then loosen the fixing bolts.



④Remote control

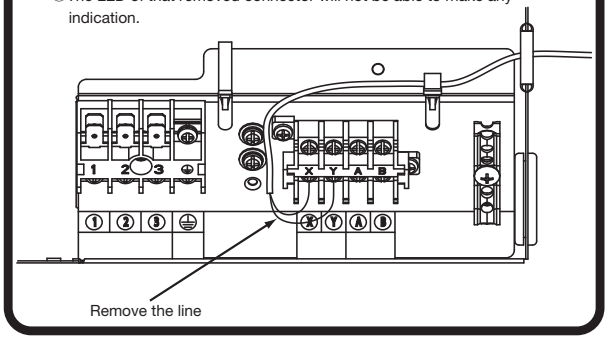
Installation of remote control

Up to two receiver or wired remote control can be installed in one indoor unit group.

● When both wired and wireless remote control are used
It is necessary to set wired or wireless remote control as slave.
(For the method of changing the setting, refer to the installtion manual attached to remote control or wireless kit.)

● When wired remote control are used only (wireless type)
It is necessary to remove the line that is connected to the receiver.
Remove signal line connected to the receiver from primary side of terminal block (X, Y).

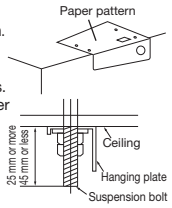
ATTENTION
①Insulate with tape the removed line.
②The LED of that removed connector will not be able to make any indication.



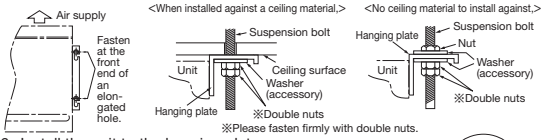
⑤Installation of indoor unit

Work procedure

1. Select the suspension bolt locations and the pipe hole location.
   (1) Use enclosed paper pattern as a reference, and drill the holes for the suspension bolts and pipe.
   ※Decide the locations based on direct measurements.
   (2) Once the locations are properly placed, the paper pattern can be removed.
2. Install the suspension bolts in place.
3. Fix with 4 suspension bolts, which can endure load of 500N.
4. Check the measurements given at the right figure for the length of the suspension bolts.

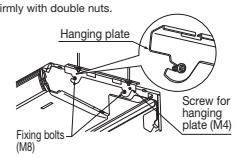


5. Fasten the hanging plate onto the suspension bolts.



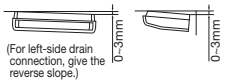
※Please fasten firmly with double nuts.

6. Install the unit to the hanging plate.
   (1) Slide the unit in from front side to get it hanged on the hanging plate with the bolts.
   (2) Fasten the four fixing bolts (M8: 2 each on the left and right sides) firmly.
   (3) Fasten the two screws (M4: 1 each on the left and right sides).



⚠**WARNINIG** : Hang a side panel on from the panel side to the rear side and then fasten it securely onto the indoor unit with screws.

※To ensure smooth drain flow, install the unit with a descending slope toward the drain outlet.



⚠ **CAUTION** : Do not give the reversed slope, which may cause water leaks.

⑥Refrigerant pipe

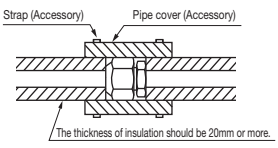
Caution

- ●Use the new refrigerant pipe.
  When re-using the existing pipe system for R22 or R407C, pay attention to the following items.
  ・Change the flare nuts with the attached ones (JIS category 2), and reprocess the flare parts.
  ・Do not use thin-walled pipes.
- ●Use phosphorus deoxidized copper alloy seamless pipe (C1220T specified in JIS H3300) for refrigeration pipe installation. In addition, make sure there is no damage both inside and outside of the pipe, and no harmful substances such as sulfur, oxide, dust or a contaminant stuck on the pipes.
- ●Do not use any refrigerant other than R410A.
  Using other refrigerant except R410A (R22 etc.) may degrade inside refrigeration oil. And air getting into refrigeration circuit may cause over-pressure and resultant it may result in bursting, etc.
- ●Store the copper pipes indoors and seal the both end of them until they are brazed in order to avoid any dust, dirt or water getting into pipe. Otherwise it will cause degradation of refrigeration oil and compressor breakdown, etc.
- ●Use special tools for R410 refrigerant.

Work procedure

1. Remove the flare nut and blind flanges on the pipe of the indoor unit.
   ※Make sure to loosen the flare nut with holding the nut on pipe side with a spanner and giving torque to the nut with another spanner in order to avoid unexpected stress to the copper pipe, and then remove them. (Gas may come out at this time, but it is not abnormal.)
   ●Pay attention whether the flare nut pops out. (as the indoor unit is sometimes pressured.)
2. Make a flare on liquid pipe and gas pipe, and connect the refrigeration pipes on the indoor unit.
   ・When taking out the pipe to rear or top, install it together with the electric wire⑧, passing them through the attached cover.
   ・Seal clearances with putty, etc. to shut off dust.
   ※Bend the pipe with as big radius as possible and do not bend the pipe repeatedly. In addition, do not twist and crush the pipes.
   ※Do a flare connection as follows:
   ●Make sure to loosen the flare nut with holding the nut on pipe side with a spanner and giving torque to the nut with another spanner in order to avoid unexpected stress to the copper pipe, and then remove them.
   ●When fastening the flare nut, align the refrigeration pipe with the center of flare nut, screw the nut for 3-4 times by hand and then tighten it by spanner with the specified torque mentioned in the table below. Make sure to hold the pipe on the indoor unit securely by a spanner when tightening the nut in order to avoid unexpected stress on the copper pipe.
3. Cover the flare connection part of the indoor unit with attached insulation material after a gas leakage inspection, and tighten both ends with attached straps.
   ●Make sure to insulate both gas pipes and liquid pipes completely.
   ※Incomplete insulation may cause dew condensation or water dropping.
4. Refrigerant is charged in the outdoor unit.
   As for the additional refrigerant charge for the indoor unit and piping, refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.

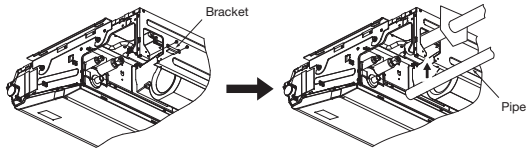
Pipe diameter	Tightening torque N·m
ø 6.35	14 to 18
ø 9.52	34 to 42
ø 12.7	49 to 61
ø 15.88	68 to 82
ø 19.05	100 to 120



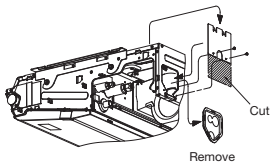
⑥Refrigerant pipe (continued)

The pipe can be connected from three different directions. (back, reight, top)

- ● When the pipe is routed through the back.
  If the bracket is removed, piping work will become easy.
  ※After piping, reinstall the removed bracket.



- ● When the pipe is routed through the back.
  Cut the removed top cover, and install to the rear panel instead of rear cover.



⑦Drain pipe

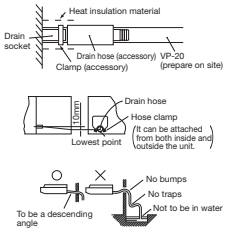
The drain pipes may face out towards the back to the left, or to the right side.

Caution

- ● Install the drain pipe according to the installation manual in order to drain properly. Imperfection in draining may cause flood indoors and wetting the household goods, etc.
- ● Do not put the drain pipe directly into the ditch where toxic gas such as sulfur, the other harmful andinflammable gas is generated. Toxic gas would flow into the room and it would cause serious damage to user's health and safety (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen). In addition, it may cause corrosion of heat exchanger and bad smell.
- ● Connect the pipe securely to avoid water leakage from the joint.
- ● Insulate the pipe properly to avoid condensation drop.
- ● Check if the water can flow out properly from both the drain outlet on the indoor unit and the end of the drain pipe after installation.
- ● Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway. In addition, do not put air vent on the drain pipe. Check if water is drained out properly from the pipe during commissioning. Also, keep sufficient space for inspection and maintenance.

Work procedure

1. Insert drain hose completely to the base, and tighten the drain hose clamp securely. (adhesive must not be used.)
   ※When plumbing on the left side, move the rubber plug and the cylindrical insulating materials by the pipe connecting hole on the left side of the unit to the right side.
   ⚠Beware of a possible outflow of water that may occur upon removal of a drain plug.
2. Fix the drain hose at the lowest point with a hose clamp supplied as an accessory.
   ※Give a drain hose a gradient of 10mm as illustrated in the right drawing by laying it without leaving a slack.
   ● Take head of electrical cables so that they may not run beneath the drain hose.



⚠A drain hose must be clamped down with a hose clamp. There is a possibility that drain water overflows.

3. Connect VP-20(prepare on site) to drain hose. (adhesive must not be used.)
   ※ Use commercially available rigid PVC general pipe VP-20 for drain pipe.
4. Do not to make the up-down bending and trap in the mid-way while assuming that the drain pipes is downhill. (more than 1/100)
   ● Never set up air vent.
5. Insulate the drain pipe.
   ● Insulate the drain hose clamp with the heat insulation supplied as accessories.
   ● When the unit is installed in a humid place, consider precautions against dew condensation such as heat insulation for the drain pipe.

Drain test

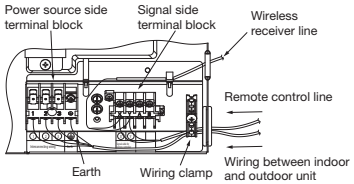
- ● After installation of drain pipe, make sure that drain system work in good condition and no water leakage from joint and drain pan.
- ● Do drain test even if installation of heating season.

⑧Wiring-out position and wiring connection

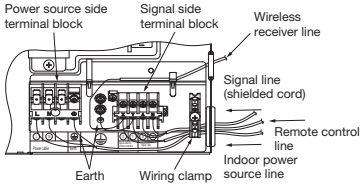
- Electrical installation work must be performed according to the installation manual by an electrical installation service provider qualified by a power provider of the country, and be executed according to the technical standards and other regulations applicable to electrical installation in the country.
  Be sure to use an exclusive circuit.
- Use specified cord, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cord securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.
- Do not put both power source line and signal line on the same route. It may cause miscommunication and malfunction.
- Be sure to do D type earth work.
- For the details of electrical wiring work, see attached instruction manual for electrical wiring work.

1. Remove a lid of the electrical box (2 screws).
2. Hold each wiring inside the unit and connect to a terminal block surely.
3. Fix the wiring by clamps.
4. Install the removed parts back to original place.

Single split (PAC) series



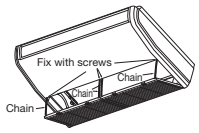
VRF(KX) series

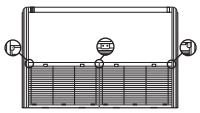


⑨Attaching the air return grille

●The air return grille must be attached when electrical cabling work is completed.

1. Fix the chains tied to the air return grille onto the indoor unit with screws supplied as accessories (4 pieces).
2. Close the air return grille.
   This completes the unit installtion work.





⑩Check list after installation

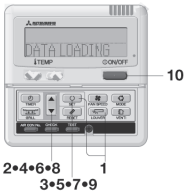
●Check the following items after all installation work completed.

Check if	Expected trouble	Check
The indoor and outdoor units are fixed securely?	Falling, vibration, noise	
Inspection for leakage is done?	Insufficient capacity	
Insulation work is properly done?	Water leakage	
Water is drained properly?	Water leakage	
Supply voltage is same as mentioned in the model name plate?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
There is mis-wiring or mis-connection of piping?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Earth wiring is connected properly?	Electric shock	
Cable size comply with specified size?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Any obstacle blocks airflow on air inlet and outlet?	Insufficient capacity	

⑪How to set the airflow direction

It is possible to change the movable range of the louver on the air outlet from the wired remote control. Once the top and bottom position is set, the louver will swing within the range between the top and the bottom when swing operation is chosen. It is also possible to apply different setting to each louver.
Note:This function is not able to be set with wireless remote control or simple remote control (RCH-H3).

1. Stop the air conditioner and press SET button and LOUVER button simultaneously for three seconds or more.
   ●The following is displayed if the number of the indoor units connected to the remote control is one. Go to step 4.
   "DATA LOADING"
   "No.1"
   ●The following is displayed if the number of the indoor units connected to the remote control are more than one.
   "SELECT I/U"
   "I/U000"



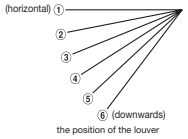
2. Press ▲or▼button.(selection of indoor unit)●Select the indoor unit of which the louver is set.
   [EXAMPLE]
   "I/U000" ▲"⇨"I/U001 ⇕"⇨"I/U002 ⇕"⇨
   "I/U003" ⇕"

3. Press SET button.(determination of indoor unit) ●Selected indoor unit is fixed.
   [EXAMPLE]
   "I/U001" (displayed for two seconds)
   "DATA LOADING"
   "No.1" ▲"

4. Press▲or▼button.(selection of louver No.) ●Select the louver No. to be set according to the right figure.
   [EXAMPLE]
   "No.1" ▲"⇔"No.2 ⇕"⇔"No.3 ⇕"⇔
   "No.4" ▼"

5. Press SET button.(Determination of louver No.)
   ●The louver No. to be set is confirmed and the display shows the upper limit of the movable range.
   [EXAMPLE] If No.1 louver is selected,
   "No.1 UPPER2" ⇕" ←current upper limit position

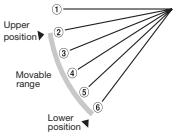
6. Press ▲or▼button.(selection of upper limit position)
   ● Select the upper limit of louver movable range.
   "position 1" is the most horizontal, and "position 6" is the most downward.
   "position --" is to return to the factory setting.
   If you need to change the setting to the default setting, use "position --".
   "No.1 UPPER1" ▼" (the most horizotal)
   ⇔"No.1 UPPER2" ⇕"
   ⇔"No.1 UPPER3" ⇕"
   ⇔"No.1 UPPER4" ⇕"
   ⇔"No.1 UPPER5" ⇕"
   ⇔"No.1 UPPER6" ▲" (the most downwards)
   ⇔"No.1 UPPER--" ▲" (return to the default setting)



7. Press SET button.(Fixing of the upper limit position)
   ●The upper limit position is fixed and the setting position is displayed for two seconds. Then proceed to lower limit position selection display.
   [EXAMPLE]
   No.1 UPPER2 (displayed for two seconds)
   No.1 LOWER5 ⇕ (shows current setting)

8. Press ▲or▼button.(Selection of lower limit position)
   ●Select the lower limit position of louver.
   "position 1" is the most horizontal, and "position 6 "is the most downwards.
   "position --" is to return to the factory setting. If you need to change the setting to the default setting, use "position --".
   No.1 LOWER1 ▼ (the most horizontal)
   No.1 LOWER2 ⇕
   No.1 LOWER3 ⇕
   No.1 LOWER4 ⇕
   No.1 LOWER5 ⇕
   No.1 LOWER6 ⇕ (the most downwards)
   No.1 LOWER-- ▲ (return to the default setting)

9. Press SET button.(Fixing of the lower limit position)
   ●Upper limit position and lower limit position are fixed, and the set positions are displayed for two seconds, then setting is completed.
   • After the setting is completed, the louver which was set moves from the original position to the lower limit position, and goes back to the original position again. (This operation is not performed if the indoor unit and/or indoor unit fan is in operation.)
   [Example]
   No.1 U2 L6 (displayed for two seconds)
   SET COMPLETE
   No.1 ▲



10.Press ⏻ON/OFF button.
   ●Louver adjusting mode ends and returns to the original display.

Caution
If the upper limit position number and the lower limit position number are set to the same position, the louver is fixed at that position auto swing does not funtion.

ATTENTION
If you press RESET button during settings, the display will return to previous display.If you press ⏻ON/OFF button during settings, the mode will be ended and return to original display, and the settings that have not been completed will become invalid.

When plural remote controls are connected, louver setting operation cannot be set by slave remote control.

(3) Duct connected-High static pressure type (FDU)

PJG012D004

(a) Indoor unit

This manual is for the installation of an indoor unit.
For electrical wiring work (Indoor), refer to page 174. For remote control installation, refer to page 182. For electrical wiring work (Outdoor) and refrigerant pipe work installation for outdoor unit, refer to page 196.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.
- The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION .
  ⚠WARNING : Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠CAUTION : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
- The meanings of "Marks" used here are as shown on the right:
  ⃠ Never do it under any circumstances. ❗ Always do it according to the instruction.
- After completing the installation, do commissioning to confirm there are no abnormalities, and explain to the customers about "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS", correct operation method and maintenance method (air filter cleaning, operation method and temperature setting method) with user's manual of this unit.
  Ask your customers to keep this installation manual together with the user's manual. Also, ask them to hand over the user's manual to the new user when the owner is changed.

⚠WARNING

- **Installation should be performed by the specialist.**
  If you install the unit by yourself, it may lead to serious trouble such as water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Install the system correctly according to these installation manuals.**
  Improper installation may cause explosion, injury, water leakage, electric shock, and fire.
- **Check the density refered by the foumula (accordance with ISO5149).**
  If the density exceeds the limit density, please consult the dealer and installate the ventilation system.
- **Use the genuine accessories and the specified parts for installation.**
  If parts unspecified by our company are used it could cause water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Ventilate the working area well in case the refrigerant leaks during installation.**
  If the refrigerant contacts the fire, toxic gas is produced.
- **Install the unit in a location that can hold heavy weight.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Install the unit properly in order to be able to withstand strong winds such as typhoons, and earthquakes.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Do not mix air in to the cooling cycle on installation or removal of the air conditioner.**
  If air is mixed in, the pressure in the cooling cycle will rise abnormally and may cause explosion and injuries.
- **Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient capacity and improper work can cause electric shock and fire.
- **Use specified wire for electrical wiring, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.**
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire.
- **Arrange the electrical wires in the control box properly to prevent them from rising. Fit the lid of the services panel property.**
  Improper fitting may cause abnormal heat and fire.
- **Check for refrigerant gas leakage after installation is completed.**
  If the refrigerant gas leaks into the house and comes in contact with a fan heater, a stove, or an oven, toxic gas is produced.
- **Use the specified pipe, flare nut, and tools for R410A.**
  Using existing parts (R22) could cause the unit failure and serious accident due to explosion of the cooling cycle.
- **Tighten the flare nut according to the specified method by with torque wrench.**
  If the flare nut were tightened with excess torque, it could cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period.
- **Do not put the drainage pipe directly into drainage channels where poisonous gases such as sulfide gas can occur.**
  Poisonous gases will flow into the room through drainage pipe and seriously affect the user's health and safety. This can also cause the corrosion of the indoor unit and a resultant unit failure or refrigerant leak.
- **Connect the pipes for refrigeration circuit securely in installation work before compressor is operated.**
  If the compressor is operated when the service valve is open without connecting the pipe, it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the system.
- **Stop the compressor before removing the pipe after shutting the service valve on pump down work.**
  If the pipe is removed when the compressor is in operation with the service valve open, air would be mixed in the refrigeration circuit and it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the cooling cycle.
- **Only use prescribed optional parts. The installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.**
  If you install the system by yourself, it can cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire.
- **Do not repair by yourself. And consult with the dealer about repair.**
  Improper repair may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Consult the dealer or a specialist about removal of the air conditioner.**
  Improper installation may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Turn off the power source during servicing or inspection work.**
  If the power is supplied during servicing or inspection work, it could cause electric shock and injury by the operating fan.
- **Do not run the unit when the panel or protection guard are taken off.**
  Touching the rotating equipment, hot surface, or high voltage section could cause an injury to be caught in the machine, to get burned, or electric shock.
- **Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.**
  It could cause electric shock, unit failure and improper running.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Perform earth wiring surely.**
  Do not connect the earth wiring to the gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod and telephone earth wiring. Improper earth could cause unit failure and electric shock or fire due to a short circuit.
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed.**
  If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it could cause electric shocks or fire.
- **Use the circuit breaker of correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect one could cause the system failure and fire.
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse of correct capacity where a fuse should be used.**
  Connecting the circuit by wire or copper wire could cause unit failure and fire.
- **Do not install the indoor unit near the location where there is possibility of flammable gas leakages.**
  If the gas leaks and gathers around the unit, it could cause fire.
- **Do not install and use the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfurous acid gas etc.) or flammable gas (such as thinner, petroleum etc.) may be generated or accumulated, or volatile flammable substances are handled.**
  It could cause the corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts etc. And inflammable gas could cause fire.
- **Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual.**
  Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place.
- **Do not use the indoor unit at the place where water splashes such as laundry.**
  Indoor unit is not waterproof. It could cause electric shock and fire.
- **Do not use the indoor unit for a special purpose such as food storage, cooling for precision instrument, preservation of animals, plants, and a work of art.**
  It could cause the damage of the items.
- **Do not install nor use the system near equipments which generate electromagnetic wave or high harmonics.**
  Equipments like inverter equipment, private power generator, high-frequency medical equipment, or telecommunication equipment might influence the air conditioner and cause a malfunction and breakdown. Or the air conditioner might influence medical equipments or telecommunication equipments, and obstruct their medical activity or cause jamming.
- **Do not install the remote control at the direct sunlight.**
  It could cause breakdown or deformation of the remote control.
- **Do not install the indoor unit at the place listed below.**
  - Places where flammable gas could leak.
  - Places where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floated.
  - Place where the substances which affect the air conditioner are generated such as sulfide gas, chloride gas, acid, alkali or ammonic atmospheres.
  - Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly.
  - On vehicles and ships
  - Places where machinery which generates high harmonics is used.
  - Places where cosmetics or special sprays are frequently used.
  - Highly salted area such as beach.
  - Heavy snow area
  - Places where the system is affected by smoke from a chimney.
  - Altitude over 1000m
- **Do not install the indoor unit in the locations listed below (Be sure to install the indoor unit according to the installation manual for each model because each indoor unit has each limitation)**
  - Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit
  - Locations where vibration can be amplified due to insufficient strength of structure.
  - Locations where the infrared receiver is exposed to the direct sunlight or the strong light beam. (in case of the infrared specification unit)
  - Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed. (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 5m)
  - Locations where drainage cannot run off safely.

  It can affect performance or function and etc..
- **Do not put any valuables which will break down by getting wet under the air conditioner.**
  Condensation could drop when the relative humidity is higher than 80% or drain pipe is clogged, and it damages user's belongings.
- **Do not use the base frame for the outdoor unit which is corroded or damaged after a long period of use.**
  It could cause the unit falling down and injury.
- **Pay attention not to damage the drain pan by weld sputter when brazing work is done near the unit.**
  If sputter entered into the unit during brazing work, it could cause damage (pinhole) of drain pan and leakage of water. To avoid damaging, keep the indoor unit packed or cover the indoor unit.
- **Install the drain pipe to drain the water surely according to the installation manual.**
  Improper connection of the drain pipe may cause dropping water into room and damaging user's belongings.
- **Do not share the drain pipe for indoor unit and GHP (Gas Heat Pump system) outdoor unit.**
  Toxic exhaust gas would flow into room and it might cause serious damage (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen) to user's health and safety.
- **Be sure to perform air tightness test by pressurizing with nitrogen gas after completed refrigerant piping work.**
  If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of refrigerant leakage in the small room, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.
- **For drain pipe installation, be sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100, not to make traps, and not to make air-bleeding.**
  Check if the drainage is correctly done during commissioning and ensure the space for inspection and maintenance.
- **Ensure the insulation on the pipes for refrigeration circuit so as not to condense water.**
  Incomplete insulation could cause condensation and it would wet ceiling, floor, and any other valuables.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit where is likely to be a nest for insects and small animals.**
  Insects and small animals could come into the electronic components and cause breakdown and fire. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **Pay extra attention, carrying the unit by hand.**
  Carry the unit with 2 people if it is heavier than 20kg. Do not use the plastic straps but the grabbing place, moving the unit by hand. Use protective gloves in order to avoid injury by the aluminum fin.
- **Make sure to dispose of the packaging material.**
  Leaving the materials may cause injury as metals like nail and woods are used in the package.
- **Do not operate the system without the air filter.**
  It may cause the breakdown of the system due to clogging of the heat exchanger.
- **Do not touch any button with wet hands.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not touch the refrigerant piping with bare hands when in operation.**
  The pipe during operation would become very hot or cold according to the operating condition, and it could cause a burn or frostbite.
- **Do not clean up the air conditioner with water.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not turn off the power source immediately after stopping the operation.**
  Be sure to wait for more than 5 minutes. Otherwise it could cause water leakage or breakdown.
- **Do not control the operation with the circuit breaker.**
  It could cause fire or water leakage. In addition, the fan may start operation unexpectedly and it may cause injury.

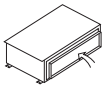
○This model is middle static ducted type air conditioning unit. Therefore, do not use this model for direct blow type air conditioning unit.

①Before installation

●Install correctly according to the installation manual.
●Confirm the following points:
○Unit type/Power supply specification ○Pipes/Wires/Small parts ○Accessory items

Accessory item

For hanging	For refrigerant pipe			For drain pipe			
Flat washer (M10)	Pipe cover (big)	Pipe cover (small)	Strap	Pipe cover (big)	Pipe cover (small)	Drain hose	Hose clamp
8	1	1	4	1	1	1	1
For unit hanging	For heat insulation of gas pipe	For heat insulation of liquid tube	For pipe cover fixing	For heat insulation of drain socket	For heat insulation of drain socket	For drain pipe connecting	For drain hose mounting



Accessory parts are stored inside this suction side.

②Selection of installation location for the indoor unit

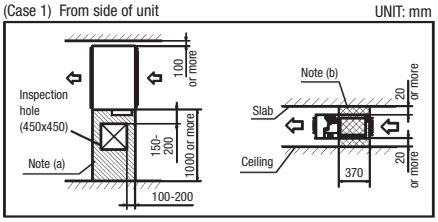
① Select the suitable areas to install the unit under approval of the user.
- Areas where the indoor unit can deliver hot and cold wind sufficiently. Suggest to the user to use a circulator if the ceiling height is over 3m to avoid warm air being accumulated on the ceiling.
- Areas where there is enough space to install and service.
- Areas where it can be drained properly. Areas where drain pipe descending slope can be taken.
- Areas where there is no obstruction of airflow on both air return grille and air supply port.
- Areas where fire alarm will not be accidentally activated by the air conditioner.
- Areas where the supply air does not short-circuit.
- Areas where it is not influenced by draft air.
- Areas not exposed to direct sunlight.
- Areas where dew point is lower than around 28°C and relative humidity is lower than 80%.
  This indoor unit is tested under the condition of JIS (Japan Industrial Standard) high humidity condition and confirmed there is no problem. However, there is some risk of condensation drop if the air conditioner is operated under the severer condition than mentioned above.
  If there is a possibility to use it under such a condition, attach additional insulation of 10 to 20mm thick for entire surface of indoor unit, refrigeration pipe and drain pipe.
- Areas where TV and radio stays away more than 1m. (It could cause jamming and noise.)
- Areas where any items which will be damaged by getting wet are not placed such as food, table wares, server, or medical equipment under the unit.
- Areas where there is no influence by the heat which cookware generates.
- Areas where not exposed to oil mist, powder and/or steam directly such as above fryer.
- Areas where lighting device such as fluorescent light or incandescent light doesn't affect the operation.
  (A beam from lighting device sometimes affects the infrared receiver for the wireless remote control and the air conditioner might not work properly.)

② Check if the place where the air conditioner is installed can hold the weight of the unit. If it is not able to hold, reinforce the structure with boards and beams strong enough to hold it. If the strength is not enough, it could cause injury due to unit falling.

Space for installation and service

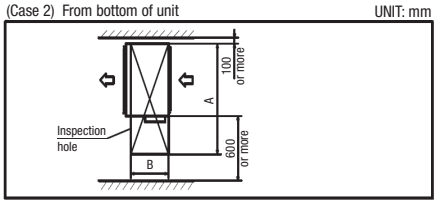
●Make installation altitude over 2.5m.
(Indoor Unit)
Select either of two cases to keep space for installation and services.

(Case 1) From side of unit UNIT: mm



Notes (a) There must not be obstacle to draw out fan motor. (marked area)
(b) Install refrigerant pipe, drain pipe, and wiring so as not to cross marked area.

(Case 2) From bottom of unit UNIT: mm



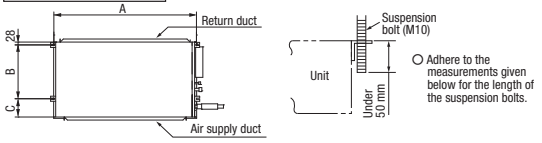
(Size of inspection hole) UNIT: mm

Single type	–	71	100-140
Multi type	45, 56	71, 90	112-160
A	1100	1300	1720
B	620		725

③Preparation before installation

●If suspension bolt becomes longer, do reinforcement of earthquake resistant.
○For grid ceiling
When the suspension bolt length is over 500mm, or the gap between the ceiling and roof is over 700mm, apply earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.
○In case the unit is hanged directly from the slab and is installed on the ceiling plane which has enough strength.
When suspension bolt length is over 1000mm, apply the earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.
●Prepare four (4) sets of suspension bolt, nut and spring washer (M10) on site.

Suspension Bolt Location

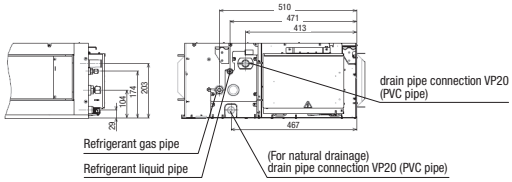


UNIT: mm

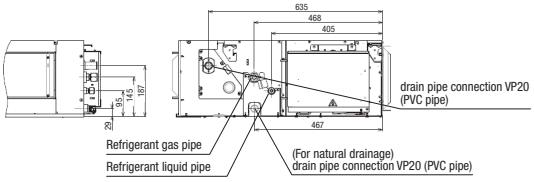
Single type	–	71	100-140
Multi type	45, 56	71, 90	112-160
A	786	986	1404
B	472	472	530
C	135	135	180

Pipe locations UNIT: mm

Single type	71
Multi type	45-90



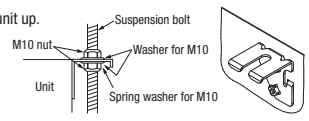
Single type	100-140
Multi type	112-160



④Installation of indoor unit

Installation

[Hanging]
Hang the unit up.

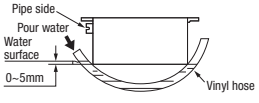


If the measurements between the unit and the ceiling hole do not match upon installation, it may be adjusted with the long holed installation tool.

Adjustment for horizontality

○Either use a level vial, or adjust the level according to the method below.

●Adjust so the bottom side of the unit will be leveled with the water surface as illustrated below.



Let the pipe side be slightly sloped.

○If the unit is not leveled, it may cause malfunctions or inoperation of the float switch.

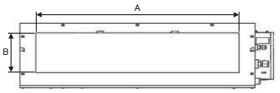
⑤Duct Work

①A corrugated board (for preventing sputtering) is attached to the main body of the air conditioner (on the outlet port). Do not remove it until connecting the duct.
- ●An air filter can be provided on the main body of the air conditioner (on the inlet port). Remove it when connecting the duct on the inlet port.

②Blowout duct
- ●Use rectangular duct to connect with unit.
- ●Duct size for each unit is as shown below.

UNIT: mm

Single type	—	71	100-140
Multi type	45, 56	71, 90	112-140
A	682	882	1202
B	172	172	172

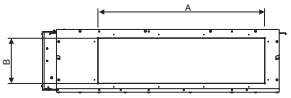


- ●Duct should be at their minimum length.
- ●We recommend to use sound and heat insulated duct to prevent it from condensation.
- ●Connect duct to unit before ceiling attachment.

③Inlet port
- ●When connecting the duct to the inlet port, remove the air filter if it is fitted to the inlet port.
- ●Inlet port size for each unit is as shown below.

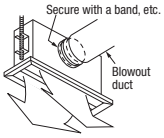
UNIT: mm

Single type	-	71	100-140
Multi Type	45, 56	71, 90	112-160
A	582	742	1282
B	202	202	237

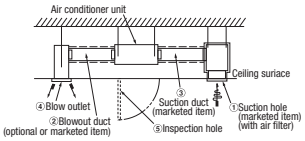


- ●Make sure to insulate the duct to prevent dewing on it.

④Install the specific blowout duct in a location where the air will circulate to the entire room.
- ●Conduct the installation of the specific blowout hole and the connection of the duct before attaching them to the ceiling.
- ●Insulate the area where the duct is secured by a band for dew condensation prevention.



⑤Make sure provide an inspection hole on the ceiling. It is indispensable to service electric equipment, motor, functional components and cleaning of heat exchanger.



Bad example of duct work

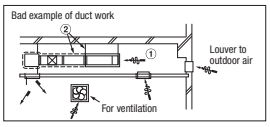
①If a duct is not provided at the suction side but it is substituted with the space over the ceiling, humidity in the space will increase by the influence of capacity of ventilation fan, strength of wind blowing against the out door air louver, weather (rainy day) and others.

a)Moisture in air is likely to condense over the external plates of the unit and to drip on the ceiling. Unit should be operated under the conditions as listed in the above table and within the limitation of wind volume. When the building is a concrete structure, especially immediately after the construction, humidity tends to rise even if the space over the ceiling is not substituted in place of a duct. In such occasion, it is necessary to insulate the entire unit with glass wool (25mm). (Use a wire net or equivalent to hold the glass wool in place.)

b)It may run out the allowable limit of unit operation (Example: When outdoor air temperature is 35°C DB, suction air temperature is 27°C WB) and it could result in such troubles as compressor overload, etc..

c)There is a possibility that the blow air volume may exceed the allowable range of operation due to the capacity of ventilation fan or strength of wind blowing against external air louver so that drainage from be heat exchanger may fall to reach the drain pan but leak outside (Example: drip on to the ceiling) with consequential water leakage in the room.

②If vibration damping is not conducted between the unit and the duct, and between the unit and the slab, vibration will be transmitted to the duct and vibration noise may occur. Also, vibration may be transmitted from the unit to the slab. Vibration damping must be performed.



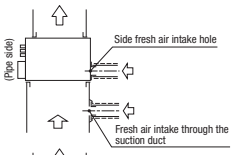
⑤Duct Work (continued)

Connecting the air intake/vent ducts

①Fresh Air Intake

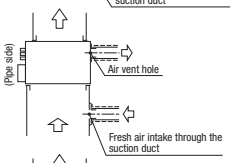
[for air intake duct only]

○Use the side fresh air intake hole, or supply through a part of the suction duct.



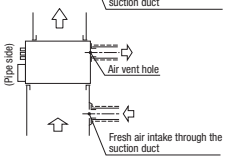
[for simultaneous air intake/vent]

○Intake air through the suction duct. (the side cannot be used)



②Air Vent

○Use the side air vent hole. (always use together with the air intake)



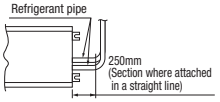
○Insulate the duct to protect it from dew condensation.

⑥Refrigerant pipe

Caution

- ●Use the new refrigerant pipe.
  When re-using the existing pipe system for R22 or R407C, pay attention to the following items.
  - ・Change the flare nuts with the attached ones (JIS category 2), and reprocess the flare parts.
  - ・Do not use thin-walled pipes.
- ●Use phosphorus deoxidized copper alloy seamless pipe (C1220T specified in JIS H3300) for refrigeration pipe installation. In addition, make sure there is no damage both inside and outside of the pipe, and no harmful substances such as sulfur, oxide, dust or a contaminant stuck on the pipes.
- ●Do not use any refrigerant other than R410A.
  Using other refrigerant except R410A (R22 etc.) may degrade inside refrigeration oil. And air getting into refrigeration circuit may cause over-pressure and resultant it may result in bursting, etc.
- ●Store the copper pipes indoors and seal the both end of them until they are brazed in order to avoid any dust, dirt or water getting into pipe. Otherwise it will cause degradation of refrigeration oil and compressor breakdown, etc.
- ●Use special tools for R410A refrigerant.

Piping work

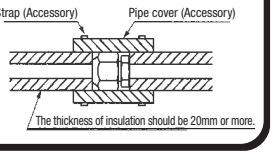


When conducting piping work, make sure to allow the pipes to be aligned in a straight line for at least 250 mm, as shown in the left illustration. (This is necessary for the drain pump to function)

Work procedure

1. Remove the flare nut and blind flanges on the pipe of the indoor unit.
   ※ Make sure to loosen the flare nut with holding the nut on pipe side with a spanner and giving torque to the nut with another spanner in order to avoid unexpected stress to the copper pipe, and then remove them. (Gas may come out at this time, but it is not abnormal.)
   ● Pay attention whether the flare nut pops out. (as the indoor unit is sometimes pressured.)
2. Make a flare on liquid pipe and gas pipe, and connect the refrigeration pipes on the indoor unit.
   ※Bend the pipe with as big radius as possible and do not bend the pipe repeatedly. In addition, do not twist and crush the pipes.
   ※Do a flare connection as follows:
   ● Make sure to loosen the flare nut with holding the nut on pipe side with a spanner and giving torque to the nut with another spanner in order to avoid unexpected stress to the copper pipe, and then remove them.
   ● When fastening the flare nut, align the refrigeration pipe with the center of flare nut, screw the nut for 3-4 times by hand and then tighten it by spanner with the specified torque mentioned in the table below. Make sure to hold the pipe on the indoor unit securely by a spanner when tightening the nut in order to avoid unexpected stress on the copper pipe.
3. Cover the flare connection part of the indoor unit with attached insulation material after a gas leakage inspection, and tighten both ends with attached straps.
   ●Make sure to insulate both gas pipes and liquid pipes completely.
   ※Incomplete insulation may cause dew condensation or water dropping.
4. Refrigerant is charged in the outdoor unit.
   As for the additional refrigerant charge for the indoor unit and piping, refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.

Pipe diameter	Tightening torque N·m
ϕ 6.35	14 to 18
ϕ 9.52	34 to 42
ϕ 12.7	49 to 61
ϕ 15.88	68 to 82



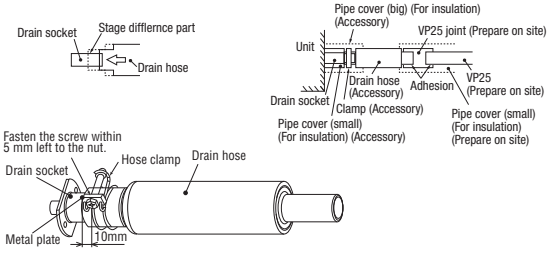
⑦Drain pipe

Caution

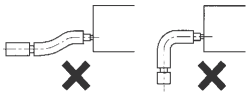
- Install the drain pipe according to the installation manual in order to drain properly. Imperfection in draining may cause flood indoors and wetting the household goods, etc.
- Do not put the drain pipe directly into the ditch where toxic gas such as sulfur, the other harmful and inflammable gas is generated. Toxic gas would flow into the room and it would cause serious damage to user's health and safety (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen). In addition, it may cause corrosion of heat exchanger and bad smell.
- Connect the pipe securely to avoid water leakage from the joint.
- Insulate the pipe properly to avoid condensation drop.
- Check if the water can flow out properly from both the drain outlet on the indoor unit and the end of the drain pipe after installation.
- Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway. In addition, do not put air vent on the drain pipe. Check if water is drained out properly from the pipe during commissioning. Also, keep sufficient space for inspection and maintenance.

Work procedure

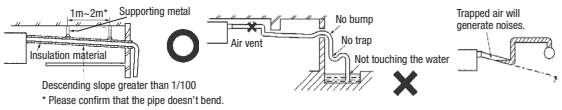
1. Make sure to insert the drain hose (the end mode of soft PVC) to the end of the step part of drain socket.
   Attach the hose clamp to the drain hose around 10mm from the end, and fasten the screw within 5mm left to the nut.
   - ●Do not apply adhesives on this end.
   - ●Do not use acetone-based adhesives to connect to the drain socket.



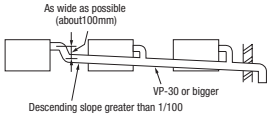
2. Prepare a joint for connecting VP-25 pipe, adhere and connect the joint to the drain hose (the end made of rigid PVC), and adhere and connect VP-25 pipe (prepare on site).
   ※As for drain pipe, apply VP-25 made of rigid PVC which is on the market.
   - ●Make sure that the adhesive will not get into the supplied drain hose. It may cause the flexible part broken after the adhesive is dried up and gets rigid.
   - ●The flexible drain hose is intended to absorb a small difference at installation of the unit or drain pipes. Intentional bending, expanding may cause the flexible hose broken and water leakage.



3. Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway.
   - ●Pay attention not to give stress on the pipe on the indoor unit side, and support and fix the pipe as close place to the unit as possible when connecting the drain pipe.
   - ●Do not set up air vent.



●When sharing a drain pipe for more than one unit, lay the main pipe 100mm below the drain outlet of the unit. In addition, select VP-30 or bigger size for main drain pipe.

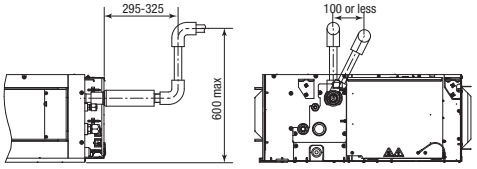


4. Insulate the drain pipe.
   - ●Be sure to insulate the drain socket and rigid PVC pipe installed indoors otherwise it may cause dew condensation and water leakage.
     ※After drainage test implementation, cover the drain socket part with pipe cover (small size), then use the pipe cover (big size) to cover the pipe cover (small size), clamps and part of the drain hose, and fix and wrap it with tapes to wrap and make joint part gapless.

⑦Drain pipe (continued)

Drain up

- The position for drain pipe outlet can be raised up to 600mm above the ceiling. Use elbows for installation to avoid obstacles inside ceiling. If the horizontal drain pipe is too long before vertical pipe, the backflow of water will increase when the unit is stopped, and it may cause overflow of water from the drain pan on the indoor unit. In order to avoid overflow, keep the horizontal pipe length and offset of the pipe within the limit shown in the figure below.



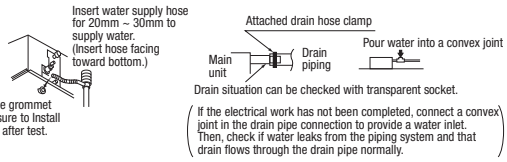
Otherwise, the construction point makes it same as drain pipe construction.

Drain test

1. Conduct a drain test after completion of the electrical work.
2. During the trail, make sure that drain flows properly through the piping and that no water leaks from connections.
3. In case of a new building, conduct the test before it is furnished with the ceiling.
4. Be sure to conduct this test even when the unit is installed in the heating season.

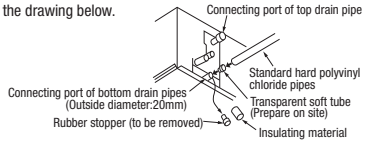
Procedures

1. Supply about 1000 cc of water to the unit through the air outlet by using a feed water pump.
2. Check the drain while cooling operation.



Outline of bottom drain piping work

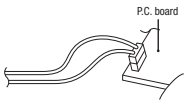
- If the bottom drain piping can be done with a descending gradient (1/50-1/100), it is possible to connect the pipes as shown in the drawing below.



Uncoupling the drain motor connector

- Uncouple the connector CNR for the drain motor as illustrated in the drawing on the right.

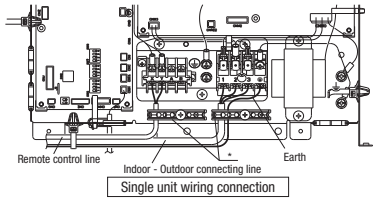
(Note: If the unit is run with the connector coupled, drain water will be discharged from the upper drain pipe joint, causing a water leak.)



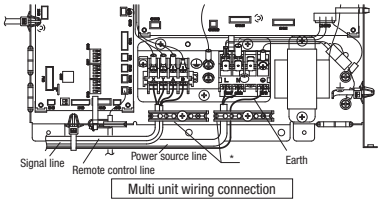
⑧Wiring-out position and wiring connection

- Electrical installation work must be performed according to the installation manual by an electrical installation service provider qualified by a power provider of the country, and be executed according to the technical standards and other regulations applicable to electrical installation in the country.
  Be sure to use an exclusive circuit.
- Use specified cord, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cord securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.
- Do not put both power source line and signal line on the same route. It may cause miscommunication and malfunction.
- For the details of electrical wiring work, see attached instruction manual for electrical wiring work.

1. Remove a lid of the control box (2 screws).
2. Hold each wiring inside the unit and fasten them to terminal block securely.
3. Fix the wiring with clamps.
4. Install the removed parts back to original place.



Single unit wiring connection



Multi unit wiring connection

* Please fix the wiring in the band not to move even if it pulls.

⑨External static pressure setting

You can set External Static Pressure (E.S.P) by method of MANUAL SETTING on remote control. Indoor unit will control fan-speed to keep rated air flow volume at each fan speed setting (Lo-Uhi)
You can set required E.S.P by wired remote control that calculated with the set air flow rate and pressure loss of the duct connected.

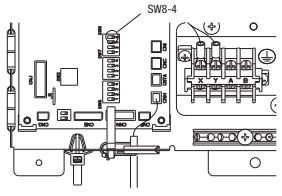
- How to set E.S.P by wired remote control
  ① Push "◆" marked button(E.S.P. button).
  ② Select indoor unit No. by using ◆◆ button.
  ③ Select setting No. by using ◆◆ button and set E.S.P. by ( ) button.
  See detailed procedure in technical manual.

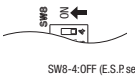
Notice
You can NOT set E.S.P by wireless remote control.

With E.S.P. setting, confirm that actual E.S.P. agrees with E.S.P. setting.
When E.S.P setting is higher than actual E.S.P, the airflow rate becomes excessively higher. This will cause water leakage if water splashes.
When E.S.P setting is lower than actual E.S.P, the airflow rate becomes excessively lower and the cooling or heating may become ineffective.
In order to reduce the risk above the factory E.S.P. setting is set within the range of 80 – 150 Pa (E.S.P. setting No. 8 – 15). Be sure to use within the range of 80 – 150 Pa in actual operations. If actual E.S.P. is lower than 80 Pa, it may cause water leakage.

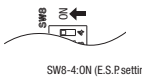
Setting No.	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
E.S.P (Pa)	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150

※ If 1 – 7 is selected for the setting No. on the remote control, the setting No. shows No. 8.
If 16 – 20 is selected for the setting No. on the remote control, the setting No. shows No. 15.
Factory default is No. 8.





SW8-4:OFF (E.S.P setting No. 8-15)



SW8-4:ON (E.S.P setting No. 1-19)

If SW8-4 is turned to "ON", E.S.P setting range can be changed to 10 – 200 Pa (E.S.P setting No. 1 – 19). This should not be used when actual E.S.P. cannot be confirmed, because the risk above becomes higher.

Setting No.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19
E.S.P (Pa)	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150	160	170	180	200

※ If 20 is selected for the setting No. on the remote control, the setting No. shows No. 19.

⑩Check list after installation

●Check the following items after all installation work completed.

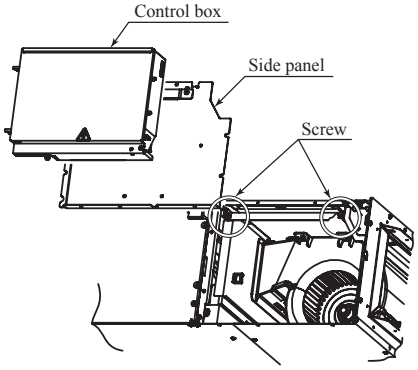
Check if	Expected trouble	Check
The indoor and outdoor units are fixed securely?	Falling, vibration, noise	
Inspection for leakage is done?	Insufficient capacity	
Insulation work is properly done?	Water leakage	
Water is drained properly?	Water leakage	
Supply voltage is same as mentioned in the model name plate?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
No mis-wiring or mis-connection of piping?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Earth wiring is connected properly?	Electric shock	
Cable size comply with specified size?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Any obstacle blocks airflow on air inlet and outlet?	Insufficient capacity	
Is setting of E.S.P finished?	Excessive air flow, water drop blow out	

(b) Replacement procedure of the fan unit

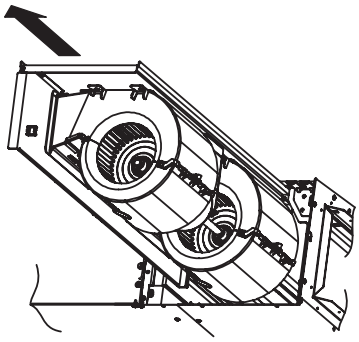
Notes(1) The unit is a heavy item. It must be supported securely and handled with care not to drop when it is necessary to replace.
(2) For the maintenance space, refer to page 150.

(i) Model FDU71VF1

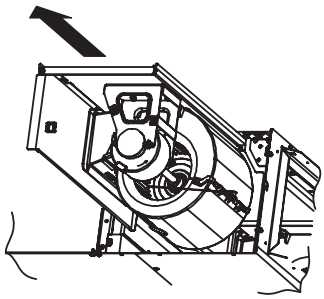
1) Remove the control box and the side panel, and remove the screws marked in the circles (2 places) in the figure.



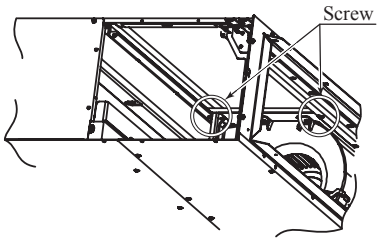
2) Take out the fan unit in the arrow direction.



2) Take out the fan unit located at the near side in the arrow direction.

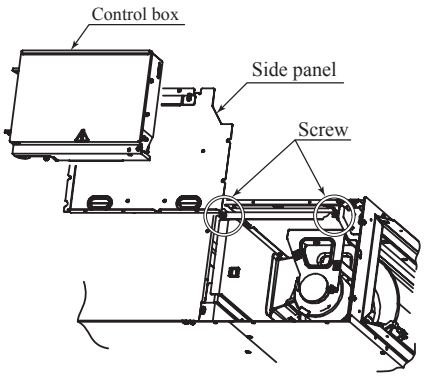


3) Remove the screws marked in the circles (2 places) from the fan unit located at the far side.

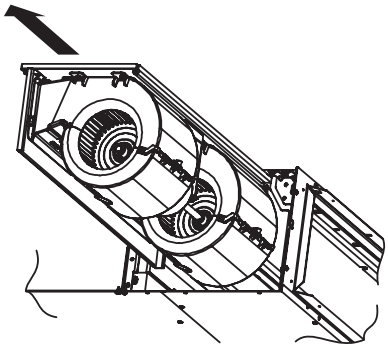


(ii) Model FDU100VF1

1) Remove the control box and the side panel, and remove the screws marked in the circles (2 places) from the unit located at the near side.



4) Take out the fan unit in the arrow direction.



(4) Duct connected-Low / Middle static pressure type (FDUM)

(a) Indoor unit

PJG012D008B

This manual is for the installation of an indoor unit.
For electrical wiring work (Indoor), refer to page 170. For remote control installation, refer to page 182. For electrical wiring work (Outdoor) and refrigerant pipe work installation for outdoor unit, refer to page 196.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.
- The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION .
  ⚠WARNING : Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠CAUTION : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
- The meanings of "Marks" used here are as shown on the right:
  ⃠ Never do it under any circumstances. ❗ Always do it according to the instruction.
- After completing the installation, do commissioning to confirm there are no abnormalities, and explain to the customers about "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS", correct operation method and maintenance method (air filter cleaning, operation method and temperature setting method) with user's manual of this unit.
  Ask your customers to keep this installation manual together with the user's manual. Also, ask them to hand over the user's manual to the new user when the owner is changed.

⚠WARNING

- **Installation should be performed by the specialist.**
  If you install the unit by yourself, it may lead to serious trouble such as water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Install the system correctly according to these installation manuals.**
  Improper installation may cause explosion, injury, water leakage, electric shock, and fire.
- **Check the density refered by the foumula (accordance with ISO5149).**
  If the density exceeds the limit density, please consult the dealer and installate the ventilation system.
- **Use the genuine accessories and the specified parts for installation.**
  If parts unspecified by our company are used it could cause water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Ventilate the working area well in case the refrigerant leaks during installation.**
  If the refrigerant contacts the fire, toxic gas is produced.
- **Install the unit in a location that can hold heavy weight.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Install the unit properly in order to be able to withstand strong winds such as typhoons, and earthquakes.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Do not mix air in to the cooling cycle on installation or removal of the air conditioner.**
  If air is mixed in, the pressure in the cooling cycle will rise abnormally and may cause explosion and injuries.
- **Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient capacity and improper work can cause electric shock and fire.
- **Use specified wire for electrical wiring, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.**
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire.
- **Arrange the electrical wires in the control box properly to prevent them from rising. Fit the lid of the services panel property.**
  Improper fitting may cause abnormal heat and fire.
- **Check for refrigerant gas leakage after installation is completed.**
  If the refrigerant gas leaks into the house and comes in contact with a fan heater, a stove, or an oven, toxic gas is produced.
- **Use the specified pipe, flare nut, and tools for R410A.**
  Using existing parts (R22) could cause the unit failure and serious accident due to explosion of the cooling cycle.
- **Tighten the flare nut according to the specified method by with torque wrench.**
  If the flare nut were tightened with excess torque, it could cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period.
- **Do not put the drainage pipe directly into drainage channels where poisonous gases such as sulfide gas can occur.**
  Poisonous gases will flow into the room through drainage pipe and seriously affect the user's health and safety. This can also cause the corrosion of the indoor unit and a resultant unit failure or refrigerant leak.
- **Connect the pipes for refrigeration circuit securely in installation work before compressor is operated.**
  If the compressor is operated when the service valve is open without connecting the pipe, it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the system.
- **Stop the compressor before removing the pipe after shutting the service valve on pump down work.**
  If the pipe is removed when the compressor is in operation with the service valve open, air would be mixed in the refrigeration circuit and it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the cooling cycle.
- **Only use prescribed optional parts. The installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.**
  If you install the system by yourself, it can cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire.
- **Do not repair by yourself. And consult with the dealer about repair.**
  Improper repair may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Consult the dealer or a specialist about removal of the air conditioner.**
  Improper installation may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Turn off the power source during servicing or inspection work.**
  If the power is supplied during servicing or inspection work, it could cause electric shock and injury by the operating fan.
- **Do not run the unit when the panel or protection guard are taken off.**
  Touching the rotating equipment, hot surface, or high voltage section could cause an injury to be caught in the machine, to get burned, or electric shock.
- **Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.**
  It could cause electric shock, unit failure and improper running.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Perform earth wiring surely.**
  Do not connect the earth wiring to the gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod and telephone earth wiring. Improper earth could cause unit failure and electric shock or fire due to a short circuit.
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed.**
  If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it could cause electric shocks or fire.
- **Use the circuit breaker of correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect one could cause the system failure and fire.
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse of correct capacity where a fuse should be used.**
  Connecting the circuit by wire or copper wire could cause unit failure and fire.
- **Do not install the indoor unit near the location where there is possibility of flammable gas leakages.**
  If the gas leaks and gathers around the unit, it could cause fire.
- **Do not install and use the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfurous acid gas etc.) or flammable gas (such as thinner, petroleum etc.) may be generated or accumulated, or volatile flammable substances are handled.**
  It could cause the corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts etc. And inflammable gas could cause fire.
- **Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual.**
  Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place.
- **Do not use the indoor unit at the place where water splashes such as laundry.**
  Indoor unit is not waterproof. It could cause electric shock and fire.
- **Do not use the indoor unit for a special purpose such as food storage, cooling for precision instrument, preservation of animals, plants, and a work of art.**
  It could cause the damage of the items.
- **Do not install nor use the system near equipments which generate electromagnetic wave or high harmonics.**
  Equipments like inverter equipment, private power generator, high-frequency medical equipment, or telecommunication equipment might influence the air conditioner and cause a malfunction and breakdown. Or the air conditioner might influence medical equipments or telecommunication equipments, and obstruct their medical activity or cause jamming.
- **Do not install the remote control at the direct sunlight.**
  It could cause breakdown or deformation of the remote control.
- **Do not install the indoor unit at the place listed below.**
  · Places where flammable gas could leak.
  · Places where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floated.
  · Place where the substances which affect the air conditioner are generated such as sulfide gas, chloride gas, acid, alkali or ammonic atmospheres.
  · Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly.
  · On vehicles and ships
  · Places where machinery which generates high harmonics is used.
  · Places where cosmetics or special sprays are frequently used.
  · Highly salted area such as beach.
  · Heavy snow area
  · Places where the system is affected by smoke from a chimney.
  · Altitude over 1000m
- **Do not install the indoor unit in the locations listed below (Be sure to install the indoor unit according to the installation manual for each model because each indoor unit has each limitation)**
  · Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit
  · Locations where vibration can be amplified due to insufficient strength of structure.
  · Locations where the infrared receiver is exposed to the direct sunlight or the strong light beam. (in case of the infrared specification unit)
  · Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed. (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 5m)
  · Locations where drainage cannot run off safely.
  It can affect performance or function and etc..
- **Do not put any valuables which will break down by getting wet under the air conditioner.**
  Condensation could drop when the relative humidity is higher than 80% or drain pipe is clogged, and it damages user's belongings.
- **Do not use the base frame for the outdoor unit which is corroded or damaged after a long period of use.**
  It could cause the unit falling down and injury.
- **Pay attention not to damage the drain pan by weld sputter when brazing work is done near the unit.**
  If sputter entered into the unit during brazing work, it could cause damage (pinhole) of drain pan and leakage of water. To avoid damaging, keep the indoor unit packed or cover the indoor unit.
- **Install the drain pipe to drain the water surely according to the installation manual.**
  Improper connection of the drain pipe may cause dropping water into room and damaging user's belongings.
- **Do not share the drain pipe for indoor unit and GHP (Gas Heat Pump system) outdoor unit.**
  Toxic exhaust gas would flow into room and it might cause serious damage (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen) to user's health and safety.
- **Be sure to perform air tightness test by pressurizing with nitrogen gas after completed refrigerant piping work.**
  If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of refrigerant leakage in the small room, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.
- **For drain pipe installation, be sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100, not to make traps, and not to make air-bleeding.**
  Check if the drainage is correctly done during commissioning and ensure the space for inspection and maintenance.
- **Ensure the insulation on the pipes for refrigeration circuit so as not to condense water.**
  Incomplete insulation could cause condensation and it would wet ceiling, floor, and any other valuables.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit where is likely to be a nest for insects and small animals.**
  Insects and small animals could come into the electronic components and cause breakdown and fire. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **Pay extra attention, carrying the unit by hand.**
  Carry the unit with 2 people if it is heavier than 20kg. Do not use the plastic straps but the grabbing place, moving the unit by hand. Use protective gloves in order to avoid injury by the aluminum fin.
- **Make sure to dispose of the packaging material.**
  Leaving the materials may cause injury as metals like nail and woods are used in the package.
- **Do not operate the system without the air filter.**
  It may cause the breakdown of the system due to clogging of the heat exchanger.
- **Do not touch any button with wet hands.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not touch the refrigerant piping with bare hands when in operation.**
  The pipe during operation would become very hot or cold according to the operating condition, and it could cause a burn or frostbite.
- **Do not clean up the air conditioner with water.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not turn off the power source immediately after stopping the operation.**
  Be sure to wait for more than 5 minutes. Otherwise it could cause water leakage or breakdown.
- **Do not control the operation with the circuit breaker.**
  It could cause fire or water leakage. In addition, the fan may start operation unexpectedly and it may cause injury.

○This model is middle static ducted type air conditioning unit. Therefore, do not use this model for direct blow type air conditioning unit.

①Before installation

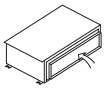
●Install correctly according to the installation manual.

●Confirm the following points:

○Unit type/Power supply specification ○Pipes/Wires/Small parts ○Accessory items

Accessory item

For hanging	For refrigerant pipe			For drain pipe			
Flat washer (M10)	Pipe cover (big)	Pipe cover (small)	Strap	Pipe cover (big)	Pipe cover (small)	Drain hose	Hose clamp
							
8	1	1	4	1	1	1	1
For unit hanging	For heat insulation of gas pipe	For heat insulation of liquid tube	For pipe cover fixing	For heat insulation of drain socket	For heat insulation of drain socket	For drain pipe connecting	For drain hose mounting



Accessory parts are stored inside this suction side.

②Selection of installation location for the indoor unit

① Select the suitable areas to install the unit under approval of the user.

- Areas where the indoor unit can deliver hot and cold wind sufficiently. Suggest to the user to use a circulator if the ceiling height is over 3m to avoid warm air being accumulated on the ceiling.
- Areas where there is enough space to install and service.
- Areas where it can be drained properly. Areas where drain pipe descending slope can be taken.
- Areas where there is no obstruction of airflow on both air return grille and air supply port.
- Areas where fire alarm will not be accidentally activated by the air conditioner.
- Areas where the supply air does not short-circuit.
- Areas where it is not influenced by draft air.
- Areas not exposed to direct sunlight.
- Areas where dew point is lower than around 28°C and relative humidity is lower than 80%.

(This indoor unit is tested under the condition of JIS (Japan Industrial Standard) high humidity condition and confirmed there is no problem. However, there is some risk of condensation drop if the air conditioner is operated under the severer condition than mentioned above. If there is a possibility to use it under such a condition, attach additional insulation of 10 to 20mm thick for entire surface of indoor unit, refrigeration pipe and drain pipe.)

- Areas where TV and radio stays away more than 1m. (It could cause jamming and noise.)
- Areas where any items which will be damaged by getting wet are not placed such as food, table wares, server, or medical equipment under the unit.
- Areas where there is no influence by the heat which cookware generates.
- Areas where not exposed to oil mist, powder and/or steam directly such as above fryer.
- Areas where lighting device such as fluorescent light or incandescent light doesn't affect the operation.
  (A beam from lighting device sometimes affects the infrared receiver for the wireless remote control and the air conditioner might not work properly.)

② Check if the place where the air conditioner is installed can hold the weight of the unit. If it is not able to hold, reinforce the structure with boards and beams strong enough to hold it. If the strength is not enough, it could cause injury due to unit falling.

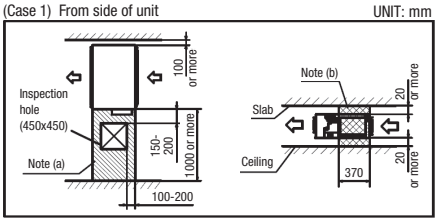
Space for installation and service

●Make installation altitude over 2.5m.

(Indoor Unit)

Select either of two cases to keep space for installation and services.

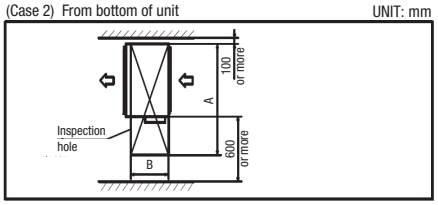
(Case 1) From side of unit UNIT: mm



Notes (a) There must not be obstacle to draw out fan motor. (marked area)

(b) Install refrigerant pipe, drain pipe, and wiring so as not to cross marked area.

(Case 2) From bottom of unit UNIT: mm



(Size of inspection hole) UNIT: mm

Single type	40-50	60-71	100-140
Multi type	22-56	71-90	112-160
A	1100	1300	1720
B	620		725

③Preparation before installation

●If suspension bolt becomes longer, do reinforcement of earthquake resistant.

○For grid ceiling

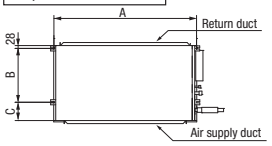
When the suspension bolt length is over 500mm, or the gap between the ceiling and roof is over 700mm, apply earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.

○In case the unit is hanged directly from the slab and is installed on the ceiling plane which has enough strength.

When suspension bolt length is over 1000mm, apply the earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.

●Prepare four (4) sets of suspension bolt, nut and spring washer (M10) on site.

Suspension Bolt Location

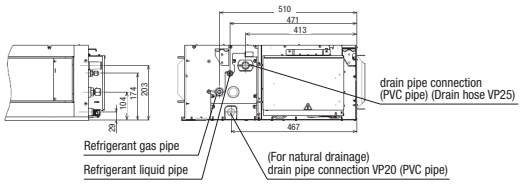


UNIT: mm

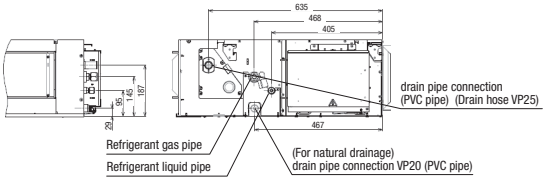
Multi type	22-56	71, 90	112-160
Single type	40-50	60, 71	100-140
A	786	986	1404
B	472	472	530
C	135	135	180

Pipe locations UNIT: mm

Multi type	22-90
Single type	40-71



Multi type	112-160
Single type	100-140

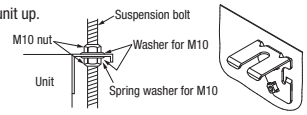


④Installation of indoor unit

Installation

[Hanging]

Hang the unit up.

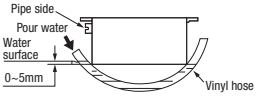


If the measurements between the unit and the ceiling hole do not match upon installation, it may be adjusted with the long holed installation tool.

Adjustment for horizontality

○Either use a level vial, or adjust the level according to the method below.

●Adjust so the bottom side of the unit will be leveled with the water surface as illustrated below.



Let the pipe side be slightly sloped.

○If the unit is not leveled, it may cause malfunctions or inoperation of the float switch.

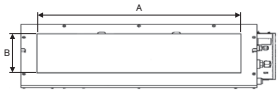
⑤Duct Work

①A corrugated board (for preventing sputtering) is attached to the main body of the air conditioner (on the outlet port). Do not remove it until connecting the duct.
- ●An air filter can be provided on the main body of the air conditioner (on the inlet port). Remove it when connecting the duct on the inlet port.

②Blowout duct
- ●Use rectangular duct to connect with unit.
  Duct size for each unit is as shown below.

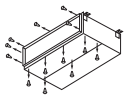
UNIT: mm

Single type	40-50	60-71	100-140
Multi type	22-56	71-90	112-140
A	682	882	1202
B	172	172	172

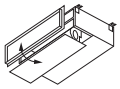


- ●Duct should be at their minimum length.
- ●We recommend to use sound and heat insulated duct to prevent it from condensation.
- ●Connect duct to unit before ceiling attachment.

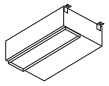
③Inlet port
- ●When shipped the inlet port lies on the back.
- ●When connecting the duct to the inlet port, remove the air filter if it is fitted to the inlet port.
- ●When placing the inlet port to carry out suction from the bottom side, use the following procedure to replace the suction duct joint and the bottom plate.



●Remove the screws which fasten the bottom plate and the duct joint on the inlet port side of the unit.



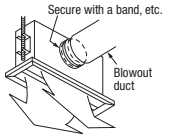
●Replace the removed bottom plate and duct joint.



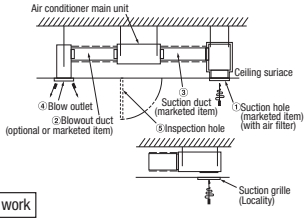
●Fit the duct join with a screw; fit the bottom plate.

- ●Make sure to insulate the duct to prevent dewing on it.

④Install the specific blowout duct in a location where the air will circulate to the entire room.
- ●Conduct the installation of the specific blowout hole and the connection of the duct before attaching them to the ceiling.
- ●Insulate the area where the duct is secured by a band for dew condensation prevention.



⑤Make sure provide an inspection hole on the ceiling. It is indispensable to service electric equipment, motor, functional components and cleaning of heat exchanger.



Bad example of duct work

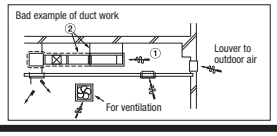
①If a duct is not provided at the suction side but it is substituted with the space over the ceiling, humidity in the space will increase by the influence of capacity of ventilation fan, strength of wind blowing against the out door air louver, weather (rainy day) and others.

a)Moisture in air is likely to condense over the external plates of the unit and to drip on the ceiling. Unit should be operated under the conditions as listed in the above table and within the limitation of wind volume. When the building is a concrete structure, especially immediately after the construction, humidity tends to rise even if the space over the ceiling is not substituted in place of a duct. In such occasion, it is necessary to insulate the entire unit with glass wool (25mm). (Use a wire net or equivalent to hold the glass wool in place.)

b)It may run out the allowable limit of unit operation (Example: When outdoor air temperature is 35°C DB, suction air temperature is 27°C WB) and it could result in such troubles as compressor overload, etc..

c)There is a possibility that the blow air volume may exceed the allowable range of operation due to the capacity of ventilation fan or strength of wind blowing against external air louver so that drainage from be heat exchanger may fall to reach the drain pan but leak outside (Example: drip on to the ceiling) with consequential water leakage in the room.

②If vibration damping is not conducted between the unit and the duct, and between the unit and the slab, vibration will be transmitted to the duct and vibration noise may occur. Also, vibration may be transmitted from the unit to the slab. Vibration damping must be performed.



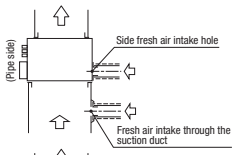
⑤Duct Work (continued)

Connecting the air intake/vent ducts

①Fresh Air Intake

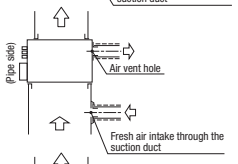
[for air intake duct only]

○Use the side fresh air intake hole, or supply through a part of the suction duct.



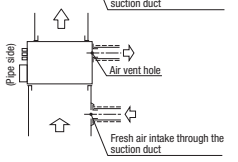
[for simultaneous air intake/vent]

○Intake air through the suction duct.
(the side cannot be used)



②Air Vent

○Use the side air vent hole.
(always use together with the air intake)



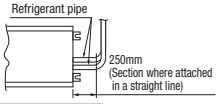
○Insulate the duct to protect it from dew condensation.

⑥Refrigerant pipe

Caution

- ●Use the new refrigerant pipe.
  When re-using the existing pipe system for R22 or R407C, pay attention to the following items.
  - ・Change the flare nuts with the attached ones (JIS category 2), and reprocess the flare parts.
  - ・Do not use thin-walled pipes.
- ●Use phosphorus deoxidized copper alloy seamless pipe (C1220T specified in JIS H3300) for refrigeration pipe installation.
  In addition, make sure there is no damage both inside and outside of the pipe, and no harmful substances such as sulfur, oxide, dust or a contaminant stuck on the pipes.
- ●Do not use any refrigerant other than R410A.
  Using other refrigerant except R410A (R22 etc.) may degrade inside refrigeration oil. And air getting into refrigeration circuit may cause over-pressure and resultant it may result in bursting, etc.
- ●Store the copper pipes indoors and seal the both end of them until they are brazed in order to avoid any dust, dirt or water getting into pipe. Otherwise it will cause degradation of refrigeration oil and compressor breakdown, etc.
- ●Use special tools for R410A refrigerant.

Piping work

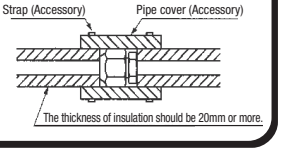


When conducting piping work, make sure to allow the pipes to be aligned in a straight line for at least 250 mm, as shown in the left illustration. (This is necessary for the drain pump to function)

Work procedure

1. Remove the flare nut and blind flanges on the pipe of the indoor unit.
   ※ Make sure to loosen the flare nut with holding the nut on pipe side with a spanner and giving torque to the nut with another spanner in order to avoid unexpected stress to the copper pipe, and then remove them. (Gas may come out at this time, but it is not abnormal.)
   - ● Pay attention whether the flare nut pops out. (as the indoor unit is sometimes pressured.)
2. Make a flare on liquid pipe and gas pipe, and connect the refrigeration pipes on the indoor unit.
   ※Bend the pipe with as big radius as possible and do not bend the pipe repeatedly. In addition, do not twist and crush the pipes.
   ※Do a flare connection as follows:
   - ● Make sure to loosen the flare nut with holding the nut on pipe side with a spanner and giving torque to the nut with another spanner in order to avoid unexpected stress to the copper pipe, and then remove them.
   - ● When fastening the flare nut, align the refrigeration pipe with the center of flare nut, screw the nut for 3-4 times by hand and then tighten it by spanner with the specified torque mentioned in the table below. Make sure to hold the pipe on the indoor unit securely by a spanner when tightening the nut in order to avoid unexpected stress on the copper pipe.
3. Cover the flare connection part of the indoor unit with attached insulation material after a gas leakage inspection, and tighten both ends with attached straps.
   - ●Make sure to insulate both gas pipes and liquid pipes completely.
     ※Incomplete insulation may cause dew condensation or water dropping.
4. Refrigerant is charged in the outdoor unit.
   As for the additional refrigerant charge for the indoor unit and piping, refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.

Pipe diameter	Tightening torque N·m
ϕ 6.35	14 to 18
ϕ 9.52	34 to 42
ϕ 12.7	49 to 61
ϕ 15.88	68 to 82



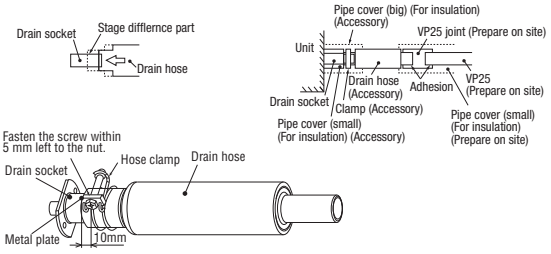
⑦Drain pipe

Caution

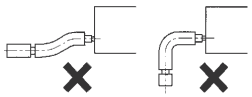
- Install the drain pipe according to the installation manual in order to drain properly. Imperfection in draining may cause flood indoors and wetting the household goods, etc.
- Do not put the drain pipe directly into the ditch where toxic gas such as sulfur, the other harmful and inflammable gas is generated. Toxic gas would flow into the room and it would cause serious damage to user's health and safety (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen). In addition, it may cause corrosion of heat exchanger and bad smell.
- Connect the pipe securely to avoid water leakage from the joint.
- Insulate the pipe properly to avoid condensation drop.
- Check if the water can flow out properly from both the drain outlet on the indoor unit and the end of the drain pipe after installation.
- Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway. In addition, do not put air vent on the drain pipe. Check if water is drained out properly from the pipe during commissioning. Also, keep sufficient space for inspection and maintenance.

Work procedure

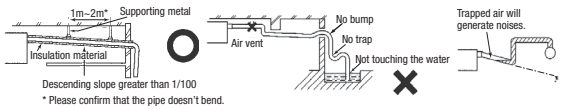
1. Make sure to insert the drain hose (the end mode of soft PVC) to the end of the step part of drain socket.
   Attach the hose clamp to the drain hose around 10mm from the end, and fasten the screw within 5mm left to the nut.
   - ●Do not apply adhesives on this end.
   - ●Do not use acetone-based adhesives to connect to the drain socket.



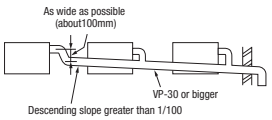
2. Prepare a joint for connecting VP-25 pipe, adhere and connect the joint to the drain hose (the end made of rigid PVC), and adhere and connect VP-25 pipe (prepare on site).
   ※As for drain pipe, apply VP-25 made of rigid PVC which is on the market.
   - ●Make sure that the adhesive will not get into the supplied drain hose. It may cause the flexible part broken after the adhesive is dried up and gets rigid.
   - ●The flexible drain hose is intended to absorb a small difference at installation of the unit or drain pipes. Intentional bending, expanding may cause the flexible hose broken and water leakage.



3. Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway.
   - ●Pay attention not to give stress on the pipe on the indoor unit side, and support and fix the pipe as close place to the unit as possible when connecting the drain pipe.
   - ●Do not set up air vent.



●When sharing a drain pipe for more than one unit, lay the main pipe 100mm below the drain outlet of the unit. In addition, select VP-30 or bigger size for main drain pipe.

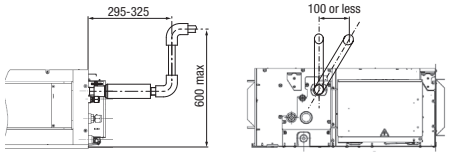


4. Insulate the drain pipe.
   - ●Be sure to insulate the drain socket and rigid PVC pipe installed indoors otherwise it may cause dew condensation and water leakage.
     ※After drainage test implementation, cover the drain socket part with pipe cover (small size), then use the pipe cover (big size) to cover the pipe cover (small size), clamps and part of the drain hose, and fix and wrap it with tapes to wrap and make joint part gapless.

⑦Drain pipe (continued)

Drain up

- The position for drain pipe outlet can be raised up to 600mm above the ceiling. Use elbows for installation to avoid obstacles inside ceiling. If the horizontal drain pipe is too long before vertical pipe, the backflow of water will increase when the unit is stopped, and it may cause overflow of water from the drain pan on the indoor unit. In order to avoid overflow, keep the horizontal pipe length and offset of the pipe within the limit shown in the figure below.



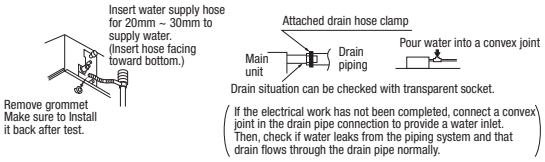
Otherwise, the construction point makes it same as drain pipe construction.

Drain test

1. Conduct a drain test after completion of the electrical work.
2. During the trail, make sure that drain flows properly through the piping and that no water leaks from connections.
3. In case of a new building, conduct the test before it is furnished with the ceiling.
4. Be sure to conduct this test even when the unit is installed in the heating season.

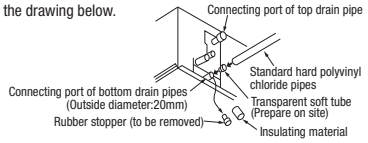
Procedures

1. Supply about 1000 cc of water to the unit through the air outlet by using a feed water pump.
2. Check the drain while cooling operation.



Outline of bottom drain piping work

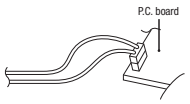
- If the bottom drain piping can be done with a descending gradient (1/50-1/100), it is possible to connect the pipes as shown in the drawing below.



Uncoupling the drain motor connector

- Uncouple the connector CNR for the drain motor as illustrated in the drawing on the right.

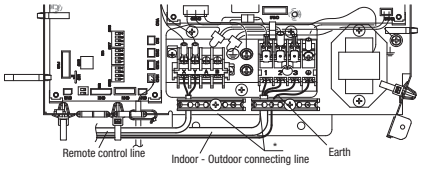
(Note: If the unit is run with the connector coupled, drain water will be discharged from the upper drain pipe joint, causing a water leak.)



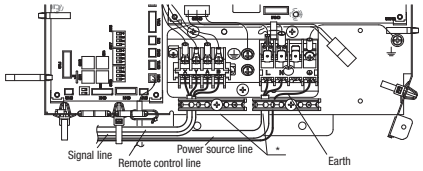
⑧Wiring-out position and wiring connection

- Electrical installation work must be performed according to the installation manual by an electrical installation service provider qualified by a power provider of the country, and be executed according to the technical standards and other regulations applicable to electrical installation in the country.
  Be sure to use an exclusive circuit.
- Use specified cord, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cord securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.
- Do not put both power source line and signal line on the same route. It may cause miscommunication and malfunction.
- For the details of electrical wiring work, see attached instruction manual for electrical wiring work.

1. Remove a lid of the control box (2 screws).
2. Hold each wiring inside the unit and fasten them to terminal block securely.
3. Fix the wiring with clamps.
4. Install the removed parts back to original place.



Single unit wiring connection



Multi unit wiring connection

* Please fix the wiring in the band not to move even if it pulls.

⑨External static pressure setting

You can set External Static Pressure (E.S.P.) by either method of MANUAL SETTING or AUTOMATIC SETTING by remote control.
Indoor unit will control fan-speed to keep rated air flow volume at each fan speed setting (Lo-Uhi)

1. MANUAL SETTING
   You can set required E.S.P. by wired remote control that calculated with the set air flow rate and pressure loss of the duct connected.
   Select No.1-10 (10Pa-100Pa) from following table according to calculation result.
   Refer to technical manual for details of air flow characteristic.

Setting No.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
External Static Pressure (Pa)	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100

※ When you set No.11-19 by remote control, unit will control fan-speed with setting of No.10 Factory default is at No.5.

- How to set E.S.P by wired remote control
  ① Push "◆" marked button(E.S.P button).
  ② Select indoor unit No. by using ⬍ button.
  ③ Select setting No. by using ⬍ button and set E.S.P. by ⊙ button.
  See detailed procedure in technical manual.

Notice
You can NOT set E.S.P. by wireless remote control.

Caution
Be sure to set E.S.P. according to actual duct connected.
Wrong settings causes excessive air flow volume or water drop blown out.

2. AUTOMATIC SETTING
   Indoor unit will recognize E.S.P. by itself automatically and select appropriate fan speed No.1-10.

- How to start automatic setting
  ①, ②Same setting as MANUAL SETTING.
  ③ Select [AUT] by using ⬍ button and press ⊙ button .
  ② After setting E.S.P. at "AUT", operate unit in FAN mode with certain fan speed (Lo-Uhi).

⑨External static pressure setting (continued)

Indoor unit fan will run automatically and recognize E.S.P. by itself.
The operation for automatic E.S.P. recognition will last about 6 minutes, and it will be stopped after recognition is completed.

Caution
- Be sure to execute AUTOMATIC SETTING by remote control AFTER ducting work is completed. When duct specification is changed after AUTOMATIC SETTING, be sure to execute AUTOMATIC SETTING again after power resetting and turning on again.
- Be sure to execute AUTOMATIC SETTING before trial cooling operation. (See ELECTRICAL WIRING WORK INSTRUCTION about trial cooling operation)
- Before AUTOMATIC SETTING, be sure to check that return air filter in duct is installed and damper is opened.
  Wrong procedure causes excessive air flow or water drop blown out.

Notice
- During operation for automatic recognition (the Auto Operation), fan rotates with certain speeds regardless of set fan speed by remote control.
- When duct is set with low static pressure (around 10-50Pa), even if indoor unit operate with higher air flow volume than rated one, but it is not abnormal.
- When you changed operation mode or stop operation with ON/OFF button during Auto Operation, the Auto operation will be canceled.
- In such case, be sure to execute AUTOMATIC SETTING again according to above procedure.

⑩Check list after installation

●Check the following items after all installation work completed.

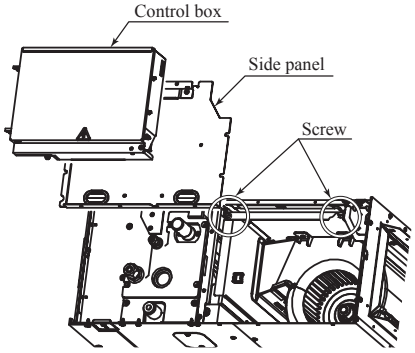
Check if	Expected trouble	Check
The indoor and outdoor units are fixed securely?	Falling, vibration, noise	
Inspection for leakage is done?	Insufficient capacity	
Insulation work is properly done?	Water leakage	
Water is drained properly?	Water leakage	
Supply voltage is same as mentioned in the model name plate?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
No mis-wiring or mis-connection of piping?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Earth wiring is connected properly?	Electric shock	
Cable size comply with specified size?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Any obstacle blocks airflow on air inlet and outlet?	Insufficient capacity	
Is setting of E.S.P finished?	Excessive air flow, water drop blow out	

(b) Replacement procedure of the fan unit

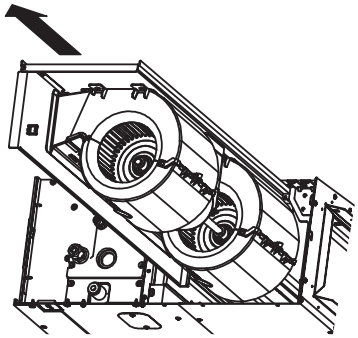
Notes(1) The unit is a heavy item. It must be supported securely and handled with care not to drop when it is necessary to replace.
(2) For the maintenance space, refer to page 156.

(i) Model FDUM71VF1

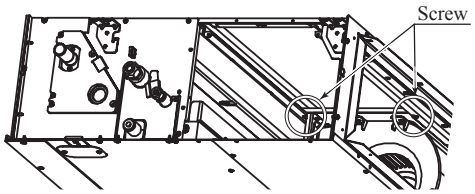
1) Remove the control box and the side panel, and remove the screws marked in the circles (2 places) in the figure.



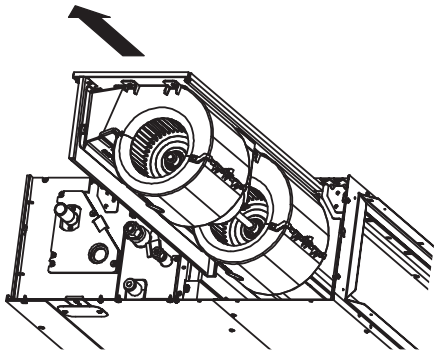
2) Take out the fan unit in the arrow direction.



3) Remove the screws marked in the circles (2 places) from the fan unit located at the far side.

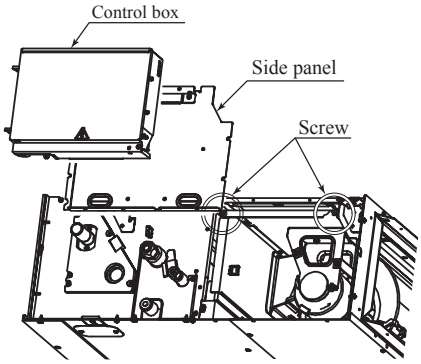


4) Take out the fan unit in the arrow direction.

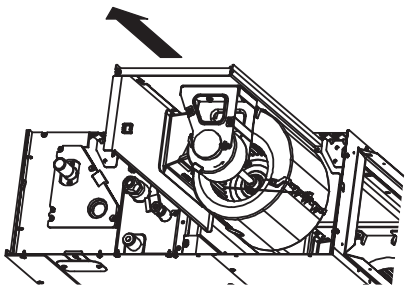


(ii) Model FDUM100VF1

1) Remove the control box and the side panel, and remove the screws marked in the circles (2 places) from the unit located at the near side.



2) Take out the fan unit located at the near side in the arrow direction.



PGA012D404

(5) Floor standing type (FDF)

This manual is for the installation of an indoor unit.
For electrical wiring work (Indoor), refer to page 178. For remote control installation, refer to page 182. For electrical wiring work (Outdoor) and refrigerant pipe work installation for outdoor unit, refer to Page 196.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.
- The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION .
  ⚠WARNING : Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠CAUTION : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
- The meanings of "Marks" used here are as shown on the right:
  ⃠ Never do it under any circumstances. | ❗ Always do it according to the instruction.
- After completing the installation, do commissioning to confirm there are no abnormalities, and explain to the customers about "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS", correct operation method and maintenance method (air filter cleaning, operation method and temperature setting method) with user's manual of this unit.
  Ask your customers to keep this installation manual together with the user's manual. Also, ask them to hand over the user's manual to the new user when the owner is changed.

⚠WARNING

- **Installation should be performed by the specialist.**
  If you install the unit by yourself, it may lead to serious trouble such as water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Install the system correctly according to these installation manuals.**
  Improper installation may cause explosion, injury, water leakage, electric shock, and fire.
- **Check the density refered by the foumula (accordance with ISO5149).**
  If the density exceeds the limit density, please consult the dealer and installate the ventilation system.
- **Use the genuine accessories and the specified parts for installation.**
  If parts unspecified by our company are used it could cause water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Ventilate the working area well in case the refrigerant leaks during installation.**
  If the refrigerant contacts the fire, toxic gas is produced.
- **Install the unit in a location that can hold heavy weight.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Install the unit properly in order to be able to withstand strong winds such as typhoons, and earthquakes.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Do not mix air in to the cooling cycle on installation or removal of the air conditioner.**
  If air is mixed in, the pressure in the cooling cycle will rise abnormally and may cause explosion and injuries.
- **Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient capacity and improper work can cause electric shock and fire.
- **Use specified wire for electrical wiring, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.**
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire.
- **Arrange the electrical wires in the control box properly to prevent them from rising. Fit the lid of the services panel property.**
  Improper fitting may cause abnormal heat and fire.
- **Check for refrigerant gas leakage after installation is completed.**
  If the refrigerant gas leaks into the house and comes in contact with a fan heater, a stove, or an oven, toxic gas is produced.
- **Use the specified pipe, flare nut, and tools for R410A.**
  Using existing parts (R22) could cause the unit failure and serious accident due to explosion of the cooling cycle.
- **Tighten the flare nut according to the specified method by with torque wrench.**
  If the flare nut were tightened with excess torque, it could cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period.
- **Do not put the drainage pipe directly into drainage channels where poisonous gases such as sulfide gas can occur.**
  Poisonous gases will flow into the room through drainage pipe and seriously affect the user's health and safety. This can also cause the corrosion of the indoor unit and a resultant unit failure or refrigerant leak.
- **Connect the pipes for refrigeration circuit securely in installation work before compressor is operated.**
  If the compressor is operated when the service valve is open without connecting the pipe, it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the system.
- **Stop the compressor before removing the pipe after shutting the service valve on pump down work.**
  If the pipe is removed when the compressor is in operation with the service valve open, air would be mixed in the refrigeration circuit and it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the cooling cycle.
- **Only use prescribed optional parts. The installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.**
  If you install the system by yourself, it can cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire.
- **Do not repair by yourself. And consult with the dealer about repair.**
  Improper repair may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Consult the dealer or a specialist about removal of the air conditioner.**
  Improper installation may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Turn off the power source during servicing or inspection work.**
  If the power is supplied during servicing or inspection work, it could cause electric shock and injury by the operating fan.
- **Do not run the unit when the panel or protection guard are taken off.**
  Touching the rotating equipment, hot surface, or high voltage section could cause an injury to be caught in the machine, to get burned, or electric shock.
- **Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.**
  It could cause electric shock, unit failure and improper running.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Perform earth wiring surely.**
  Do not connect the earth wiring to the gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod and telephone earth wiring. Imperfect earth work (grounding) could cause an electric shock or fire if some trouble or earth leakage occurs.
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed.**
  Unless the earth leakage circuit breaker is provided, if could cause a fire or electric shock.
- **Use the circuit breaker of correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect one could cause the system failure and fire.
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse of correct capacity where a fuse should be used.**
  Connecting the circuit by wire or copper wire could cause unit failure and fire.
- **Do not install the indoor unit near the location where there is possibility of flammable gas leakages.**
  If the gas leaks and gathers around the unit, it could cause fire.
- **Do not install and use the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfurous acid gas etc.) or flammable gas (such as thinner, petroleum etc.) may be generated or accumulated, or volatile flammable substances are handled.**
  It could cause the corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts etc. And inflammable gas could cause fire.
- **Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual.**
  Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place.
- **Do not use the indoor unit at the place where water splashes such as laundry.**
  Indoor unit is not waterproof. It could cause electric shock and fire.
- **Do not use the indoor unit for a special purpose such as food storage, cooling for precision instrument, preservation of animals, plants, and a work of art.**
  It could cause the damage of the items.
- **Do not install nor use the system near equipments which generate electromagnetic wave or high harmonics.**
  Equipments like inverter equipment, private power generator, high-frequency medical equipment, or telecommunication equipment might influence the air conditioner and cause a malfunction and breakdown. Or the air conditioner might influence medical equipments or telecommunication equipments, and obstruct their medical activity or cause jamming.
- **Do not install the remote control at the direct sunlight.**
  It could cause breakdown or deformation of the remote control.
- **Do not install the indoor unit at the place listed below.**
  - Places where flammable gas could leak.
  - Places where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floated.
  - Place where the substances which affect the air conditioner are generated such as sulfide gas, chloride gas, acid, alkali or ammonic atmospheres.
  - Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly.
  - On vehicles and ships
  - Places where machinery which generates high harmonics is used.
  - Places where cosmetics or special sprays are frequently used.
  - Highly salted area such as beach.
  - Heavy snow area
  - Places where the system is affected by smoke from a chimney.
  - Altitude over 1000m
- **Do not install the indoor unit in the locations listed below (Be sure to install the indoor unit according to the installation manual for each model because each indoor unit has each limitation)**
  - Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit
  - Locations where vibration can be amplified due to insufficient strength of structure.
  - Locations where the infrared receiver is exposed to the direct sunlight or the strong light beam. (in case of the infrared specification unit)
  - Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed. (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 5m)
  - Locations where drainage cannot run off safely.

  It can affect performance or function and etc..
- **Do not put any valuables which will break down by getting wet under the air conditioner.**
  Condensation could drop when the relative humidity is higher than 80% or drain pipe is clogged, and it damages user's belongings.
- **Do not use the base frame for the outdoor unit which is corroded or damaged after a long period of use.**
  It could cause the unit falling down and injury.
- **Pay attention not to damage the drain pan by weld sputter when brazing work is done near the unit.**
  If sputter entered into the unit during brazing work, it could cause damage (pinhole) of drain pan and leakage of water. To avoid damaging, keep the indoor unit packed or cover the indoor unit.
- **Install the drain pipe to drain the water surely according to the installation manual.**
  Improper connection of the drain pipe may cause dropping water into room and damaging user's belongings.
- **Do not share the drain pipe for indoor unit and GHP (Gas Heat Pump system) outdoor unit.**
  Toxic exhaust gas would flow into room and it might cause serious damage (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen) to user's health and safety.
- **Be sure to perform air tightness test by pressurizing with nitrogen gas after completed refrigerant piping work.**
  If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of refrigerant leakage in the small room, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.
- **For drain pipe installation, be sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100, not to make traps, and not to make air-bleeding.**
  Check if the drainage is correctly done during commissioning and ensure the space for inspection and maintenance.
- **Ensure the insulation on the pipes for refrigeration circuit so as not to condense water.**
  Incomplete insulation could cause condensation and it would wet ceiling, floor, and any other valuables.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit where is likely to be a nest for insects and small animals.**
  Insects and small animals could come into the electronic components and cause breakdown and fire. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **Pay extra attention, carrying the unit by hand.**
  Carry the unit with 2 people if it is heavier than 20kg. Do not use the plastic straps but the grabbing place, moving the unit by hand. Use protective gloves in order to avoid injury by the aluminum fin.
- **Make sure to dispose of the packaging material.**
  Leaving the materials may cause injury as metals like nail and woods are used in the package.
- **Do not operate the system without the air filter.**
  It may cause the breakdown of the system due to clogging of the heat exchanger.
- **Do not touch any button with wet hands.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not touch the refrigerant piping with bare hands when in operation.**
  The pipe during operation would become very hot or cold according to the operating condition, and it could cause a burn or frostbite.
- **Do not clean up the air conditioner with water.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not turn off the power source immediately after stopping the operation.**
  Be sure to wait for more than 5 minutes. Otherwise it could cause water leakage or breakdown.
- **Do not control the operation with the circuit breaker.**
  It could cause fire or water leakage. In addition, the fan may start operation unexpectedly and it may cause injury.

①Before installation

○ Install the unit properly according to this instruction manual.
○ Is it in accordance with the construction plan?

→ Model and power supply specification
→ Check.
→ Pipes, wires and small parts

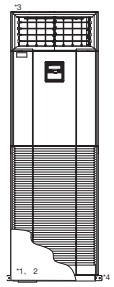
Accessory

(1) **For heat insulation of flare nut** *1

1	Pipe cover		1 pc	For gas side
2	Pipe cover		1 pc	For liquid side
3	Strap		4 pcs	

(2) **For installation** Note) Nos. 1 and 5 are used also as hardware for packing.

1	Fall-prevention fitting		1 pc	*3
2	Wood screw		2 pcs	For No. 1
3	Washer		2 pcs	For No. 2 wood screw
4	Rubber bushing		1 pc	For refrigerant and drain pipes
5	L fitting		2 pcs	*4



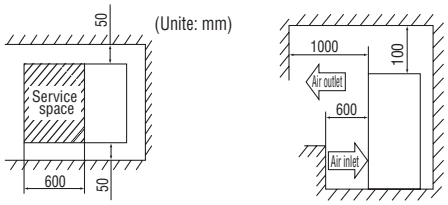
Where the accessories are put in

*1. Open the air inlet grill and Nos. (1) will be found in the unit.
*2. Nos. (2)-2-4 will be found at the same place as 1.
*3. Fall-prevention fitting is mounting on the top panel of the unit.
*4. L-fittings are mounted on the bottom part of the unit.

②Selection of installation place for the indoor unit

(Indoor unit)

Installation space Minimum required spaces are shown as follows.



• Secure sufficient spaces for inspection and maintenance.

⚠WARNING

• Install the unit securely on a floor that can endure its weight sufficiently Insufficient strength or incorrect installation could result in injuries if the unit falls.

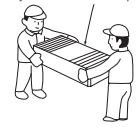
ATTENTION: Select a place for installation where the following conditions are fulfilled with customer's consent.

• Where cool or hot air can be blown sufficiently and widely.
• Where the piping and wiring work to outdoor unit can be done easily.
• Where drainage water can run off completely.
• Where the installation floor is strong enough.
• Where the unit its protected from direct exposure to sunlight.
• Where there is no obstacle at he air inlet and air outlet.
• Where the fire alarm apparatus will not be activated by malfunction. Where There is no risk for short-circuit of air.

③Carrying-in and installation of the unit

Carrying-in

Carry with the front face at top.



ATTENTION:

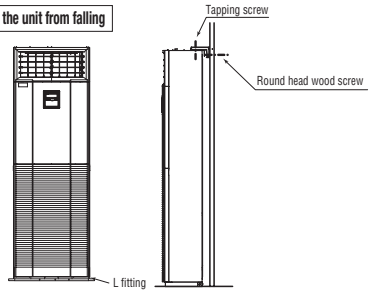
• Carry in the unit kept in a package as near as possible to the installation place.
• When it is necessary to unpack the unit before carrying in, sufficient care must be taken not to damage it by using nylon slings or the like.
Note) Do not hold on the air inlet grill, air outlet louver or other sections made of plastics.
• When placing the unit on the floor after unpacking, be sure to have its front face at the top.

③Carrying-in and installation of the unit (Continued)

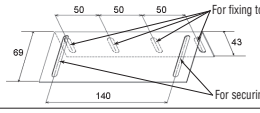
ATTENTION:

• Be sure to fix the unit with L-fittings and the fall-prevention fitting.
・Since the unit is tall, secure the unit no sooner than setting it in place.

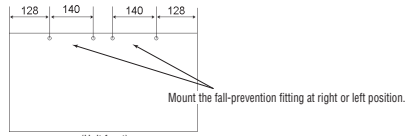
Procedure for preventing the unit from falling



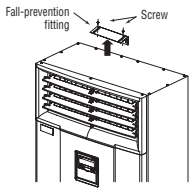
Fall-prevention fitting



Top panel

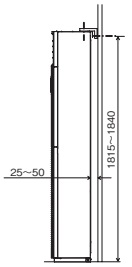
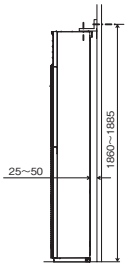


(1) Fixing the unit with the fall-prevention fitting



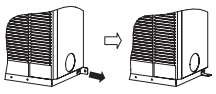
①Loosen screws (2 pcs) and remove the fall-prevention fitting.
②Select a position to fix the fall-prevention fitting as illustrated and fix it to the top of unit and the wall.
・The fixing positon of the fall-prevention fitting is as illastrated below.

Fixing position (Fall-prevention fitting)

Fitting facing upward	Fitting facing downward
	

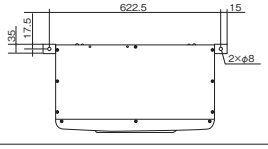
• Dimensions indicate the allowance for adjustment between the unit and the wall or floor.
• Fix the longer side of fitting to the unit.
• When the fitting is faced downward, fix it to the wall first.

(2) Fixing the unit with the L-fittings



①Remove the L-fittings mounted on the unit with screws.
②Turn over the L-fitting and fix it to the unit and either the floor or the wall as illustrated.
・Fixing position of the L-fittings are as illustrated below.

Fixing position (L fitting)



ATTENTION:

• Install the unit on the level.
Inclination must be less than 1°in fore-aft and right-left directions.

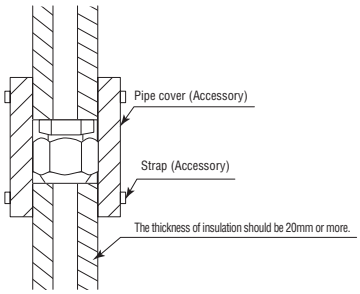
④Refrigerant piping

Caution

- ●Use the new refrigerant pipe.
  When re-using the existing pipe system for R22 or R407C, pay attention to the following items.
  - ・Change the flare nuts with the attached ones (JIS category 2), and reprocess the flare parts.
  - ・Do not use thin-walled pipes.
- ●Use phosphorus deoxidized copper alloy seamless pipe (C1220T specified in JIS H3300) for refrigeration pipe installation.
  In addition, make sure there is no damage both inside and outside of the pipe, and no harmful substances such as sulfur, oxide, dust or a contaminant stuck on the pipes.
- ●Do not use any refrigerant other than R410A.
  Using other refrigerant except R410A (R22 etc.) may degrade inside refrigeration oil. And if air getting into refrigerant circuit, it may cause anomaously high pres and may result in burst, etc.
- ●Store the copper pipes indoors and seal the both end of them until they are brazed in order to avoid any dust, dirt or water getting into pipe. Otherwise it will cause degradation of refrigeration oil and compressor breakdown, etc.
- ●Use special tools for R410A refrigerant.

Work procedure

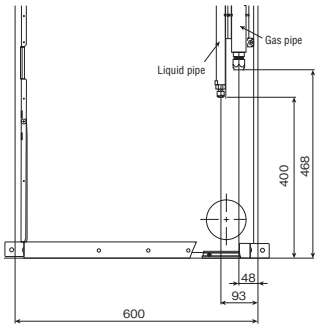
1. Remove the flare nuts and flare caps from the pipes of the indoor unit.
   ※ Make sure to loosen the flare nut by holding the flared male fitting with a spanner and giving torque to the nut with another spanner in order to avoid unexpected stress to the copper pipe, and then remove them.
   (Gas may come out a little at this time, but it is no anomaly.)
   ● Pay attention that the flare nut may pop out.
   (Because it is sometimes pressurized in the indoor unit)
2. Make a flare on liquid pipe and gas pipe, and connect the refrigrant pipes to the indoor unit.
   ※Bend the pipe with as big radius as possible and do not bend the pipe repeatedly. In addition, do not twist and crush the pipes.
   ※Do a flare connection as follows:
   ● Make sure to loosen the flare nut by holding the flared male fitting with a spanner and giving torque to the nut with another spanner in order to avoid unexpected stress to the copper pipe, and then remove them.
   ● When fastening the flare nut, align the refrigeration pipe with the center of flare nut, screw the nut for 3-4 times by hand and then tighten it with a spanner within the specified torque mentioned in the table below.
   Make sure to hold the flared male fitting on the indoor unit side with another spanner when tightening the nut in order to avoid unexpected stress on the copper pipe.
3. Cover the flare connection part of the indoor unit with attached insulation material after a gas leakage inspection, and tighten both ends with attached straps.
   ●Make sure to insulate both gas pipes and liquid pipes completely.
   ※Incomplete insulation may cause dew condensation and dew dropping.
4. Refrigerant is pre-charged in the outdoor unit.
   As for the additional refrigerant charge for the indoor unit and piping, refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.



Pipe diameter	Tightening torque N·m
ϕ 6.35	14 to 18
ϕ 9.52	34 to 42
ϕ 12.7	49 to 61
ϕ 15.88	68 to 82
ϕ 19.05	100 to 120

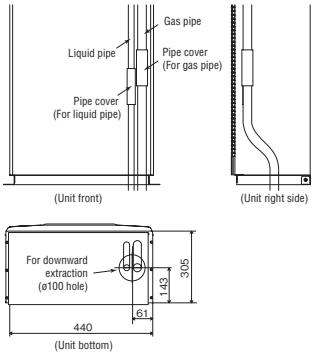
④Refrigerant piping (Continued)

◆ **Pipe and wire extracting position**

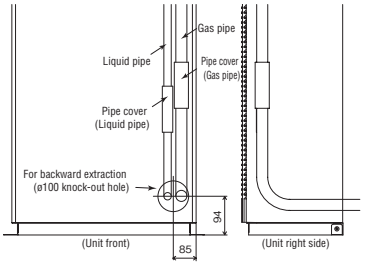


ATTENTION:
- Do not cut off the flange at the hole on the base plate for the downward extraction.

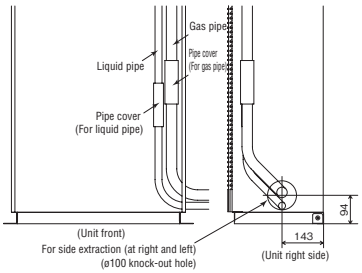
Downward extraction



Backward extraction



Sideward extraction



⑤Drain pipe

⚠WARNING

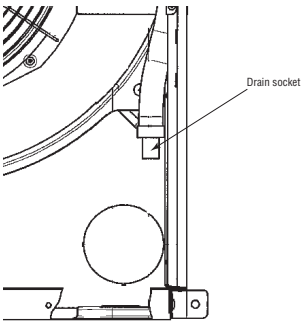
- Do not insert the drain pipe directly in the drain ditch where toxic gases such as sulffuric gas are produced.
  Toxic gas may flow into the room.

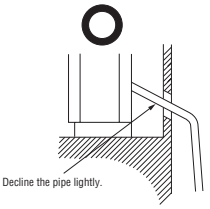
⚠CAUTION

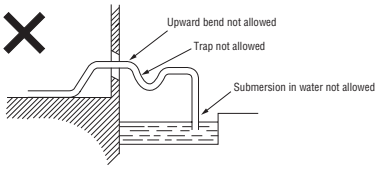
- Install the drain pipe properly according to the installation manu And insulate it to prevent from dew condensation.
  Improper installation of drain pipe may cause damage of furniture drainage water leaked or dew condensation.

Procedure

1. Connect the drain socket to the drain pipe (PV-20) provided at site and fix the joint with adhesive tape, or the like.
2. When the pipe provided at site runs through a room, insulate the pipe with a commercial insulator (Polyethylene foam: Specific gravity 0.03, thickness 15 mm or more) to prevent dewing.







ATTENTION:

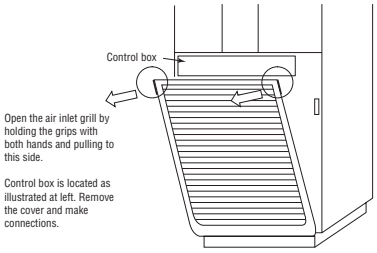
- Insulate the drain pipe to prevent dewing. (Especially in room and unit)
- Incline the drain pipe downward to the outlet (1/50 – 1/100). Upward bend or trap is not allowed on the way.
- Use a commercial hard polyvinyl chloride pipe, PV-20, for the drain pipe.

<Use of adhesive agent is prohibited.>

⑥Wire extracting position and wire connecton

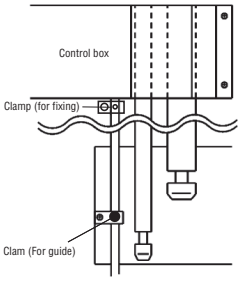
Control box position and power cable connection

- Electric work must be made by qualified electricians according to the "Engineering standards concerning electric equipment", "Extension wiring regulations" and the electric wiring work manual. Be sure to use dedicated electric circuits.
- Make sure to use specified wires for wiring, and connect them securely. Clamp the wires to protect the terminal connection from external force.
- Make sure to protect the unit with the D-type grounding work.
- For details of wiring work, refer to the attached electric wiring work manual.

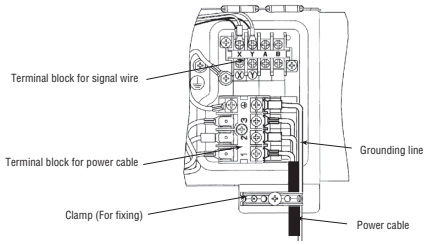


Procedure

①Remove the control box cover (fixed with a screw).
②Introduce wires in the unit and connect securely on the terminals.
③Fix each wire with a clamp (for fixing).
④Install removed parts as they were.



• Make sure to pass the power cable through the clamp (for guide).



⑦Check list after installation

- Check the following items after all installation work completed.

Check if;	Expected trouble	Check
The indoor and outdoor units are fixed securely?	Falling, vibration, noise	
Inspection for gas leakage is done?	Insufficient capacity	
Insulation work is properly done?	Water leakage	
Water is drained properly?	Water leakage	
Supply voltage is same as mentioned in the model name plate?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
There is mis-wiring or mis-connection of piping?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Earth wiring is connected properly?	Electric shock	
Cable size comply with specified size?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Any obstacle blocks airflow on air inlet and outlet?	Insufficient capacity	

(6) Wall mounted type (SRK)

- **This installation manual illustrates the method of installing an indoor unit.**
- **For electrical wiring work, please see instructions set out on the backside.**
- **For outdoor unit installation and refrigerant piping, please refer to page 196.**
- **A wired remote control unit is supplied separately as an optional part.**
- **When install the unit, be sure to check whether the selection of installation place, power supply specifications, usage limitation (piping length, height differences between indoor and outdoor units, power supply voltage and etc.) and installation spaces.**

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.
- The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION.
  ⚠WARNING : Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠CAUTION : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
- Be sure to confirm no anomaly on the equipment by commissioning after completed installation and explain the operating methods as well as the maintenance methods of this equipment to the user according to the owner's manual.
- Keep the installation manual together with owner's manual at a place where any user can read at any time. Moreover if necessary, ask to hand them to a new user.
- For installing qualified personnel, take precautions in respect to themselves by using suitable protective clothing, groves, etc., and then perform the installation works.
- Please pay attention not to fall down the tools, etc. when installing the unit at the high position.
- If unusual noise can be heard during operation, consult the dealer.
- The meanings of "Marks" used here are shown as follows:

⃠	Never do it under any circumstances.	❗ ⏚	Always do it according to the instruction.

⚠ WARNING

- **Installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.**
  If you install the system by yourself, it may cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire and personal injury, as a result of a system malfunction. Do not carry out the installation and maintenance work except the by qualified installer.
- **Install the system in full accordance with the installation manual.**
  Incorrect installation may cause bursts, personal injury, water leaks, electric shocks and fire.
- **Be sure to use only for household and residence.**
  If this appliance is installed in inferior environment such as machine shop and etc., it can cause malfunction.
- **Use the original accessories and the specified components for installation.**
  If parts other than those prescribed by us are used, It may cause water leaks, electric shocks, fire and personal injury.
- **Install the unit in a location with good support.**
  Unsuitable installation locations can cause the unit to fall and cause material damage and personal injury.
- **Ventilate the working area well in the event of refrigerant leakage during installation.**
  If the refrigerant comes into contact with naked flames, poisonous gas is produced.
- **When installing in small rooms, take prevention measures not to exceed the density limit of refrigerant in the event of leakage, referred by the formula (accordance with ISO5149).**
  If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit, please consult the dealer and install the ventilation system, otherwise lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accident.
- **After completed installation, check that no refrigerant leaks from the system.**
  If refrigerant leaks into the room and comes into contact with an oven or other hot surface, poisonous gas is produced.
- **Use the prescribed pipes, flare nuts and tools for R410A.**
  Using existing parts (for R22 or R407C) can cause the unit failure and serious accidents due to burst of the refrigerant circuit.
- **Tighten the flare nut by torque wrench with specified method.**
  If the flare nut were tightened with excess torque, this may cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period.
- **The electrical installation must be carried out by the qualified electrician in accordance with "the norm for electrical work" and "national wiring regulation", and the system must be connected to the dedicated circuit.**
  Power supply with insufficient capacity and incorrect function done by improper work can cause electric shocks and fire.
- **Be sure to shut off the power before starting electrical work.**
  Failure to shut off the power can cause electric shocks, unit failure or incorrect function of equipment.
- **Be sure to use the cables conformed to safety standard and cable ampacity for power distribution work.**
  Unconformable cables can cause electric leak, anomalous heat production or fire.
- **This appliance must be connected to main power supply by means of a circuit breaker or switch (fuse:20A) with a contact separation of at least 3mm.**
- **When plugging this appliance, a plug conforming to the norm IEC60884-1 must be used.**
- **Use the prescribed cables for electrical connection, tighten the cables securely in terminal block and relieve the cables correctly to prevent overloading the terminal blocks.**
  Loose connections or cable mountings can cause anomalous heat production or fire.
- **Arrange the wiring in the control box so that it cannot be pushed up further into the box. Install the service panel correctly.**
  Incorrect installation may result in overheating and fire.
- **Be sure to switch off the power supply in the event of installation, inspection or servicing.**
  If the power supply is not shut off, there is a risk of electric shocks, unit failure or personal injury due to the unexpected start of fan.
- **Be sure to wear protective goggles and gloves while at work.**
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed.**
  If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it can cause electric shocks.

- **Do not put the drainage pipe directly into drainage channels where poisonous gases such as sulphide gas can occur.**
  Poisonous gases will flow into the room through drainage pipe and seriously affect the user's health and safety. This can also cause the corrosion of the indoor unit and a resultant unit failure or refrigerant leak.
- **Ensure that no air enters in the refrigerant circuit when the unit is installed and removed.**
  If air enters in the refrigerant circuit, the pressure in the refrigerant circuit becomes too high, which can cause burst and personal injury.
- **Do not processing, splice the power cord, or share a socket with other power plugs.**
  This may cause fire or electric shock due to defecting contact, defecting insulation and over-current etc.
- **Do not bundling, winding or processing for the power cord. Or, do not deforming the power plug due to tread it.**
  This may cause fire or heating.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not vent R410A into the atmosphere : R410A is a fluorinated greenhouse gas, covered by the Kyoto Protocol with Groval Warming Potential (GWP)=1975.**
- **Do not run the unit with removed panels or protections.**
  Touching rotating equipments, hot surfaces or high voltage parts can cause personal injury due to entrapment, burn or electric shocks.
- **Do not perform any change of protective device itself or its setup condition.**
  The forced operation by short-circuiting protective device of pressure switch and temperature controller or the use of non specified component can cause fire or burst.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Carry out the electrical work for ground lead with care.**
  Do not connect the ground lead to the gas line, water line, lightning conductor or telephone line's ground lead. Incorrect grounding can cause unit faults such as electric shocks due to short-circuiting.

- **Use the circuit breaker of correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect one could cause the system failure and fire.
- **Install isolator or disconnect switch on the power supply wiring in accordance with the local codes and regulations.**
  The isolator should be locked in OFF state in accordance with EN60204-1.
- **Be sure to install indoor unit properly according to the installation manual in order to run off the drainage smoothly.**
  Improper installation of indoor unit can cause dropping water into the room and damaging personal property.
- **Install the drainage pipe to run off drainage securely according to the installation manual.**
  Incorrect installation of the drainage pipe can cause dropping water into the room and damaging personal property.
- **Be sure to install the drainage pipe with descending slope of 1/100 or more, and not to make traps and air-bleedings.**
  Check if the drainage runs off securely during commissioning and ensure the space for inspection and maintenance.
- **Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual.**
  Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place.
- **For installation work, be careful not to get injured with the heat exchanger, piping flare portion or screws etc.**
- **Be sure to insulate the refrigerant pipes so as not to condense the ambient air moisture on them.**
  Insufficient insulation can cause condensation, which can lead to moisture damage on the ceiling, floor, furniture and any other valuables.
- **When perform the air conditioner operation (cooling or drying operation) in which ventilator is installed in the room. In this case, using the air conditioner in parallel with the ventilator, there is the possibility that drain water may backflow in accordance with the room lapse into the negative pressure status. Therefore, set up the opening port such as incorporate the air into the room that may appropriate to ventilation (For example; Open the door a little). In addition, just as above, so set up the opening port if the room lapse into negative pressure status due to register of the wind for the high rise apartment etc.**
- **Be sure to perform air tightness test by pressurizing with nitrogen gas after completed refrigerant piping work.**
  If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of refrigerant leakage in the small room, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.

- **Do not install the unit in the locations listed below.**
  - Locations where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floating.
  - Locations where any substances that can affect the unit such as sulphide gas, chloride gas, acid and alkaline can occur.
  - Vehicles and ships.
  - Locations where cosmetic or special sprays are often used.
  - Locations with direct exposure of oil mist and steam such as kitchen and machine plant.
  - Locations where any machines which generate high frequency harmonics are used.
  - Locations with salty atmospheres such as coastlines.
  - Locations with heavy snow (If installed, be sure to provide base flame and snow hood mentioned in the manual).
  - Locations where the unit is exposed to chimney smoke.
  - Locations at high altitude (more than 1000m high).
  - Locations with ammonic atmospheres.
  - Locations where heat radiation from other heat source can affect the unit.
  - Locations without good air circulation.
  - Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit.
  - Locations where short circuit of air can occur (in case of multiple units installation).
  - Locations where strong air blows against the air outlet of outdoor unit.
  - Locations where something located above the unit could fall.

  It can cause remarkable decrease in performance, corrosion and damage of components, malfunction and fire.
- **Do not install the indoor unit in the locations listed below (Be sure to install the indoor unit according to the installation manual for each model because each indoor unit has each limitation).**
  - Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit.
  - Locations where vibration can be amplified due to insufficient strength of structure.
  - Locations where the infrared receiver is exposed to the direct sunlight or the strong light beam (in case of the infrared specification unit).
  - Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 1m).
  - Locations where drainage cannot run off safely.

  It can affect performance or function and etc.
- **Do not install the unit near the location where leakage of combustible gases can occur.**
  If leaked gases accumulate around the unit, it can cause fire.
- **Do not install the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfurous acid gas etc.) or combustible gas (such as thinner and petroleum gases) can accumulate or collect, or where volatile combustible substances are handled.**
  Corrosive gas can cause corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts and etc. And combustible gas can cause fire.
- **Do not use the indoor unit at the place where water splashes may occur such as in laundries.**
  Since the indoor unit is not waterproof, it can cause electric shocks and fire.
- **Do not install nor use the system close to the equipment that generates electromagnetic fields or high frequency harmonics.**
  Equipment such as inverters, standby generators, medical high frequency equipments and telecommunication equipments can affect the system, and cause malfunctions and breakdowns. The system can also affect medical equipment and telecommunication equipment, and obstruct its function or cause jamming.
- **Do not place any variables which will be damaged by getting wet under the indoor unit.**
  When the relative humidity is higher than 80% or drainage pipe is clogged, condensation or drainage water can drop and it can cause the damage of valuables.
- **Do not install the remote control at the direct sunlight.**
  It can cause malfunction or deformation of the remote control.
- **Do not use the unit for special purposes such as storing foods, cooling precision instruments and preservation of animals, plants or art.**
  It can cause the damage of the items.
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse with the correct rating in the location where fuses are to be used.**
  Connecting the circuit with copper wire or other metal thread can cause unit failure and fire.
- **Do not touch any buttons with wet hands.**
  It can cause electric shocks.
- **Do not touch any refrigerant pipes with your hands when the system is in operation.**
  During operation the refrigerant pipes become extremely hot or extremely cold depending the operating condition, and it can cause burn injury or frost injury.

BEFORE INSTALLATION

○ Before installation check that the power supply matches the air conditioner.

Standard accessories (Installation kit) Accessories for indoor unit		Q'ty
①	Installation board (Attached to the rear of the indoor unit)	1
②	Wireless remote control	1
③	Remote control holder	1
④	Tapping screws (for installation board ø4 X 25mm)	10
⑤	Wood screws (for remote control switch holder ø3.5 X 16mm)	2
⑥	Battery [R03 (AAA, Micro) 1.5V]	2
⑦	Air-cleaning filters	2
⑧	Filter holders (Attached to the front panel of indoor unit)	2
⑨	Insulation (#486 50 x 100 t3)	1

Option parts		Q'ty
ⓐ	Sealing plate	1
ⓑ	Sleeve	1
ⓒ	Inclination plate	1
ⓓ	Putty	1
ⓔ	Drain hose (extension hose)	1
ⓕ	Piping cover (for insulation of connection piping)	1

Necessary tools for the installation work	
1	Plus headed driver
2	Knife
3	Saw
4	Tape measure
5	Hammer
6	Spanner wrench
7	Torque wrench (14.0 ~ 82.0N·m (1.4 ~ 8.2kgf·m))
8	Hole core drill (65mm in diameter)
9	Wrench key (Hexagon) [4m/m]
10	Flaring tool set (Designed specifically for R410A)
11	Gas leak detector (Designed specifically for R410A)
12	Gauge for projection adjustment (Used when flare is made by using conventional flare tool)
13	Pipe bender

SELECTION OF INSTALLATION LOCATION

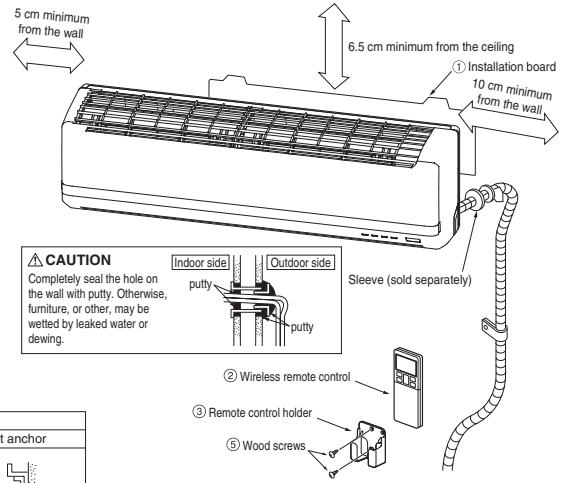
(Install at location that meets the following conditions, after getting approval from the customer)

Indoor unit

○ Where there is no obstructions to the air flow and where the cooled and heated air can be evenly distributed.
○ A solid place where the unit or the wall will not vibrate.
○ A place where there will be enough space for servicing. (Where space mentioned below can be secured)
○ Where wiring and the piping work will be easy to conduct.
○ The place where receiving part is not exposed to the direct rays of the sun or the strong rays of the street lighting.
○ A place where it can be easily drained.
○ A place separated at least 1m away from the television or the radio. (To prevent interference to images and sounds.)
○ Places where this unit is not affected by the high frequency equipment or electric equipment.
○ Avoid installing this unit in place where there is much oil mist.
○ Places where there is no electric equipment or household under the installing unit.

Wireless remote control

○ A place where the air conditioner can be received the signal surely during operating the wireless remote control.
○ Places where there is no affected by the TV and radio etc.
○ Do not place where exposed to direct sunlight or near heat devices such as a stove.

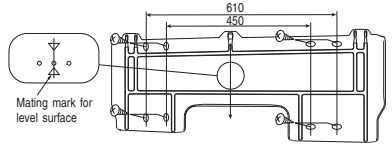


⚠ CAUTION
Completely seal the hole on the wall with putty. Otherwise, furniture, or other, may be wetted by leaked water or dewing.

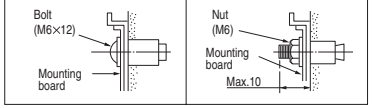
INSTALLATION OF INDOOR UNIT

Installation of Installation board

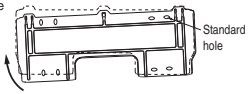
Look for the inside wall structures (Intermediats support or pillar and firmly install the unit after level surface has been checked.)



Fixing on concrete wall	
Use of nut anchor	Use of bolt anchor

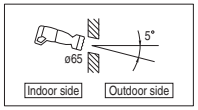


○ Adjustment of the installation board in the horizontal direction is to be conducted with eight screws in a temporary tightened state.
○ Adjust so the board will be level by turning the board with the standard hole as the center.

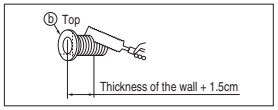


Drilling of holes and fixture of sleeve (Option parts)

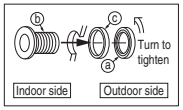
When drilling the wall that contains a metal lath, wire lath or metal plate, be sure to use pipe hole sleeve sold separately.



○ Drill a hole with whole core drill.

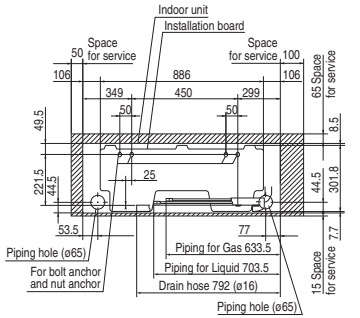


○ In case of rear piping draw out, cut off the lower and the right side portions of the sleeve collar.



Relation between setting plate and indoor unit

INSTALLATION SPACE (INDOOR UNIT) (FRONT VIEW)

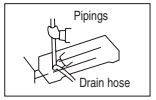


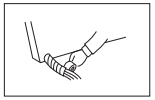
(Unit : mm)

Installing the support of piping

In case of piping in the right rear direction

Shaping of pipings	Taping of the exterior



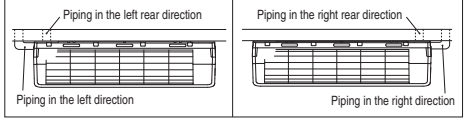


○ Hold the bottom of the piping and fix direction before stretching it and shaping it.
○ Tape only the portion that goes through the wall.
○ Always tape the wiring with the piping.

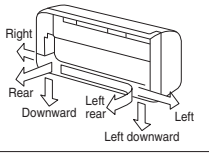
Sufficient care must be taken not to damage the panel when connecting pipes.

• Matters of special notice when piping from left or central/rear of the unit.
[Top view]

Left-hand-side piping	Right-hand-side piping



Piping is possible in the rear, left, left rear, left downward, right or downward direction.

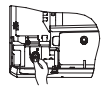


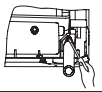
[Drain hose changing procedures]

1. Remove the drain hose	2. Remove the drain cap.

○ Remove the screw and drain hose, making it rotate.
○ Remove it with hand or pliers.

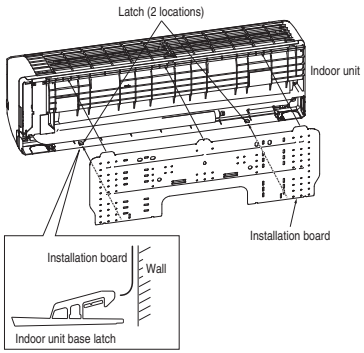
3. Insert the drain cap.	4. Connect the drain hose.





○ Insert the drain cap which was removed at procedure "2" securely using a hexagonal wrench etc.
Note: Be careful that If it is not inserted securely, water leakage may occur.
○ Insert the drain hose securely, making rotate. And install the screw.
Note: Be careful that If it is not inserted securely, water leakage may occur.

Fixing of indoor unit



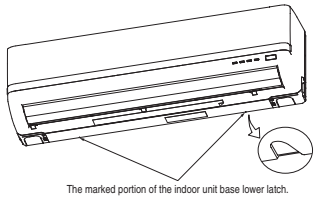
Installation Steps

① Pass the pipe through the hole in the wall, and hook the upper part of the indoor unit to the installation board.

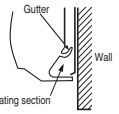
② Gently push the lower part to secure the unit.

• How to remove the indoor unit from the installation board

① Push up at the marked portion of the indoor unit base lower latch, and slightly pull it toward you. (both right and left hand sides) (The indoor unit base lower latch can be removed from the installation board)
② Push up the indoor unit upward. So the indoor unit will be removed from the installation board.



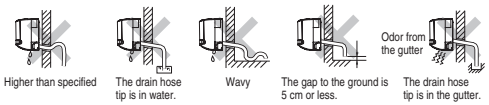
Since this air conditioner has been designed to collect dew drops on the rear surface to the drain pan, do not attach the power cord above the gutter.



Drainage

○ Arrange the drain hose in a downward angle.
○ Avoid the following drain piping.

⚠CAUTION Go through all installation steps and check if the drainage is all right. Otherwise water leak may occur.

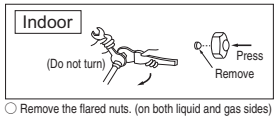


○ Pour water to the drain pan located under the heat exchanger, and ensure that the water is discharged outdoor.
○ When the extended drain hose is indoor, securely insulate it with a heat insulator available in the market.

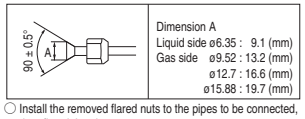
CONNECTION OF REFRIGERANT PIPINGS

Preparation

Keep the openings of the pipes covered with tapes etc. to prevent dust, sand, etc. from entering them.



○ Remove the flared nuts. (on both liquid and gas sides)



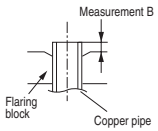
Dimension A
Liquid side ø6.35 : 9.1 (mm)
Gas side ø9.52 : 13.2 (mm)
ø12.7 : 16.6 (mm)
ø15.88 : 19.7 (mm)

○ Install the removed flared nuts to the pipes to be connected, then flared the pipes.

⚠CAUTION

Do not apply refrigerating machine oil to the flared surface.

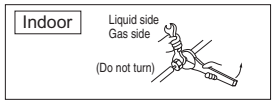
• Flaring work



Copper pipe diameter	Measurement B (mm)		
	Clutch type flare tool for R410A	Conventional (R22) flare tool	
		Clutch type	Wing nut type
ø6.35	0.0 - 0.5	1.0 - 1.5	1.5 - 2.0
ø9.52	0.0 - 0.5	1.0 - 1.5	1.5 - 2.0
ø12.7	0.0 - 0.5	1.0 - 1.5	2.0 - 2.5
ø15.88	0.0 - 0.5	1.0 - 1.5	2.0 - 2.5

Use a flare tool designed for R410A or a conventional flare tool.
Please note that measurement B (protrusion from the flaring block) will vary depending on the type of a flare tool in use.
If a conventional flare tool is used, please use a copper pipe gauge or a similar instrument to check protrusion so that you can keep measurement B to a correct value.

Connection



○ Connect the pipes on both liquid and gas sides.
○ Tighten the nuts to the following torque.
Liquid side (ø6.35) : 14.0 - 18.0 N·m (1.4 - 1.8 kgf·m)
Gas side (ø9.52) : 34.0 - 42.0 N·m (3.4 - 4.2 kgf·m)
(ø12.7) : 49.0 - 61.0 N·m (4.9 - 6.1 kgf·m)
(ø15.88) : 68.0 - 82.0 N·m (6.8 - 8.2 kgf·m)

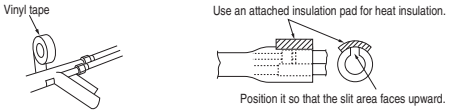
⚠CAUTION

Do not apply excess torque to the flared nuts. Otherwise, the flared nuts may check depending.

If FDC71VNP is connected, use reducer at gas side of indoor unit to change the pipe size from ø15.88 to ø12.7. (Reducer is attached in the outdoor unit accessory)

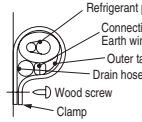
Insulation of the connection portion

Cover the coupling with insulator and then cover it with tapes.



• Cover the indoor unit s flare-connected joints, after they are checked for a gas leak, with an indoor unit heat insulating material and then wrap them with a tape with an attached insulation pad placed over the heat insulating material's slit area.

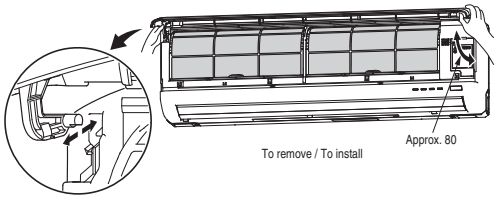
Finishing work and fixing



Cover the exterior portion with outer tape and shape the piping so it will match the contours of the route that the piping to take.
Also fix the wiring and pipings to the wall with clamps.

Open/close and detachment/attachment of the air inlet panel

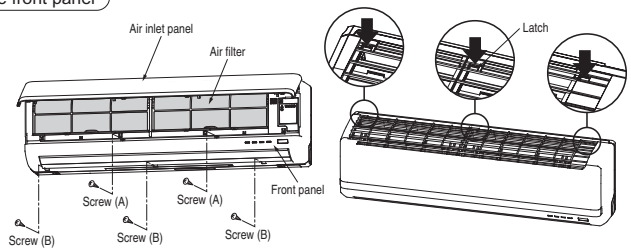
○ To open, pull the panel at both ends of lower part and release latches, then pull up the panel until you feel resistance.
(The panel stops at approx. 60° open position)
○ To close, hold the panel at both ends of lower part to lower downward and push it slightly until the latch works.
○ To remove, pull up the panel to the position shown in right illustration and pull it toward you.
○ To install, insert the panel arm into the slot on the front panel from the position shown in right illustration, hold the panel at both ends of lower part, lower it downward slowly, then push it slightly until the latch works.



How to remove and install the front panel

○Removing
① Remove the air inlet panel.
② Remove the screw (A) 2pcs / screw (B) 3pcs fixing to the front panel.
③ Remove the 3 latches in the upper section of the front panel and then remove the front panel from the unit.

○Installing
① Remove the air filter.
② Cover the unit with the front panel.
③ Tighten the screw (A) 2pcs / screw (B) 3pcs to fix the front panel.
④ Install the air filter.
⑤ Install the air inlet panel.



ELECTRICAL WIRING WORK

Preparation of indoor unit

Mounting of connecting wires

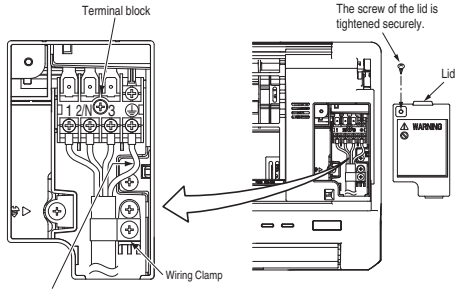
① Open the air inlet panel.
② Remove the lid.
③ Remove the wiring clamp.
④ Connect the connecting wire securely to the terminal block.
  1) Connect the connection wire securely to the terminal block. If the wire is not affixed completely, contact will be poor, and it is dangerous as the terminal block may heat up and catch fire.
  2) Take care not to confuse the terminal numbers for indoor and outdoor connections.
⑤ Fix the connecting wire by wiring clamp.
⑥ Attach the lid.
⑦ Close the air inlet panel.

⚠ CAUTION

In case of faulty wiring connection, the indoor unit stops, and then the run lamp turns on and the timer lamp blinks.

Use cables for interconnection wiring to avoid loosening of the wires.
CENELEC code for cables Required field cables.

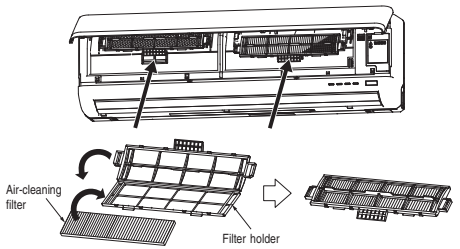
H05RNR4G1.5 (example) or 245IEC57
H Harmonized cable type
05 300/500 volts
R Natural-and/or synth, rubber wire insulation
N Polychloroprene rubber conductors insulation
R Stranded core
4or5 Number of conductors
G One conductor of the cable is the earth conductor (yellow/green)
1.5 Section of copper wire (mm²)



• Earth wire shall be Yellow/Green (Y/G) in color and longer than other AC wires for safety reason.

Installing the air-cleaning filters

1. Open the air inlet panel and remove the air filters.
2. Install the air-cleaning filter in the filter holders, and then install the filter holders in the air conditioner.
   • Each air-cleaning filter can be installed in the left or right filter holder.
3. Install the air filters and close the inlet panel.



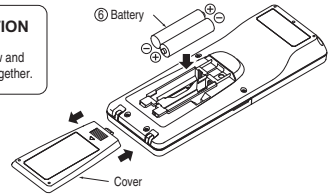
INSTALLATION OF WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROL

Mounting method of battery

○ Uncover the wireless remote control, and mount the batteries [R03 (AAA, Micro), ×2 pieces] in the body regularly.
(Fit the poles with the indication marks, ⊕ & ⊖ without fail)

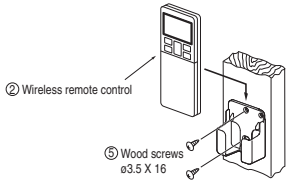
⚠ CAUTION

Do not use new and old batteries together.



Fixing to pillar or wall

○ Conventionally, operate the wireless remote control by holding in your hand.
○ Avoid installing it on a clay wall etc.

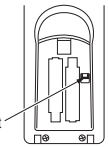


INSTALLING TWO AIR CONDITIONERS IN THE SAME ROOM

When two air conditioners are installed in the same room, use this setting when the two air conditioners are not operated with one wireless remote control. Set the wireless remote control and indoor unit.

Setting the wireless remote control

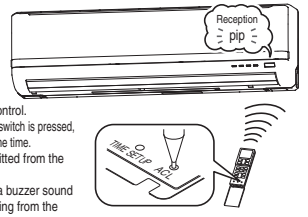
① Pull out the cover and take out batteries.
② Disconnect the switching line next to the battery with wire cutters.



③ Insert batteries. Close the cover.

Setting an indoor unit

① Turn off the power supply, and turn it on after 1 minute.
② Point the wireless remote control that was set according to the procedure described on the left side at the indoor unit and send a signal by pressing the ACL switch on the wireless remote control.
Since the signal is sent in about 6 seconds after the ACL switch is pressed, point the wireless remote control at the indoor unit for some time.
③ Check that the reception buzzer sound "pip" is emitted from the indoor unit.
At completion of the setting, the indoor unit emits a buzzer sound "pip". (If no reception tone is emitted, start the setting from the beginning again.)

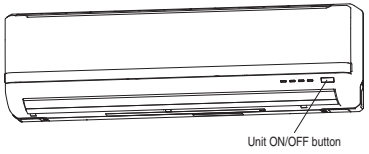


HOW TO RELOCATE OR DISPOSE OF THE UNIT

○ In order to protect the environment, be sure to pump down (recovery of refrigerant).
○ Pump down is the method of recovering refrigerant from the indoor unit to the outdoor unit when the pipes are removed from the unit.

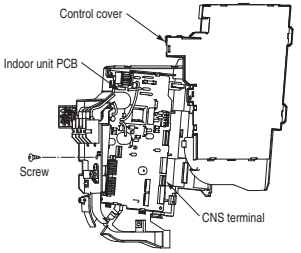
<How to pump down>
① Connect charge hose to check joint of outdoor unit.
② Liquid side : Close the liquid valve with hexagon wrench key.
Gas side : Fully open the gas valve.
Carry out cooling operation. (If indoor temperature is low, operate forced cooling operation.)
③ After low pressure gauge become 0.01MPa, stop cooling operation and close the gas valve.

• Forced cooling operation
Turn on the power supply again after a while after turn off the power supply.
Then press continually the ON/OFF button 5 seconds or more.



CONCERNING TERMINAL CONNECTION FOR AN INTERFACE

① Remove the air inlet panel, lid and front panel.
② Remove the control cover. (Remove the screw.)
③ There is a terminal (respectively marked with CNS) for the indoor control board.
In connecting an interface, connect to the respective terminal securely with the connection harness supplied with an optional "Interface connection kit SC-BIKN-E" and fasten the connection harness onto the indoor control box with the clamp supplied with the kit.
For more details, please refer to the user's manual of your "Interface connection kit SC-BIKN-E".



INSTALLATION TEST CHECK POINTS

Check the following points again after completion of the installation, and before turning on the power. Conduct a test run again and ensure that the unit operates properly.
At the same time, explain to the customer how to use the unit and how to take care of the unit following the user's manual.

After installation

☐ The power supply voltage is correct as the rating.
☐ No gas leaks from the joints of the operation valve.
☐ Power cables and crossover wires are securely fixed to the terminal board.
☐ The screw of the lid is tightened securely.
☐ Operation valve is fully open.
☐ The pipe joints for indoor and outdoor pipes have been insulated.

Test run

☐ Air conditioning operation is normal.
☐ No abnormal noise.
☐ Water drains smoothly.
☐ Protective functions are not working.
☐ The wireless remote control is normal.
☐ Operation of the unit has been explained to the customer. (Three-minutes restart preventive timer)
When the air conditioner is restarted or when changing the operation, the unit will not start operating for approximately 3 minutes. This is to protect the unit and it is not a malfunction.

(7) Effective range of cool/hot wind (Reference)

(a) FDT series

Guideline for ceiling height

Fan Speed Setting	Model	
	FDT71VF1	FDT100VF1
Hi	3.0m	3.2m
PHi	3.8m	4.3m

Notes (1) If the ceiling height is over 3m, please consider to add circulators.
This table shows reference values in case of four outlet.
If you shut some outlets, they are different.
Fan speed setting can be changed by using a wired remote control.

(b) FDEN series

Model	Effective range
FDEN71VF1	8.0m
FDEN100VF1	9.0m

[Conditions]
1. Height of unit: 2.4 – 3.0 (m) above floor level
2. Fan speed : Hi
3. Location: Free space without obstacles
4. The effective range means the horizontal distance for wind to reach the floor.
5. Wind speed at the effective range: 0.5 m/s

(c) FDF series

Model	Effective range
FDF71VD1	5m
FDF100VD1	8m

[Conditions]
1. Fan speed : Hi
2. Location: Free space without obstacles
3. The effective range means the horizontal distance for the wind to reach the floor.
4. Wind speed at the effective range: 0.5 m/s

5.2 Electric wiring work installation

(1) FDT, FDEN, FDUM, series

PSB012D999

Electrical wiring work must be performed by an electrician qualified by a local power provider according to the electrical installation technical standards and interior wiring regulations applicable to the installation site.

Security instructions

- **Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.**
- **The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION .**
  ⚠WARNING : Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠CAUTION : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
- **The meanings of "Marks" used here are as shown on the right:**
  ⃠ Never do it under any circumstances. ❗ Always do it according to the instruction.
- **Accord with following items. Otherwise, there will be the risks of electric shock and fire caused by overheating or short circuit.**

⚠WARNING

- **Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient capacity and improper work can cause electric shock and fire. ❗
- **Use specified wire for electrical wiring, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.**
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire. ❗
- **Arrange the electrical wires in the control box properly to prevent them from rising. Fit the lid of the services panel property.**
  Improper fitting may cause abnormal heat and fire. ❗
- **Use the genuine optional parts. And installation should be performed by a specialist.**
  If you install the unit by yourself, it could cause water leakage, electric shock and fire. ❗
- **Do not repair by yourself. And consult with the dealer about repair.**
  Improper repair may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire. ⃠
- **Consult the dealer or a specialist about removal of the air conditioner.**
  Improper installation may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire. ❗
- **Turn off the power source during servicing or inspection work.**
  If the power is supplied during servicing or inspection work, it could cause electric shock and injury by the operating fan. ❗
- **Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.**
  It could cause electric shock, unit failure and improper running. ❗

⚠CAUTION

- **Perform earth wiring surely.**
  Do not connect the earth wiring to the gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod and telephone earth wiring. Improper earth could cause unit failure and electric shock due to a short circuit. ⏚
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed.**
  If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it can cause electric shocks. ❗
- **Make sure to install earth leakage breaker on power source line. (countermeasure thing to high harmonics.)**
  Absence of breaker could cause electric shock. ❗
- **Use the circuit breaker of correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect one could cause the system failure and fire. ❗
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse of correct capacity where a fuse should be used.**
  Connecting the circuit by wire or copper wire could cause unit failure and fire. ⃠
- **Use power source line of correct capacity.**
  Using incorrect capacity one could cause electric leak, abnormal heat generation and fire. ❗
- **Do not mingle solid cord and stranded cord on power source and signal side terminal block.**
  In addition, do not mingle difference capacity solid or stranded cord.
  Inappropriate cord setting could cause loosing screw on terminal block, bad electrical contact, smoke and fire. ⃠
- **Do not turn off the power source immediately after stopping the operation.**
  Be sure to wait for more than 5 minutes. Otherwise it could cause water leakage or breakdown. ⃠
- **Do not control the operation with the circuit breaker.**
  It could cause fire or water leakage. In addition, the fan may start operation unexpectedly and it may cause injury. ⃠

Control mode switching

- The control content of indoor units can be switched in following way. (☐ is the default setting)

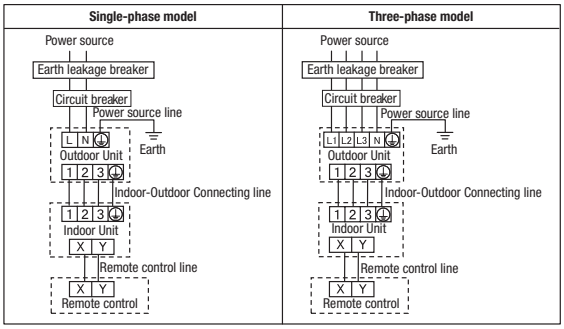
Switch No.	Control Content	
SW2	Indoor unit address (0-Fh)	
SW5-1	Master/Slave Switching (plural /Slave unit Setting)	
SW5-2		
SW6-1～4	Model capacity setting	
SW7－1	ON	Operation check, Drain motor test run
	OFF	Normal operation

①Electrical Wiring Connection

- Electrical wiring work must be performed by an electlician an qualified by a local power provider. These wiring specifications are determined on the assumption that the following instructions are observed:
  ① Do not use cords other than copper ones.
  Do not use any supply line lighter than one specified in parentheses for each type below.
  –braided cord (code designation 60245 IEC 51), if allowed in the relevant part 2;
  –ordinary tough rubber sheathed cord (code designation 60245 IEC 53);
  –flat twin tinsel cord (code designation 60227 IEC 41);
  –ordinary polyvinyl chloride sheathed cord (code designation 60227 IEC 53);
  ② Connect the power supply to the outdoor unit.
  ③ Pay extra attention so as not to confuse signal line and power source line connection, because an error in their connection can be burn all the boards at once.
- Screw the line to terminal block without any looseness, certainly.
- Do not turn on the switch of power source, before all of line work is done.
- Provide a dedicated branching circuit and never share a branching circuit with other equipment. If shared, disconnection at the circuit breaker may occur, which can cause secondary damage.
- Use three-core cable as wiring between indoor and outdoor unit. As for detail, refer to "INSTALLATION MANUAL" of outdoor Unit.
- Set earth of D-type.
- Do not add cord in the middle of line (of indoor power source, remote control and signal) route on outside of unit. If connecting point is flooded, it could cause problem as for electric or communication.
  (In the case that it is necessary to set connecting point on the signal line way, perform thorough waterproof measurement.)
- Run the lines (power source, remote control and "between indoor and outdoor unit") upper ceiling through iron pipe or other tube protection to avoid the damage by mouse and so on.
- Keep "remote control line" and "power source line" away from each other on constructing of unit outside.
- Do not connect the power source line [220V/240V/380V/415V] to signal side terminal block. Otherwise, it could cause failure.
- Connection of the line ("Between indoor and outdoor unit", Earth and Remote control)
  ① Remove lid of control box before connect the above lines, and connect the lines to terminal block according to number pointed on label of terminal block.
  In addition, pay enough attention to confirm the number to lines, because there is electrical polarity except earth line.
  Furthermore, connect earth line to earth position of terminal block of power source.
  ② Install earth leakage breaker on power source line. In addition, select the type of breaker for inverter circuit as earth leakage breaker.
  ③ If the function of selected earth leakage breaker is only for earth-fault protection, hand switch (switch itself and type "B" fuse) or circuit breaker is required in series with the earth leakage breaker.
  ④ Install isolator or disconnect switch on the power supply wiring in accordance with the local codes and regulations.
  The isolator should be set in the box with key to prevent touching by another person when servicing.

Cable connection for single unit installation

①As for connecting method of power source, select from following connecting patterns. In principle, do not directly connect power souce line to inside unit.
※As for exceptional connecting method of power souce, discuss with the power provider of the country with referring to technical documents, and follow its instruction.
②For cable size and circuit breaker selection, refer to the outdoor unit installation manual.

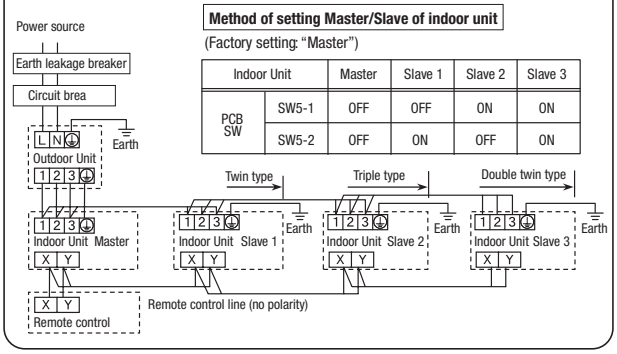


Cable connection for a V multi configuration installation

①Connect the same pairs number of terminal block "①, ②, and ③"and "Ⓧ and Ⓨ" between master and slave indoor units.
②Do the same address setting of all inside units belong to same refrigerant system by rotary switch SW2 on indoor unit's PCB (Printed circuit board).
③Set slave indoor unit as "slave 1" through "slave 3" by address switch SW5-1, 5-2 on PCB.
④When the AIR CON NO. button on the remote control unit is pressed after turning on the power, an indoor unit's address number will be displayed. Do not fail to confirm that the connected indoor unit's numbers are displayed on the remote control unit by pressing the ▲ or ▼ button.

Method of setting Master/Slave of indoor unit
(Factory setting: "Master")

Indoor Unit		Master	Slave 1	Slave 2	Slave 3
PCB SW	SW5-1	OFF	OFF	ON	ON
	SW5-2	OFF	ON	OFF	ON



②Remote Control, Wiring and functions

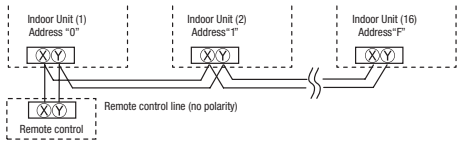
●DO NOT install it on the following places
①Places exposed to direct sunlight
②Places near heat devices
③High humidity places
④Hot surface or cold surface enough to generate condensation
⑤Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly.
⑥Uneven surface

Installation and wiring of remote control

①Install remote control referring to the attached installation manual.
②Wiring of remote control should use 0.3mm^2 ×2 core wires or cables.
The insulation thickness is 1mm or more. (on-site configuration)
③Maximum prolongation of remote control wiring is 600 m.
If the prolongation is over 100m, change to the size below.
But, wiring in the remote control case should be under 0.5mm^2 . Change the wire size outside of the case according to wire connecting. Waterproof treatment is necessary at the wire connecting section. Be careful about contact failure.
100 - 200m ..... 0.5mm^2 × 2 cores
Under 300m ..... 0.75mm^2 × 2 cores
Under 400m ..... 1.25mm^2 × 2 cores
Under 600m ..... 2.0mm^2 × 2 cores
④Avoid using multi-core cables to prevent malfunction.
⑤Keep remote control line away from earth (frame or any metal of building).
⑥Make sure to connect remote control line to the remote control and terminal block of indoor unit. (No polarity)

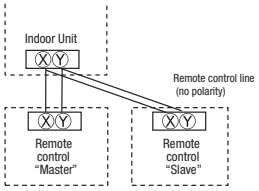
Control plural indoor units by a single remote control.

①A remote control can control plural indoor units (Up to 16).
In above setting, all plural indoor units will operate under same mode and temperature setting.
②Connect all indoor units with 2 core remote control line.
③Set unique remote control communication address from "0" to "F" to each inside unit by the rotary switch SW2 on the indoor unit's PCB.



Master/ slave setting when more than one remote control unit are used

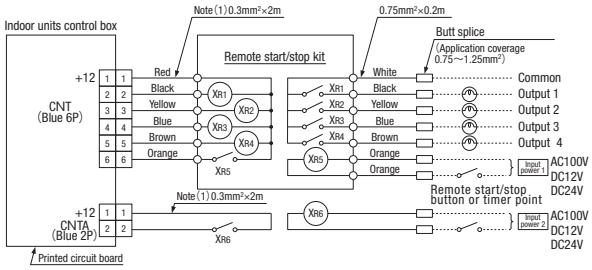
A maximum of two remote control units can be connected to one indoor unit (or one group of indoor units.)
The air conditioner operation follows the last operation of the remote control regardless of the master/slave setting of it.
Acceptable combination is "two (2) wired remote controls", "one (1) wired remote control and one (1) wireless kit" or "two (2) wireless kits".
Set one to "Master" and the other to "Slave".
Note:The setting "Remote control unit sensor enabled" is only selectable with the master remote control unit in the position where you want to check room temperature.



③Operation and confirmation from remote control

Operation from RC-EX1A	Operation from RC-E5
1 Check the number of units connected in the remote control system. It checks sub units of twin, triple or W-twin connection.	
"Menu"⇒"Next"⇒"Service & Maintenance"⇒ "Input password"⇒"IU address"	Press AIR CON NO button to display the IU address. Press the ▼ or ▲ button and check addresses of connected indoor units one by one.
2 Check if each unit is connected properly in the remote control system. It cannot check main and sub units of twin, triple or W-twin connection.	
When the operation is stopped, "Menu"⇒ "Next"⇒"Service & Maintenance"⇒ "Input password"⇒"IU address"⇒"check run mode"	If AIR CON NO. button is pressed when the operation is stopped, the indoor unit address is displayed. If you select one of addresses for connected indoor units by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button and press the (MODE) button, the unit starts to blow air.
3 Setting main/slave remote controls	
"Menu"⇒"Next"⇒"R/C function settings"⇒ "Input password"⇒"Main/Sub of R/C"	Set SW1 to "Slave" for the slave remote control unit.
4 Checking operation data	
"Menu"⇒"Next"⇒"Service & Maintenance"⇒ "Input password"⇒"Operation data"	Press the CHECK button. ⇒ "OPER DATA ▼" is displayed. ⇒ Press the (SET) button. ⇒ "DATA LOADING" is displayed. ⇒ Press the "↻ SELECT I/U" button. ⇒ Select one of addresses for connected indoor units by pressing the ▲ or ▼ button. ⇒ Press the (SET) button. ⇒ "DATA LOADING" is displayed. ⇒ Select data by pressing the ▲ or ▼ button.
5 Checking inspection display	
"Menu"⇒"Next"⇒"Service & Maintenance"⇒ "Input password"⇒"Inspection display"	Press the CHECK button. ⇒ ▼ button. ⇒ ERR DATA.⇒ Press the (SET) button. ⇒ "DATA LOADING" is displayed. ⇒ Data.
6 Cooling test run from remote control	
"Menu"⇒"Next"⇒"Installation settings"⇒ "Input password"⇒"Test run"⇒ "Cooling test run"⇒"Start"	①Start the system by pressing the ON/OFF button. ②Select " (Cool)" with the (MODE) button. ③Press the TEST button for 3 seconds or longer. The screen display will switch "TEST RUN ▼ " ④When the (SET) button is pressed while " TEST RUN ▼" is indicated, a cooling test run will start. The screen display will switch "TEST RUN ".
7 Trial operation of drain pump from remote control	
"Menu"⇒"Next"⇒"Installation settings"⇒ "Input password"⇒"Test run"⇒ "Drain pump test run"⇒"Run"	①Press the TEST button for three seconds or longer. The display will change " TEST RUN ▼" ②Press the ▼ button once and cause " DRAIN PUMP ↕ " to be displayed. ③When the (SET) button is pressed, a drain pump operation will start. Display: " TO STOP "

④ Function of CNT connector of indoor printed circuit board



Note (1): Do not use the length over 2 meter

●CNT connector (local) vendor model
Connector : Made by molex 5264-06
Terminals : Made by molex 5263 T

●Function

Output 1	Air conditioner operation output (When the air conditioner ON: X_{R1} = ON)	
Output 2	Heating output	
Output 3	Thermostat ON output (When the thermostat ON: X_{R3} = ON)	
Output 4	Air conditioner check ON (When checking air conditioner: X_{R4} = ON)	
Input	At shipping	X_{R5} OFF ⇒ ON: Air conditioner operates.
		X_{R5} ON ⇒ OFF: Air conditioner stops.
	*Functions and controls may vary depending on the switching at site.	
Input 2 (FDT etc.)	At shipping	X_{R6} OFF ⇒ ON: Air conditioner operates.
		X_{R6} ON ⇒ OFF: Air conditioner stops.
	*Functions and controls may vary depending on the switching at site.	

* Refer to I/U settings.

●CNTA connector is installed on FDT, etc. Refer to the spec. drawings.
CNTA connector (local) vendor model
Connector : Made by JST XAP02V-1-E
Terminals : Made by JST SXA-01T-P0.6

⑥ Operation and setting from remote control

A: Refer to the instruction manual for RC-EX series.
B: Refer to the installation manual for RC-EX series.
C: Loading a utility software vie Internet
○: Nearly same function setting and operations are possible.
△: Similar function setting and operations are possible.

	Setting & display item	Description	RC-EX series	RC-E5
1. Remote Control network				
1	Control plural indoor units by a single remote control	A remote control can control plural indoor units up to 16 (in one group of remote control network). An address is set to each indoor unit.	○	○
2	Master/slave setting of remote controls	A maximum of two remote controls (include option wireless) can be connected to one indoor unit. Set one to "Master" and the other to "Slave".	B	○
2. TOP screen, Switch manipulation			A	
1	Menu	"Control", "Settings", or "Details" can be selected. (3.-19.)	A	
2	Operation mode	"Cooling", "Heating", "Fan", "Dry" or "Auto" can be set.	A	○
3	Set temp.	"Set temperature" can be set by 0.5℃ interval.	A	○
4	Air flow direction	"Air flow direction". [Individual flap control setting] can be set.	A	○
5	Fan speed	"Fan speed" can be set.	A	○
6	Timer setting	"Timer operation" can be set.	A	○
7	ON/OFF	"On/Off operation of the system" can be done.	A	○
8	High power SW	"High power operation" or "Normal operation" can be selected.	A	
9	Energy-saving SW	"Energy-saving operation" or "Normal operation" can be selected.	A	
3. Energy-saving settin			A	
1	Auto OFF timer [Administrator password]	For preventing the timer from keeping ON, set hours to stop operation automatically with this timer. ・The selectable range of setting time is from 30 to 240 minutes (10minutes interval) ・When setting is "Valid", this timer will activate whenever the ON timer is set.	A	△
2	Peak-cut timer [Administrator password]	Power consumption can be reduced by restricting the maximum capacity. Set the [Start time], the [End time] and the capacity limit % (Peak-cut %). ・4-operation patterns per day can be set at maximum. ・The setting time can be changed by 5-minutes interval. ・The selectable range of capacity limit % (Peak-cut %) is from 0% to 40-80% (20% interval). ・Holiday setting is available.	A	
3	Automatic temp. set back [Administrator password]	After the elapse of the set time period, the current set temp. will be set back to the [Set back temp.] ・The setting can be done in cooling and heating mode respectively. ・The selectable range of the set time is from 20 min. to 120 min. (10 min. interval). ・Set the [Set back temp.] by 1℃ interval.	A	△
4. Individual flap control setting			A	
	Individual flap control setting	The moving range (the positions of upper limit and lower limit) of the flap for individual air outlet port can be set.	A	○
5. Ventilation				
1	External ventilation (In combination with ventilator)	On/Off operation of the external ventilator can be done. ・The settings of [Interlock] with AC (air-conditioner), [Single operation] of ventilator or operation [invalid] of ventilation can be done through [Ventilation settings] in the [Remote controller] menu.	A	○
6.Filter sign reset			A	○
1	Filter sign reset	The filter sign can be reset.	B	
2	Setting next cleaning date	The next cleaning date can be set.	A	
7.Initial settings				
1	Clock setting	The current date and time can be set or revised.	A	△
2	Date and time display	[Display] or [Hide] the date and/or time can be set, and the [12H] or [24H] display can be set.	A	
3	Summer time	When select [Valid], the +1hour adjustment of current time can be set.When select [Invalid], the [Summer time] adjustment can be reset.	A	
4	Contrast	The contrast of LCD can be adjusted higher or lower.	A	
5	Backlight	Switching on/off a light can be set and the period of the lighting time can be set within the range of 5sec-90sec (5sec interval).	A	
6	Controller sound	It can set with or without [Controller sound (beep sound)] at touching panel.	A	
8.Timer settings			A	
1	Set On timer by hour	The period of time to start operation after stopping can be set. ・The period of set time can be set within the range of 1hour-12hours (1hr interval). ・The operation mode, set temp and fan speed at starting operation can be set.	A	△
2	Set Off timer by hour	The period of time to stop operation after starting can be set. ・The period of set time can be set within the range of 1hour-12hours (1hr interval).	A	△
3	Set On timer by clock	The clock time to start operation can be set. ・The set clock time can be set by 5 minutes interval. ・[Once (one time only)] or [Everyday] operation can be switched. ・The operation mode, set temp and fan speed at starting operation can be set.	A	△
4	Set Off timer by clock	The clock time to stop operation can be set. ・The set clock time can be set by 5 minutes interval. ・[Once (one time only)] or [Everyday] operation can be switched.	A	△
5	Confirmation of timer settings	Status of timer settings can be seen.	A	
9.Weekly timer				
1	Weekly timer [Administrator password]	On timer and Off timer on weekly basis can be set. ・8-operation patterns per day can be set at a maximum. ・The setting clock time can be set by 5 minutes interval. ・Holiday setting is available. ・The operation mode, set temp and fan speed at starting operation can be set.	A	△ △ △
10.Home leave mode				
1	Home leave mode [Administrator password]	When leaving home for a long period like a vacation leave, the unit can be operated to maintain the room temperature not to be hotter in summer or not to be colder in winter. ・The judgment to switch the operation mode (Cooling⇔Heating) is done by the both factors of the set temp. and outdoor air temp. ・The set temp. and fan speed can be set.	A	

⑥Operation and setting from remote control (continued)

	Setting & display item	Description	RC-EX series	RC-E5
11. Administrator settings		[Administrator password]	A	
1	Enable/Disable setting	・Enable/Disable setting of operation can be set. [On/Off] [Change set temp.] [Change operation mode] [Change air flow direction] [Individual flap control setting][Fan speed] [High power operation] [Energy-saving operation] [Timer settings] [Weekly timer setting] ・Request for administrator password can be set. [Individual flap control setting][Weekly timer][Energy-saving setting][Home leave mode][Administrator settings]	A	△
2	Silent mode timer	The period of time to operate the outdoor unit by prioritizing the quietness can be set. ・The [Start time] and the [End time] for operating outdoor unit in silent mode can be set. ・The period of the operation time can be set once a day by 5 minutes interval.	A	△
3	Setting temp. range	The upper/lower limit of indoor temp. setting range can be set. ・The limitation of indoor temp. setting range can be set for each operation mode in cooling and heating.	A	△
4	Temp. increment setting	The temp increment setting can be changed by 0.5℃ or 1.0℃.	A	
5	RC display setting	Register [Room name] [Name of I/U] Display [indoor temp.] or not. Display [inspection code] or not. Display [Heating stand-by] [Defrost operation] [Auto cooling/heating] or not	A	 ○ △ ○
6	Change administrator password	The administrator password can be changed. (Default setting is "0000") The administrator password can be reset.	A B	
12.Installer settings		[Service password]	B	
1	Installation date	The [Installation date] can be registered. ・When registering the [Installation date], the [Next service date] is displayed automatically. (For changing the [Next service date]. please refer the item of [Service & Maintenance].)	B	
2	Service contact	The [Service contact] can be registered and can be displayed on the RC. ・The [Contact company] can be registered within 10 characters. ・The [Contact phone] can be registered within 13 digits.	B	
3	Test run	On/Off operation of the test run can be done.	B	
	Cooling test run	The [Cooling test run] can be done at 5℃ of set temp. for 30 minutes.		○
	Drain pump test run	Only the drain pump can be operated.		○
	Compressor Hz fixed operation	The [Test run] operation can be done with fixed compressor Hz set by installer.		○
4	Static pressure adjustment	In case of combination with only the ducted indoor unit which has a function of static pressure adjustment, the static pressure is adjustable.	B	
5	Change auto-address	The set address of each indoor unit decided by auto-address setting method can be changed to any other address. (For multiple KX units only)	B	△
6	Address setting of Main IU	Main indoor unit address can be set. ・Only the Main indoor unit can change operation mode and the Sub indoor units dominated by the Main indoor unit shall follow. ・The Main indoor unit can domain 10 indoor units at a maximum.	B	△
13.RC function settings		[Service password]	B	
1	Main/Sub RC setting	The setting of [Main/Sub RC] can be changed.	B	○
2	RC sensor	The offset value of [RC sensor] sensing temp. can be set respectively in heating and cooling.	B	○
3	9 RC sensor adjustment	The offset value of [RC sensor] sensing temp. can be set respectively in heating and cooling. ・The setting range of offset value is ±3℃ both in cooling and heating.	B	△
4	12 Operation mode	The [Valid/Invalid] setting of [Auto][Cooling][Heating] and [Dry] can be done respectively.	B	○
5	13 Fan speed	The setting of [Fan speed] can be done from following patterns.・1-speed, 2-speeds (Hi-Me), 2-speeds (Hi-Lo), 3-speeds, 4-speeds.	B	○
6	14 External input	The applicable range ([Individual] or [All units]) of CnT input to the multiple indoor units connected in one control system. ・[Individual] : Only the unit received CnT input signal.・[All units] : All the units connected to one control system received CnT input signal.	B	○
7	15 Ventilation setting	The setting of [Invalid] operation of ventilator, [Interlock] with AC or [Independent] of ventilator can be selected. ・When setting [Interlock], the operation of external ventilator is interlocked with the operation of AC ・When setting [Independent], only the operation of external ventilator is available.	B	○
8	16 Flap control	The [Flap control] method can be switched to[Stop at fixed position] or [Stop at any position]・[Stop at fixed position] : Stop the flap at a certain position among the designated 4 positions.・[Stop at any position] : Stop the flap at any arbitrary position just after the stopping command from RC was sent.	B	○
9	17 Auto-restart	The operation control method after recovery of power blackout happened during operation can be set.	B	○
10	18 Auto temp. setting	[Valid] or [Invalid] of [Auto temp. setting] can be selected.	B	
11	19 Auto fan speed setting	[Valid] or [Invalid] of [Auto fan speed setting] can be selected.	B	
14. I/U settings		[Service password]	B	
1	High ceiling	The fan tap of indoor fan can be changed. ・[Standard] [High ceiling 1] [High ceiling 2] can be selected.	B	○
2	Filter sign	The setting of filter sign display timer can be done from following patterns.	B	○
3	External input 1	The content of control by external input can be changed.・The selectable contents of control are [On/Off] [Permission/Prohibition] [Cooling/heating] [Emergency stop]	B	○
4	External input 1 signal	The type of external input signal ([Level input]/[Pulse input]) can be changed.	B	○
5	External input 2	・The selectable contents of control are [On/Off] [Permission/Prohibition] [Cooling/heating] [Emergency stop]	B	
6	External input 2 signal	The type of external input signal ([Level input]/[Pulse input]) can be changed.	B	
7	Heating thermo-off temp. adjust.	The judgment temp. of heating thermo-off can be adjusted within the range from 0 to +3℃ (1℃ interval)	B	△
8	Return air sensor adjust.	The sensing temp. of return air temp. sensor built in the indoor unit can be adjusted within the range of ±2℃.	B	△
9	Fan control in heating thermo OFF	The fan control method at heating thermo-off can be changed.・The selectable fan control methods are [Low] [Set fan speed] [Intermittent] [Stop].	B	○
10	Anti-frost temp.	The judgment temp. of anti-frost control for the indoor unit in cooling can be changed to [Temp. High] or [Temp. Low].	B	○
11	Anti-frost control	When the anti-frost control of indoor unit in cooling is activated, the fan speed can be changed.	B	○
12	Drain pump operation	In any operation mode in addition to cooling and dry mode, the setting of drain pump operation can be done.	B	○
13	Residual fan operation in cooling	The time period of residual fan operation after stopping or thermo-off in cooling mode can be set.	B	○
14	Residual fan operation in heating	The time period of residual fan operation after stopping or thermo-off in heating mode can be set.	B	○
15	Intermittent fan operation in heating	The fan operation rule following the residual fan operation after stopping or thermo-off in heating mode can be set.	B	○
16	Fan circulator operation	In case that the fan is operated as the circulator, the fan control rule can be set.	B	
17	Control pressure adjust. (For OA processing unit only)	When only the OA processing units are operated, control pressure value can be changed.	B	○
18	Auto operation mode	The [Auto rule selection] for switching the operation mode automatically can be selected from 3 patterns.	B	
19	Thermo. rule setting	When selecting [Outdoor air temp. control], the judgment temp can be offset by outdoor temp..	B	
20	Auto fan speed control	Under the [Auto fan speed control] mode, the switching range of fan speed can be selected from following 2 patterns [Auto 1] [Auto 2]. ・[Auto 1] : Hi ⇔Me⇔Lo・[Auto 2] : P-hi⇔Hi⇔Me⇔Lo	B	
15.Service & Maintenance		[Service password]	B	
1	IU address No.	Max. 16 indoor units can be connected to one remote control, and all address No. of the connected indoor units can be displayed. ・The indoor unit conforming to the address No. can be identified by selecting the address No. and tapping [Check] to operate the indoor fan.	B	○
2	Next service date	The [Next service date] can be registered.・The [Next service date] and [Service contact] is displayed on the [Periodical check] message screen.	AB	
3	Operation data	Total 39 items of [Operation data] for indoor unit and outdoor unit can be displayed.	B	○
4	Error history	[Date and time of error occurred] [I/U address] [Error code] for Max. 16 latest cases of error history can be displayed.	B	△
	Display anomaly data	The operation data just before the latest error stop can be displayed.	B	
	Reset periodical check	The timer for the periodical check can be reset.	B	○
5	Saving I/U settings	The I/U settings memorized in the indoor PCB connected to the remote control can be saved in the memory of the remote control.	B	
6	Special settings	[Erase I/U address] [CPU reset] [Initializing] [Touch panel calibration]	B	△
16.Inspection			A	△
	Confirmation of Inspection	The address No, of anomalous indoor/outdoor unit and error code are displayed.		
17.PC connection			C	
	USB connection	Weekly timer setting and etc., can be set from PC.		

PSB012D994

(2) FDU series

Electrical wiring work must be performed by an electrician qualified by a local power provider according to the electrical installation technical standards and interior wiring regulations applicable to the installation site.

Security instructions

- **Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.**
- **The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION .**
  ⚠WARNING : Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠CAUTION : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
- **The meanings of "Marks" used here are as shown on the right:**
  ⃠ Never do it under any circumstances. ❗ Always do it according to the instruction.
- **Accord with following items. Otherwise, there will be the risks of electric shock and fire caused by overheating or short circuit.**

⚠WARNING

- **Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient capacity and improper work can cause electric shock and fire.
- **Use specified wire for electrical wiring, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.**
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire.
- **Arrange the electrical wires in the control box properly to prevent them from rising. Fit the lid of the services panel property.**
  Improper fitting may cause abnormal heat and fire.
- **Use the genuine optional parts. And installation should be performed by a specialist.**
  If you install the unit by yourself, it could cause water leakage, electric shock and fire.
- **Do not repair by yourself. And consult with the dealer about repair.**
  Improper repair may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Consult the dealer or a specialist about removal of the air conditioner.**
  Improper installation may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Turn off the power source during servicing or inspection work.**
  If the power is supplied during servicing or inspection work, it could cause electric shock and injury by the operating fan.
- **Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.**
  It could cause electric shock, unit failure and improper running.

⚠CAUTION

- **Perform earth wiring surely.**
  Do not connect the earth wiring to the gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod and telephone earth wiring. Improper earth could cause unit failure and electric shock or fire due to a short circuit.
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed.**
  If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it could cause electric shocks or fire.
- **Make sure to install earth leakage breaker on power source line. (countermeasure thing to high harmonics.)**
  Absence of breaker could cause electric shock.
- **Use the circuit breaker of correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect one could cause the system failure and fire.
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse of correct capacity where a fuse should be used.**
  Connecting the circuit by wire or copper wire could cause unit failure and fire.
- **Use power source line of correct capacity.**
  Using incorrect capacity one could cause electric leak, abnormal heat generation and fire.
- **Do not mingle solid cord and stranded cord on power source and signal side terminal block.**
  In addition, do not mingle difference capacity solid or stranded cord.
  Inappropriate cord setting could cause loosing screw on terminal block, bad electrical contact, smoke and fire.
- **Do not turn off the power source immediately after stopping the operation.**
  Be sure to wait for more than 5 minutes. Otherwise it could cause water leakage or breakdown.
- **Do not control the operation with the circuit breaker.**
  It could cause fire or water leakage. In addition, the fan may start operation unexpectedly and it may cause injury.

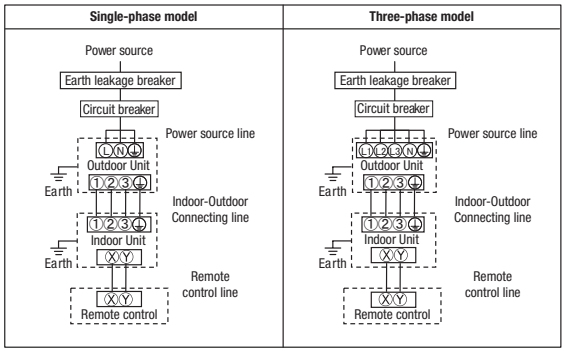
①Electrical Wiring Connection

- Use three-core cable as wiring between indoor and outdoor unit. As for detail, refer to "INSTALLATION MANUAL" of outdoor Unit.
- Set earth of D-type.
- Keep "remote control line" and "power source line" away from each other on constructing of unit outside.
- Run the lines (power source, remote control and "between indoor and outdoor unit") upper ceiling through iron pipe or other tube protection to avoid the damage by mouse and so on.
- Do not add cord in the middle of line route (of power source, remote control and "between indoor and outdoor unit") on outside of unit. If connecting point is flooded, it could cause problem as for electric or communication. (In the case that it is necessary to set connecting point on the way, perform thorough waterproof measurement.)
- Do not connect the power source line [220V/240V/380V/415V] to signal side terminal block. Otherwise, it could cause failure.
- Screw the line to terminal block without any looseness, certainly.
- Do not turn on the switch of power source, before all of line work is done.
- Connection of the line ("Between indoor and outdoor unit", Earth and Remote control)

①Remove lid of control box before connect the above lines, and connect the lines to terminal block according to number pointed on label of terminal block.
In addition, pay enough attention to confirm the number to lines, because there is electrical polarity except earth line. Furthermore, connect earth line to earth position of terminal block of power source.
②Install earth leakage breaker on power source line. In addition, select the type of breaker for inverter circuit as earth leakage breaker.
③If the function of selected earth leakage breaker is only for earth-fault protection, hand switch (switch itself and type "B" fuse) or circuit breaker is required in series with the earth leakage breaker.
④Install isolator or disconnect switch on the power supply wiring in accordance with the local codes and regulations.
The isolator should be set in the box with key to prevent touching by another person when servicing.

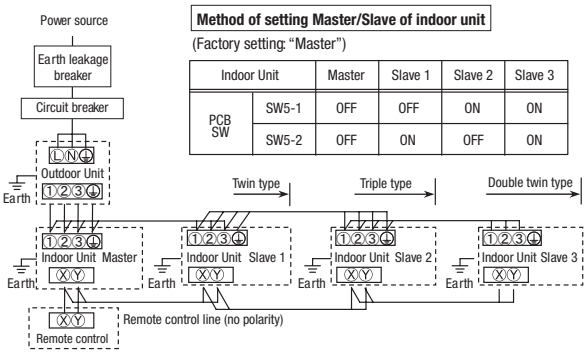
Cable connection for single unit installation

①As for connecting method of power source, select from following connecting patterns. In principle, do not directly connect power souce line to inside unit.
※As for exceptional connecting method of power souce, discuss with the power provider of the country with referring to technical documents, and follow its instruction.
②For cable size and circuit breaker selection, refer to the outdoor unit installation manual.



Cable connection for a V multi configuration installation

①Connect the same pairs number of terminal block "①, ②, and ③"and " Ⓧ and Ⓨ" between master and slave indoor units.
②Do the same address setting of all inside units belong to same refrigerant system by rotary switch SW2 on indoor unit's PCB (Printed circuit board).
③Set slave indoor unit as "slave 1" through "slave 3" by address switch SW5-1, 5-2 on PCB.
④When the AIR CON NO. button on the remote control unit is pressed after turning on the power, an indoor unit's address number will be displayed. Do not fail to confirm that the connected indoor unit's numbers are displayed on the remote control unit by pressing the ▲ or ▼ button.



Method of setting Master/Slave of indoor unit
(Factory setting: "Master")

Indoor Unit		Master	Slave 1	Slave 2	Slave 3
PCB SW	SW5-1	OFF	OFF	ON	ON
	SW5-2	OFF	ON	OFF	ON

②Remote Control, Wiring and functions

●DO NOT install it on the following places
①Places exposed to direct sunlight
②Places near heat devices
③High humidity places
④Hot surface or cold surface enough to generate condensation
⑤Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly.
⑥Uneven surface

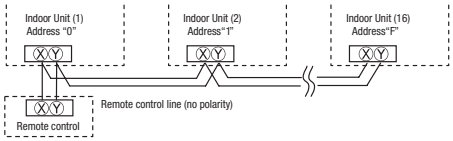
Installation and wiring of remote control

①Install remote control referring to the attached installation manual.
②Wiring of remote control should use 0.3mm² ×2 core wires or cables.
The insulation thickness is 1mm or more. (on-site configuration)
③Maximum prolongation of remote control wiring is 600 m.
If the prolongation is over 100m, change to the size below.
But, wiring in the remote control case should be under 0.5mm² . Change the wire size outside of the case according to wire connecting. Waterproof treatment is necessary at the wire connecting section. Be careful about contact failure.
100 - 200m ..... 0.5mm² × 2 cores
Under 300m ..... 0.75mm² × 2 cores
Under 400m ..... 1.25mm² × 2 cores
Under 600m ..... 2.0mm² × 2 cores
④Avoid using multi-core cables to prevent malfunction.
⑤Keep remote control line away from earth (frame or any metal of building).
⑥Make sure to connect remote control line to the remote control and terminal block of indoor unit. (No polarity)

Control plural indoor units by a single remote control

①A remote control can control plural indoor units (Up to 16).
In above setting, all plural indoor units will operate under same mode and temperature setting.
②Connect all indoor units with 2 core remote control line.
③Set unique remote control communication address from "0" to "F" to each inside unit by the rotary switch SW2 on the indoor unit's PCB.

After a unit is energized, it is possible to display an indoor unit address by pressing AIR CON NO. button on the remote control unit. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to make sure that all indoor units connected are displayed in order.



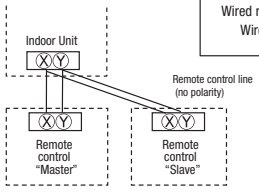
Confirming method of indoor units

When indoor unit address number is displayed on remote control, pushing the (MODE) button to make the indoor unit with that number blow air (Display example:" I/U001 ≋ ")
Push the (MODE) button again to stop the operation.
However, this operation is invalid on the air-conditioning running.

Master/ slave setting when more than one remote control unit are used

A maximum of two remote control units can be connected to one indoor unit (or one group of indoor units.)
The air conditioner operation follows the last operation of the remote control regardless of the master/slave setting of it.
Acceptable combination is "two (2) wired remote controls", "one (1) wired remote control and one (1) wireless kit" or "two (2) wireless kits".
Set SW1 (wired remote control) or SW1-2 (wireless kit) to "Slave" for the slave remote control unit. It was factory set to "Master" for shipment.
Note:The setting "Remote control unit sensor enabled" is only selectable with the master remote control unit in the position where you want to check room temperature.

Switch	setting	contents
Wired remote control: SW1 Wireless kit: SW1-2	M	Master remote control
	S	Slave remote control



③Trial operation

The method of trial cooling operation

Operate the remote control unit as follows.
1. Starting a cooling test run.
①Start the system by pressing the ⏻ON/OFF button.
②Select " ❄ (Cool)" with the (MODE) button.
③Press the TEST button for 3 seconds or longer.
The screen display will switch to: " ❄ TEST RUN ▼ "
④When the (SET) button is pressed while " ❄ TEST RUN ▼ " is indicated, a cooling test run will start.
The screen display will switch to " ❄ TEST RUN ".
2. Ending a cooling test run.
Pressing the ⏻ON/OFF button, the (TEMP) button or (MODE) button will end a cooling test run. (Cooling test run will end after 30 minutes pass.)
" ❄ TEST RUN " shown on the screen will go off.

Checking operation data

Operation data can be checked with remote control unit operation.
1. Press the CHECK button.
The display change " OPER DATA ▼"
2. Press the (SET) button while " OPER DATA ▼ " is displayed.
3. When only one indoor unit is connected to remote control, " DATA LOADING " is displayed (blinking indication during data loading).
Next, operation data of the indoor unit will be displayed. Skip to step 7.
4. When plural indoor units is connected, the smallest address number of indoor unit among all connected indoor unit is displayed.
[Example]:
"☝◆ SELECT I/U" (blinking 1 seconds)→
"I/U000 ▲" blinking.
5. Select the indoor unit number you would like to have data displayed with the ▲ ▼ button.
6. Determine the indoor unit number with the (SET) button.
(The indoor unit number changes from blinking indication to continuous indication)
" I/U000 " (The address of selected indoor unit is blinking for 2 seconds.)
↓
" DATA LOADING " (A blinking indication appears while data loaded.)
Next, the operation data of the indoor unit is indicated.
7. Upon operation of the ▲ ▼ button, the current operation data is displayed in order from data number 01.
The items displayed are in the above table.
※Depending on models, the items that do not have corresponding data are not displayed.
8. To display the data of a different indoor unit, press the AIR CON NO. button, which allows you to go back to the indoor unit selection screen.
9. Pressing the ⏻ON/OFF button will stop displaying data.
Pressing the (RESET) button during remote control unit operation will undo your last operation and allow you to go back to the previous screen.

Number		Data Item
01	❄	(Operation Mode)
02	SET TEMP ___℃	(Set Temperature)
03	RETURN AIR ___℃	(Return Air Temperature)
04	🖳SENSOR ___℃	(Remote Control Thermistor Temperature)
05	THI-R1 ___℃	(Indoor Unit Heat Exchanger Thermistor / U Bend)
06	THI-R2 ___℃	(Indoor Unit Heat Exchanger Thermistor /Capillary)
07	THI-R3 ___℃	(Indoor Unit Heat Exchanger Thermistor /Gas Header)
08	I/U FANSPEED ___	(Indoor Unit Fan Speed)
09	DEMAND ___Hz	(Frequency Requirements)
10	ANSWER ___Hz	(Response Frequency)
11	I/U EEV ____P	(Pulse of Indoor Unit Expansion Valve)
12	TOTAL I/U RUN ___H	(Total Running Hours of The Indoor Unit)
21	OUTDOOR ___℃	(Outdoor Air Temperature)
22	THO-R1 ___℃	(Outdoor Unit Heat Exchanger Thermistor)
23	THO-R2 ___℃	(Outdoor Unit Heat Exchanger Thermistor)
24	COMP ___Hz	(Compressor Frequency)
25	HP ___MPa	(High Pressure)
26	LP ___MPa	(Low Pressure)
27	Td ___℃	(Discharge Pipe Temperature)
28	COMP BOTTOM ___℃	(Comp Bottom Temperature)
29	CT ___AMP	(Current)
30	TARGET SH ___℃	(Target Super Heat)
31	SH ___℃	(Super Heat)
32	TDSH ___℃	(Discharge Pipe Super Heat)
33	PROTECTION No.	(Protection State No. of The Compressor)
34	O/U FANSPEED ___	(Outdoor Unit Fan Speed)
35	63H1	(63H1 On/Off)
36	DEFROST	(Defrost Control On/Off)
37	TOTAL COMP RUN ___H	(Total Running Hours of The Compressor)
38	O/U EEV1 ____P	(Pulse of The Outdoor Unit Expansion Valve EEVC)
39	O/U EEV2 ____P	(Pulse of The Outdoor Unit Expansion Valve EEVH)

※Depending on outdoor unit model, there are data not shown.

◎If two (2) remote controls are connected to one (1) inside unit, only the master control is available for trial operation and confirmation of operation data. (The slave remote control is not available.)

Trail operation of drain pump

Drain pump operation from remote control unit is possible. Operate a remote control unit by following the steps described below.
1. To start a forced drain pump operation.
①Press the TEST button for three seconds or longer.
The display will change " ❄ TEST RUN ▼ "
②Press the ▼ button once and cause " DRAIN PUMP ▲▼ " to be displayed.
③When the (SET) button is pressed, a drain pump operation will start.
Display: " ☝⏲ TO STOP "
2. To cancel a drain pump operation.
①If either (SET) or ⏻ON/OFF button is pressed, a forced drain pump operation will stop. The air conditioning system will become OFF.

◎If two (2) remote controls are connected to one (1) inside unit, only the master control is available for trial operation and confirmation of operation data. (The slave remote control is not available.)

④ Function Setting by Remote Control

The functional setting

- The initial function setting for typical using is performed automatically for a remote control unit and an indoor unit by the door unit connected, when remote control and inside unit are connected.
  As long as they are used in a typical manner, there will be no need to change the initial settings.
  If you would like to change the initial setting marked "◯", set your desired setting as for the selected item.
  The procedure of functional setting is shown as the following diagram.
  As for detail of setting, refer to the installation manual of remote control.

[Flow of function setting]

Start : While indoor unit do not operate, press " " (SET) and " " (MODE) button for 3 seconds at the same time.
Finalize : Press " " (SET) button.
Reset : Press " " (RESET) button.
Select : Press ▲ ▼ button.
End : Press ⓘON/OFF button.
It is possible to finish above setting on the way, and unfinished change of setting is unavailable.
"◯" : Initial settings
"※" : Automatic criterion
As for detail, refer to the installation manual of remote control.

During air-conditioner stopping push (SET) + (MODE) button simultaneously for 3 seconds → FUNCTION SET ▼

Consult the technical data etc for each control details

Record and save the setting

FUNCTION ▼ (Remote control function)

No.	Function	Setting	Initial	Description
01	ESP SET	ESP VALID	◯	Validate setting of ESP:External Static Pressure
		ESP INVALID		Invalidate setting of ESP
02	AUTO RUN SET	AUTO RUN ON	※	
		AUTO RUN OFF	※	Automatic operation is impossible
03	TEMP SW	VALID	◯	
		INVALID		Temperature setting button is not working
04	MODE SW	VALID	◯	
		INVALID		Mode button is not working
05	ON/OFF SW	VALID	◯	
		INVALID		On/Off button is not working
06	FAN SPEED SW	VALID	※	
		INVALID	※	Fan speed button is not working
07	LOUVER SW	VALID	※	
		INVALID	※	Louver button is not working
08	TIMER SW	VALID	◯	
		INVALID		Timer button is not working
09	SENSOR SET	SENSOR OFF	◯	Remote thermistor is not working.
		SENSOR ON		Remote thermistor is working.
		SENSOR +3.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing +3.0°C increase in temperature.
		SENSOR +2.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing +2.0°C increase in temperature.
		SENSOR +1.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing +1.0°C increase in temperature.
		SENSOR -1.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing -1.0°C increase in temperature.
		SENSOR -2.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing -2.0°C increase in temperature.
		SENSOR -3.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing -3.0°C increase in temperature.
10	AUTO RESTART	INVALID	◯	
		VALID		
11	VENT LINK SET	NO VENT	◯	Connect the Single split series and the VRF series to the indoor board CNT and indoor board CND respectively. If a ventilation device is connected, been geared with the motion of indoor device, the ventilation device is operated/stopped. By connecting the ventilation device with the Single split series device to indoor board CNT, the VRF series device to CND, you can operate/stop the ventilation device independently by the handling of ventilation button.
		VENT LINK		
		NO VENT LINK		
12	TEMP RANGE SET	INDN CHANGE	◯	If you change the range of set temperature, the indication of set temperature will vary following the control.
		NO INDN CHANGE		If you change the range of set temperature, the indication of set temperature will not vary following the control, and keep the set temperature.
13	I/U FAN	HI-MID-LO	※	Airflow of fan becomes the three speed of (fan icons) or (fan icons).
		HI-LO	※	Airflow of fan becomes the two speed of (fan icons).
		HI-MID		Airflow of fan becomes the two speed of (fan icons).
		1 FAN SPEED	※	Airflow of fan is fixed at one speed.
14	POSITION			If you want to change the remote control function "14 POSITION", You must change the indoor function "04 POSITION" accordingly.
		4POSITION STOP	◯	You can select the louver stop position in the four.
		FREE STOP		The louver can stop at any position.
15	MODEL TYPE	HEAT PUMP	※	
		COOLING ONLY	※	
16	EXTERNAL CONTROL SET	INDIVIDUAL	◯	If you input into the indoor printed circuit board CNT from outside, the indoor device will be operated independently following the input from outside.
		FOR ALL UNITS		If you input into indoor printed circuit board CNT from outside, All units which share the same one remote control network work following the input from outside.
17	ROOM TEMP INDICATION SET	INDICATION OFF	◯	
		INDICATION ON		In normal working indication, indoor unit temperature is indicated instead of airflow. (Only the master remote control can be indicated.)
18	INDICATION	INDICATION ON	◯	
		INDICATION OFF		Heating preparation indication should not be indicated.
19	℃/℉ SET	℃	◯	Temperature indication is by degree C
		℉		Temperature indication is by degree F

(Indoor unit function) I/U FUNCTION ▲

Only when plural indoor units are connected
Indoor No. selection (Note3): I/U000 ▲, I/U001 ⇕, I/U002 ⇕, I/U003 ⇕, I/U004 ⇕

If to change re-set with other indoor unit, push AIRCON NO. button, and indoor selection indication (for example: I/U 000) is set back.

No.	Function	Setting	Initial	Description
02	FAN SPEED SET	STANDARD	◯	
		HIGH SPEED 1		(Note2)
		HIGH SPEED 2		
03	FILTER SIGN SET	INDICATION OFF		
		TYPE 1	◯	The filter sign is indicated after running for 180 hours.
		TYPE 2		The filter sign is indicated after running for 600 hours.
		TYPE 3		The filter sign is indicated after running for 1000 hours.
		TYPE 4		The filter sign is indicated after running for 1000 hours, then it will be stopped by compulsion after 24 hours.
04	POSITION			If to change the indoor function "04 POSITION", The remote control function "14 POSITION" should be changed accordingly.
		4POSITION STOP	◯	Select the louver stop position in four.
		FREE STOP		The louver can stop at any positon.
05	EXTERNAL INPUT	LEVEL INPUT	◯	
		PULSE INPUT		
06	OPERATION PERMISSION/PROHIBITION	INVALID	◯	
		VALID		Make permission/prohibition control of function be in effect.
07	EMERGENCY STOP	INVALID	◯	
		VALID		With the VRF series, it is used to stop all indoor units connected with the same outdoor unit immediately. When stop signal is inputed from remote on-off terminal "CNT-6", all indoor units are stopped immediately.
08	SP OFFSET	OFFSET +3.0℃		To be reset for producing +3.0°C increase in temperature during heating.
		OFFSET +2.0℃		To be reset for producing +2.0°C increase in temperature during heating.
		OFFSET +1.0℃		To be reset for producing +1.0°C increase in temperature during heating.
		NO OFFSET	◯	
09	RETURN AIR TEMP	OFFSET +2.0℃		To be reset producing +2.0°C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
		OFFSET +1.5℃		To be reset producing +1.5°C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
		OFFSET +1.0℃		To be reset producing +1.0°C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
		NO OFFSET	◯	
		OFFSET -1.0℃		To be reset producing -1.0°C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
		OFFSET -1.5℃		To be reset producing -1.5°C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
		OFFSET -2.0℃		To be reset producing -2.0°C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
10	FAN CONTROL	LOW FAN SPEED	◯	When heating thermostat is off, to be operated with low air flow.
		SET FAN SPEED		When heating thermostat is off, to be operated with set air flow.
		INTERMITTENCE		When heating thermostat is off, to be operated intermittently.
		FAN OFF		When heating thermostat is off, the fan stops. When the remote thermistor is working, "FAN OFF" is set automatically. Do not set when the indoor unit's thermistor is working.
11	FROST PREVENTION TEMP			Change of indoor heat exchanger temperature to start frost prevention control.
		TEMP HIGH		
		TEMP LOW	◯	
12	FROST PREVENTION CONTROL			Working only with the single split series.
		FAN CONTROL ON	◯	To control frost prevention, the indoor fan tap is raised.
		FAN CONTROL OFF		
13	DRAIN PUMP LINK	(cool)(dry)	◯	Drain pump is on during cooling and dry.
		(cool)(dry) AND (heat)		Drain pump is on during cooling, dry and heating.
		(cool)(dry) AND (heat) AND (fan)		Drain pump is on during cooling, dry, heating and fan.
		(cool)(dry) AND (fan)		Drain pump is on during cooling, dry and fan.
14	FAN REMAINING (cooling)	NO REMAINING	◯	After cooling is stopped or cooling thermostat is off, the fan does not perform extra operation.
		0.5 HOUR		After cooling is stopped or cooling thermostat is off, the fan perform extra operation for half an hour.
		1 HOUR		After cooling is stopped or cooling thermostat is off, the fan perform extra operation for an hour.
		6 HOUR		After cooling is stopped or cooling thermostat is off, the fan perform extra operation for six hours.
15	FAN REMAINING (heating)	NO REMAINING	◯	After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is off, the fan does not perform extra operation.
		0.5 HOUR		After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is off,the fan perform extra operation for half an hour.
		2 HOUR		After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is off,the fan perform extra operation for two hours.
		6 HOUR		After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is off, the fan perform extra operation for six hours.
16	FAN INTERMITTENCE	NO REMAINING	◯	
		20minOFF 5minON		During heating is stopped or heating thermostat is off, the fan perform intermittent operation for five minutes after twenty minutes' off with low airflow.
		5minOFF 5minON		During heating is stopped or heating thermostat is off, the fan perform intermittent operation for five minutes after five minutes' off with low airflow.

ON/OFF button (finished)

Note 1: The initial setting marked "※" is decided by connected indoor and outdoor unit, and is automatically defined as following table.

Function No.	Item	Default	Model
Function 02 of remote control	AUTO RUN SET	AUTO RUN ON	"Auto-RUN" mode selectable indoor unit.
		AUTO RUN OFF	Indoor unit without "Auto-RUN" mode
Function 06 of remote control	FAN SPEED SW	VALID	Indoor unit with two or three step of air flow setting
		INVALID	Indoor unit with only one of air flow setting
Function 07 of remote control	LOUVER SW	VALID	Indoor unit with automatically swing louver
		INVALID	Indoor unit without automatically swing louver
Function 13 of remote control	I/U FAN	HI-MID-LO	Indoor unit with three step of air flow setting
		HI-LO	Indoor unit with two step of air flow setting
		HI-MID	
		1 FAN SPEED	Indoor unit with only one of air flow setting
Function 15 of remote control	MODEL TYPE	HEAT PUMP	Heat pump unite
		COOLING ONLY	Exclusive cooling unite

Note 2: Fan setting of "HIGH SPEED"

Fan tap		Indoor unit air flow setting			
		(4-step fan icons)	(3-step fan icons)	(2-step fan icons)	(2-step fan icons)
FAN SPEED SET	STANDARD	UH - Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Lo	Hi - Me
	HIGH SPEED1, 2	UH - UH - Hi - Me	UH - Hi - Me	UH - Me	UH - Hi

Initial function setting of some indoor unit is "HIGH SPEED"

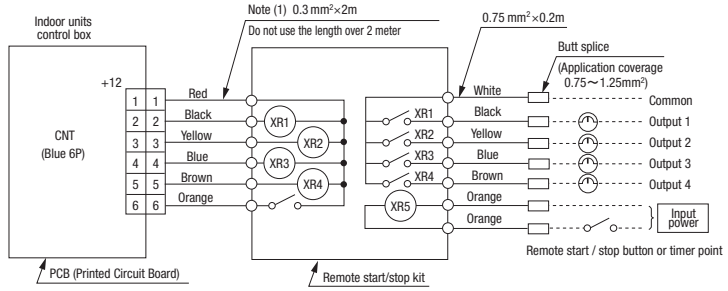
Note 3: As for plural indoor unit, set indoor functions to each master and slave indoor unit.
But only master indoor unit is received the setting change of indoor unit function "05 EXTERNAL INPUT" and "06 PERMISSION / PROHIBISHION".

⑤Control mode switching

●The control content of indoor units can be switched in following way. (▭ is the default setting)

Switch No.	Control Content	
SW2	Indoor unit address (0-Fh)	
SW5-1	Master/Slave Switching (plural /Slave unit Setting)	
SW5-2		
SW6-1～4	Model capacity setting	
SW7－1	ON	Operation check, Drain motor test run
	OFF	Normal operation

⑥Function of CNT connector of indoor printed circuit board



●CNT connector (local) vendor model
Connector : Made by molex 5264 - 06
Terminals : Made by molex 5263T

●Function

Output 1	Operation output (there is output when unit is in operation.)
Output 2	Heating output (there is output when operation MODE is HEATING.)
Output 3	Compressor ON output (there is output when compressor is in operation.)
Output 4	Inspection output (there is output when unit is stopped by error.)
Input 5	Remote operation input (Volt-free contact) (Inputted to operate unit)

⑦Troubleshooting

The operation data is saved when the situation of abnormal operation happen, and the data can be confirmed by remote control.
[Operating procedure]

1. Press the CHECK button.
   The display change " OPER DATA ▼ "
2. Once, press the ▼ button, and the display change " ERROR DATA ♟ ".
3. Press the ○ (SET) button and abnormal operation data mode is started.
4. When only one indoor unit is connected to remote control, following is displayed.
   ①The case that there is history of abnormal operation.
   → Error code and " DATA LOADING " is displayed.
   [Example]: [E8] (ERROR CODE)
   " DATA LOADING " is displayed (blinking indication during data loading).
   Next, the abnormal operation data of the indoor unit will be displayed.
   Skip to step 8.
   ②The case that there is not history of abnormal operation.
   → " NO ERROR " is displayed for 3 seconds and this mode is closed.
5. When plural indoor units is connected, following is displayed.
   ①The case that there is history of abnormal operation.
   → Error code and the smallest address number of indoor unit among all connected indoor unit is displayed.
   [Example]: [E8] (ERROR CODE)
   " I/U000 ♟ " blinking
   ②The case that there is not history of abnormal operation.
   → Only address number is displayed.
6. Select the indoor unit number you would like to have data displayed with the ▲ ▼ button.
7. Determine the indoor unit number with the ○ (SET) button.
   [Example]: [E8] (ERROR CODE)
   " I/U000 ♟ " (The address of selected indoor unit is blinking for 2 seconds.)
   ↓
   [E8] "DATA LOADING " (A blinking indication appears while data loaded.)
   Next, the abnormal operation data is indicated.
   If the indoor unit doing normal operation is selected, NO ERROR " is displayed for 3 seconds and address of indoor unit is displayed.
8. By the ▲ ▼ button, the abnormal operation data is displayed.
   Displayed data item is based on ③Trial operation .
   ※Depending on models, the items that do not have corresponding data are not displayed.
9. To display the data of a different indoor unit, press the AIR CON No. button, which allows you to go back to the indoor unit slection screen.
10. Pressing the ①ON/OFF button will stop displaying data.

Pressing the ◇ (RESET) button during remote control unit operation will undo your last operation and allow you to go back to the previous screen.

◎If two (2) remote controls are connected to one (1) indoor unit, only the master control is available for trial operation and confirmation of operation data. (The slave remote control is not available.)

Error Code of indoor unit

Display on remote control	LED on indoor circuit board		Content
	red (checking)	green (normal)	
Off	Off	Continuous blinking	Normal
	Off	Off	Fault on power, indoor power off or lack phase
E1	Off	Continuous blinking	Fault on the transmission between indoor circuit board and remote control
	Not sure	Not sure	Indoor computer abnormal
E5	Blinking twice	Continuous blinking	Fault on outdoor-indoor transmission
E6	Blinking once	Continuous blinking	Indoor heat exchange sensor interrupted or short-circuit
E7	Blinking once	Continuous blinking	Indoor air inhaling sensor broken or short-circuit
E8	Blinking once	Continuous blinking	The temperature of heat exchange abnormal
E9	Blinking once	Continuous blinking	Float SW actions (only with FS)
	Blinking twice	Continuous blinking	Drain pump over current
E10	Off	Continuous blinking	Excess number of remote control connections
E14	Blinking for three times	Continuous blinking	The communication fault for master/slave indoor units
E16	Blinking once	Continuous blinking	Fan motor (1) abnormal
	Blinking twice	Continuous blinking	Fan motor (2) abnormal
E19	Blinking once	Continuous blinking	Configuration fault on running checking model
E20	Blinking once	Continuous blinking	Fan motor (1) abnormal rotation
	Blinking twice	Continuous blinking	Fan motor (2) abnormal rotation
E28	Off	Continuous blinking	Remote control sensor interrupted
Over E30	Off	Continuous blinking	Outdoor unit checking (outdoor circuit board LED checking)

PGA012D405

(3) FDF series

Electrical wiring work must be performed by an electrician qualified by a local power provider according to the electrical installation technical standards and interior wiring regulations applicable to the installation site.

Security instructions

- **Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.**
- **The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION .**
  ⚠WARNING : Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠CAUTION : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
- **The meanings of "Marks" used here are as shown on the right:**
  ⃠ Never do it under any circumstances. ❗ Always do it according to the instruction.
- **Accord with following items. Otherwise, there will be the risks of electric shock and fire caused by overheating or short circuit.**

⚠WARNING

- **Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient capacity and improper work can cause electric shock and fire.
- **Use specified wire for electrical wiring, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.**
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire.
- **Arrange the electrical wires in the control box properly to prevent them from rising. Fit the lid of the services panel property.**
  Improper fitting may cause abnormal heat and fire.
- **Use the genuine optional parts. And installation should be performed by a specialist.**
  If you install the unit by yourself, it could cause water leakage, electric shock and fire.
- **Do not repair by yourself. And consult with the dealer about repair.**
  Improper repair may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Consult the dealer or a specialist about removal of the air conditioner.**
  Improper installation may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Turn off the power source during servicing or inspection work.**
  If the power is supplied during servicing or inspection work, it could cause electric shock and injury by the operating fan.
- **Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.**
  It could cause electric shock, unit failure and improper running.

⚠CAUTION

- **Perform earth wiring surely.**
  Do not connect the earth wiring to the gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod and telephone earth wiring. Improper earth could cause unit failure and electric shock due to a short circuit.
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed.**
  If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it can cause electric shocks.
- **Make sure to install earth leakage breaker on power source line. (countermeasure thing to high harmonics.)**
  Absence of breaker could cause electric shock.
- **Use the circuit breaker of correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect one could cause the system failure and fire.
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse of correct capacity where a fuse should be used.**
  Connecting the circuit by wire or copper wire could cause unit failure and fire.
- **Use power source line of correct capacity.**
  Using incorrect capacity one could cause electric leak, abnormal heat generation and fire.
- **Do not mingle solid cord and stranded cord on power source and signal side terminal block.**
  In addition, do not mingle difference capacity solid or stranded cord.
  Inappropriate cord setting could cause loosing screw on terminal block, bad electrical contact, smoke and fire.
- **Do not turn off the power source immediately after stopping the operation.**
  Be sure to wait for more than 5 minutes. Otherwise it could cause water leakage or breakdown.
- **Do not control the operation with the circuit breaker.**
  It could cause fire or water leakage. In addition, the fan may start operation unexpectedly and it may cause injury.

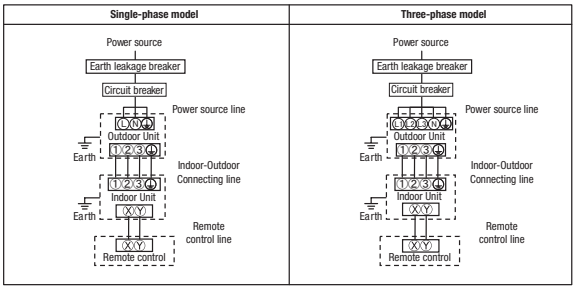
①Electrical Wiring Connection

- Use three-core cable as wiring between indoor and outdoor unit. As for detail, refer to "INSTALLATION MANUAL" of outdoor Unit.
- Set earth of D-type.
- Keep "remote control line" and "power source line" away from each other on constructing of unit outside.
- Run the lines (power source, remote control and "between indoor and outdoor unit") upper ceiling through iron pipe or other tube protection to avoid the damage by mouse and so on.
- Do not add cord in the middle of line route (of power source, remote control and "between indoor and outdoor unit") on outside of unit. If connecting point is flooded, it could cause problem as for electric or communication. (In the case that it is necessary to set connecting point on the way, perform thorough waterproof measurement.)
- Do not connect the power source line [220V/240V/380V/415V] to signal side terminal block. Otherwise, it could cause failure.
- Screw the line to terminal block without any looseness, certainly.
- Do not turn on the switch of power source, before all of line work is done.
- Connection of the line ("Between indoor and outdoor unit", Earth and Remote control)

①Remove lid of control box before connect the above lines, and connect the lines to terminal block according to number pointed on label of terminal block.
In addition, pay enough attention to confirm the number to lines, because there is electrical polarity except earth line. Furthermore, connect earth line to earth position of terminal block of power source.
②Install earth leakage breaker on power source line. In addition, select the type of breaker for inverter circuit as earth leakage breaker.
③If the function of selected earth leakage breaker is only for earth-fault protection, hand switch (switch itself and type "B" fuse) or circuit breaker is required in series with the earth leakage breaker.
④Install the local switch near the unit.

Cable connection for single unit installation

①As for connecting method of power source, select from following connecting patterns. In principle, do not directly connect power souce line to inside unit.
※ As for exceptional connecting method of power souce, discuss with the power provider of the country with referring to technical documents, and follow its instruction.
②For cable size and circuit breaker selection, refer to the outdoor unit installation manual.

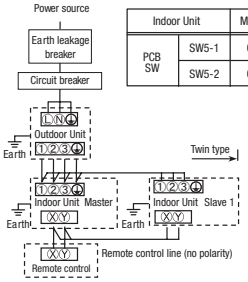


Cable connection for a V multi configuration installation

①Connect the same pairs number of terminal block "①, ②, and ③"and "ⓍandⓎ" between master and slave indoor units.
②Do the same address setting of all inside units belong to same refrigerant system by rotary switch SW2 on indoor unit's PCB (Printed circuit board).
③Set slave indoor unit as "slave 1" through "slave 3" by address switch SW5-1, 5-2 on PCB.
④When the AIR CON NO. button on the remote control unit is pressed after turning on the power, an indoor unit's address number will be displayed. Do not fail to confirm that the connected indoor unit's numbers are displayed on the remote control unit by pressing the ▲ or ▼ button.

Method of setting Master/Slave of indoor unit

(Factory setting: "Master")



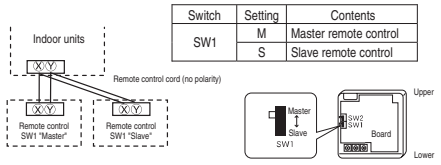
Indoor Unit		Master	Slave 1	Slave 2	Slave 3
PCB SW	SW5-1	OFF	OFF	ON	ON
	SW5-2	OFF	ON	OFF	ON

Switch and wiring specification

Refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.

②Wiring for the remote control

- For each indoor unit, one more remote control can be connected in addition to the one which is built in the main unit.



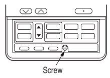
Switch	Setting	Contents
SW1	M	Master remote control
	S	Slave remote control

Set SW1 to "Slave" for the slave remote control. It was factory set to "Master" for shipment.
Note: The setting "Remote control thermistor enabled" is only selectable with the master remote control in the position where you want to check room temperature.
The air conditioner operation follows the last operation of the remote control regardless of the master/ slave setting of it.

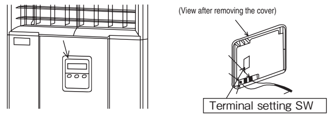
* When setting the remote control built in the main unit to the "Slave":
Remove the cover and change the setting of switch as follows.

②Wiring for the remote control (Continued)

① Open the remote control cover and remove the screw without fail.



② Remove the upper case of remote control. Attach a flat head screwdriver at the upper part of remote control and pry lightly. It will come off easily.
Use some cushion to protect the center panel.



③Function Setting by Remote Control

Installation and wiring of remote control

①Wiring of remote control should use 0.3mm² × 2 core wires or cables. (on-site configuration)
②Maximum prolongation of remote control wiring is 600 m.
If the prolongation is over 100m, change to the size below.
But, wiring in the remote control case should be under 0.5mm². Change the wire size outside of the case according to wire connecting. Waterproof treatment is necessary at the wire connecting section. Be careful about contact failure.

100 - 200m……………………0.5mm² × 2 cores
Under 300m ……………………0.75mm² × 2 cores
Under 400m ……………………1.25mm² × 2 cores
Under 600m ……………………2.0mm² × 2 cores

The indication when power source is supplied

When power source is turned on, the following is displayed on the remote control until the communication between the remote control and indoor unit settled.

Master remote control : " WAIT " M
Slave remote control : " WAIT " S

At the same time, a mark or a number will be displayed for two seconds first.
This is the software's administration number of the remote control, not an error cord.

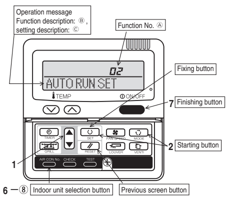
06 AC
WAIT M

※ The left mark is only an example. Other marks may appear.

When remote control cannot communicate with the indoor unit for half an hour, the below indication willappear.
Check wiring of the indoor unit and the outdoor unit etc.

INSPECT I/U

How to set function



1. Stop air-conditioner and press (SET) (MODE) buttons at the same time for over three seconds, and the "FUNCTION SET ▼" will be displayed.

FUNCTION SET ▼

2. Press (SET) button.

3. Make sure which do you want to set, " FUNCTION ▼" (remote control function) or "I/U FUNCTION ▲"(indoor unit function).

4. Press or button.
Selecct " FUNCTION ▼" (remote control function) or "I/U FUNCTION ▲"(indoor unit function).

FUNCTION ▼
I/U FUNCTION ▲

5. Press (SET) button.

6.【On the occasion of remote control function selection】

① "DATA LOADING" (Indication with blinking) → Display is changed to "01 GRILLE ↑↓SET".

② Press ▲ or ▼ button.
"No. and function"are indicated by turns on the remote control function table, then you can select from them.
(For example)

02 ← Function No.
AUTO RUN SET ← Function

③ Press (SET) button.
The current setting of selected function is indicated.
(for example) "AUTO RUN ON" ← If "02 AUTO RUN SET" is selected

02
AUTO RUN ON ← Setting

④ Press ▲ or ▼ button.
Select the setting.

02 AUTO RUN ON ⟷ 02 UTO RUN OFF A

⑤ Press (SET) button.
"SET COMPLETE" will be indicated, and the setting will be completed.
Then after "No. and function" indication returns, Set as the same procedure if you want to set continuously ,and if to finish, go to 7.

02
SET COMPLETE

【On the occasion of indoor unit function selection】

① "DATA LOADING" (Blinking for 2 to 23 seconds to read the data)
↓
Indication is changed to "02 FAN SPEED SET". Go to ②.

[Note]
(1) If plural indoor units are connected to a remote control,
the indication is "I/U 000" (blinking) ← The lowest number of the indoor unit connected is indicated.

I/U000 ▲

(2) Press ▲ or ▼ button.
Select the number of the indoor unit you are to set
If you select "ALL UNIT ▼", you can set the same setting with all unites.

(3) Press (SET) button.

② Press ▲ or ▼ button.
"No. and function" are indicated by turns on the indoor unit function table, then you can select from them.
(For example)

02 ← Function No.
FAN SPEED SET ← Function

③Function Setting by Remote Control (Continued)

③ Press (SET) button.
The current setting of selected function is indicated.
(For example) "STANDARD" ← If "02 FAN SPEED SET" is selected.

02
STANDARD ← Setting

④ Press ▲ or ▼ button.
Select the setting.

⑤ Press (SET) button.
"SET COMPLETE" will be indicated, and the setting will be completed.
Then after "No. and function" indication returns, set as the same procedure if you want to set continuously , and if to finish, go to 7.

02
SET COMPLETE

※ When plural indoor units are connected to a remote control, press the AIRCON NO. button, which allows you to go back to the indoor unit selection screen. (example "I/U 000 ") ▲

7. Press ON/OFF button.
Setting is finished.

- It is possible to finish by pressing ON/OFF button on the way, but unfinished change of setting is unavailable.
- During setting, if you press (RESET) button, you return to the previous screen.
- Setting is memorized in the controller and it is saved independently of power failure.

【How to check the current setting】
When you select from "No. and funcion" and press set button by the previous operation, the "Setting" displayed first is the current setting.
(But, if you select "ALL UNIT ▼", the setting of the lowest number indoor unit is displayed.)

The functional setting

●The initial function setting for typical using is performed automatically by the indoor unit connected, when remote control and indoor unit are connected.
As long as they are used in a typical manner, there wiil be no need to change the initial settings.
If you would like to change the initial setting marked "○", set your desired setting as for the selected item.
The procedure of functional setting is shown as the following diagram.

Sequence of the function setting is as follows.

The range of temperature setting

When shipped, the range of set temperature differs depending on the operation mode as below.
Heating : 16~30ûC (55~86ûF)
Except heating (cooling, fan, dry, automatic) : 18~30ûC (62~86ûF)

●Upper limit and lower limit of set temperature can be changed with remote control.
Upper limit setting: valid during heating operation. Possible to set in the range of 20 to 30ûC (68 to 86ûF).
Lower limit setting: valid except heating (automatic, cooling, fan, dry) Possible to set in the range of 18 to 26ûC (62 to 79ûF).
When you set upper and lower limit by this function, control as below.

1. When ⑫ TEMP RANGE SET, remote control function of function setting mode is "INDN CHANGE" (factory setting),
【If upper limit value is set】
During heating, you cannot set the value exceeding the upper limit.

【If lower limit value is set】
During operation mode except heating, you cannot set the value below the lower limit.

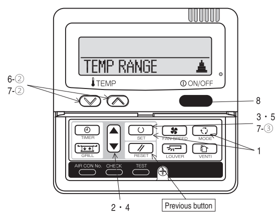
2. When ⑫ TEMP RANGE SET, remote control function of function setting mode is "NO INDN CHANGE"
【If upper limit value is set】
During heating, even if the value exceeding the upper limit is set, upper limit value will be sent to the indoor unit.
But, the indication is the same as the temperature set.

【If lower limit value is set】
During except heating, even if the value lower than the lower limit is set, lower limit value will be sent to the indoor unit.
But, the indication is the same as the temperature set.

●How to set upper and lower limit value

1. Stop the air-conditioner, and press (SET) and (MODE) button at the same time for over three seconds .
The indication changes to "FUNCTION SET ▼".
2. Press ▼ button once, and change to the "TEMP RANGE ▲" indication.
3. Press (SET) button, and enter the temperature range setting mode.
4. Select "UPPER LIMIT ▼" or "LOWER LIMIT ▲" by using ▲ ▼ button.
5. Press (SET) button to fix.
6. When "UPPER LIMIT ▼" is selected (valid during heating)
① Indication: " ∨∧SET UP" → "UPPER 30ûC∨"
② Select the upper limit value with temperature setting button ∨ ∧. Indication example: "UPPER 26ûC∨∧" (blinking)
③ Press (SET) button to fix. Indication example: "UPPER 26ûC" (Displayed for two seconds)
After the fixed upper limit value displayed for two seconds, the indication will return to "UPPER LIMIT ▼".
7. When "LOWER LIMIT ▲" is selected (valid during cooling, dry, fan, automatic)
① Indication: " ∨∧SET UP" → "LOWER 18ûC∧"
② Select the lower limit value with temperature setting button ∨ ∧. Indication example: "LOWER 24ûC∨∧" (blinking)
③ Press (SET) button to fix. Indication for example: "LOWER 24ûC" (Displayed for two seconds)
After the fixed lower limit value displayed for two seconds, the indication will return to "LOWER LIMIT ▼".
8. Press ON/OFF button to finish.

- It is possible to finish by pressing ON/OFF button on the way, but unfinished change of setting is unavailable.
- During setting, if you press (RESET) button, you return to the previous screen.



Note 1: Fan setting of "HIGH SPEED"

Fan tap		Indoor unit air flow setting			
FAN SPEED SET	STANDARD	UH - Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Lo	Hi - Me
	HIGH SPEED1, 2	UH - UH - Hi - Me	UH - Hi - Me	UH - Me	UH - Hi

Initial function setting of some indoor unit is "HIGH SPEED"

Note 2: As for plural indoor unit, set indoor functions to each master and slave indoor unit.
But only master indoor unit is received the setting change of indoor unit function "05 EXTERNAL INPUT" and "06 PERMISSION / PROHIBISHION".

③Function Setting by Remote Control (Continued)

[Flow of function setting]

Start : While indoor unit do not operate, press " (SET) " and " (MODE) " button for 3 seconds at the same time.
Finalize : Press " (SET) " button.
Reset : Press " (RESET) " button.
Select : Press ▲ ▼ button.
End : Press ⓘON/OFF button.

It is possible to finish above setting on the way, and unfinished change of setting is unavailable.
"○" : Initial settings
"※" : Automatic criterion
As for detail, refer to the installation manual of remote control.

During air-conditioner stopping push (SET) + (MODE) button simultaneously for 3 seconds → FUNCTION SET ▼

Consult the technical data etc for each control details

Record and save the setting

FUNCTION ▼ (Remote control function)

Function	Setting		Description
01 GRILLE ↑↓ SET	↑↓ INVALID	○	
	50Hz ZONE ONLY		When you use at 50Hz area
	60Hz ZONE ONLY		When you use at 60Hz area
02 AUTO RUN SET	AUTO RUN ON	★	
	AUTO RUN OFF	○	Automatic operation is impossible
03 ▽△ TEMP SW	▽△ VALID	○	
	▽△ INVALID		Temperature setting button is not working
04 MODE SW	VALID	○	
	INVALID		Mode button is not working
05 ⓘ ON/OFF SW	ⓘ VALID	○	
	ⓘ INVALID		On/Off button is not working
06 FAN SPEED SW	VALID	※	
	INVALID	※	Fan speed button is not working
07 LOUVER SW	VALID	○	
	INVALID	★	Louver button is not working
08 TIMER SW	VALID	○	
	INVALID		Timer button is not working
09 SENSOR SET	SENSOR OFF	○	Remote thermistor is not working.
	SENSOR ON		Remote thermistor is working.
	SENSOR +3.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing +3.0°C increase in temperature.
	SENSOR +2.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing +2.0°C increase in temperature.
	SENSOR +1.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing +1.0°C increase in temperature.
	SENSOR -1.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing -1.0°C increase in temperature.
	SENSOR -2.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing -2.0°C increase in temperature.
	SENSOR -3.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing -3.0°C increase in temperature.
10 AUTO RESTART	INVALID	○	
	VALID		
11 VENT LINK SET	NO VENT	○	
	VENT LINK		Connect the Single split series and the VRF series to the indoor board CNT and indoor board CND respectively. If a ventilation device is connected, been geared with the motion of indoor device, the ventilation device is operated/stopped.
	NO VENT LINK		By connecting the ventilation device with the Single split series device to indoor board CNT, the VRF series device to CND, you can operate/stop the ventilation device independently by the handling of ventilation button.
12 TEMP RANGE SET	INDN CHANGE	○	If you change the range of set temperature, the indication of set temperature will vary following the control.
	NO INDN CHANGE		If you change the range of set temperature, the indication of set temperature will not vary following the control, and keep the set temperature.
13 I/U FAN	HI-MID-LO	○	Airflow of fan becomes the three speed of … or ….
	HI-LO	★	
	HI-MID	★	
	1 FAN SPEED	★	
14 POSITION	4POSITION STOP	★	
	FREE STOP	○	The louver can stop at any position.
15 MODEL TYPE	HEAT PUMP	※	
	COOLING ONLY	※	
16 EXTERNAL CONTROL SET	INDIVIDUAL	○	If you input into the indoor printed circuit board CNT from outside, the indoor device will be operated independently following the input from outside.
	FOR ALL UNITS		If you input into indoor printed circuit board CNT from outside, All units which share the same one remote control network work following the input from outside.
17 ROOM TEMP INDICATION SET	INDICATION OFF	○	
	INDICATION ON		In normal working indication, indoor unit temperature is indicated instead of airflow. (Only the master remote control can be indicated.)
18 INDICATION	INDICATION ON	○	
	INDICATION OFF		Heating preparation indication should not be indicated.
19 ℃/℉ SET	℃	○	Temperature indication is by degree C
	℉		Temperature indication is by degree F

(Indoor unit function) I/U FUNCTION ▲

Only when plural indoor units are connected
Indoor No. selection (Note3): I/U000 ▲, I/U001 ♦, I/U002 ♦, I/U003 ♦, I/U004 ♦

If to change re-set with other indoor unit, push AIRCON NO. button, and indoor selection indication (for example: I/U 000) is set back.

Function	Setting		Description
02 FAN SPEED SET	STANDARD	※	
	HIGH SPEED 1	※	(Note2)
	HIGH SPEED 2		
03 FILTER SIGN SET	INDICATION OFF		
	TYPE 1	○	The filter sign is indicated after running for 180 hours.
	TYPE 2		The filter sign is indicated after running for 600 hours.
	TYPE 3		The filter sign is indicated after running for 1000 hours.
	TYPE 4		The filter sign is indicated after running for 1000 hours, then it will be stopped by compulsion after 24 hours.
04 POSITION	4POSITION STOP	★	
	FREE STOP	○	The louver can stop at any positon.
05 EXTERNAL INPUT	LEVEL INPUT	○	
	PULSE INPUT		
06 OPERATION PERMISSION/PROHIBITION	INVALID	○	
	VALID		Make permission/prohibition control of function be in effect.
07 EMERGENCY STOP	INVALID	○	
	VALID		With the VRF series, it is used to stop all indoor units connected with the same outdoor unit immediately. When stop signal is inputed from remote on-off terminal "CNT-6", all indoor units are stopped immediately.
08 ☼ SP OFFSET	OFFSET +3.0℃		To be reset for producing +3.0°C increase in temperature during heating.
	OFFSET +2.0℃		To be reset for producing +2.0°C increase in temperature during heating.
	OFFSET +1.0℃		To be reset for producing +1.0°C increase in temperature during heating.
	NO OFFSET	○	
09 RETURN AIR TEMP	OFFSET +2.0℃		To be reset producing +2.0°C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
	OFFSET +1.5℃		To be reset producing +1.5°C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
	OFFSET +1.0℃		To be reset producing +1.0°C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
	NO OFFSET	○	
	OFFSET -1.0℃		To be reset producing -1.0°C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
	OFFSET -1.5℃		To be reset producing -1.5°C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
	OFFSET -2.0℃		To be reset producing -2.0°C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
10 ☼ FAN CONTROL	LOW FAN SPEED	○	When heating thermostat is off, to be operated with low fan speed. (or with ultra low fan speed in case of some models)
	SET FAN SPEED		When heating thermostat is off, to be operated with set fan speed.
	INTERMITTENCE		When heating thermostat is off, to be operated intermittently.
	FAN OFF		When heating thermostat is off, the fan stops. When the remote thermistor is working, "FAN OFF" is set automatically. Do not set when the indoor unit's thermistor is working.
11 FROST PREVENTION TEMP			Change of indoor heat exchanger temperature to start frost prevention control.
	TEMP HIGH		
	TEMP LOW	○	
12 FROST PREVENTION CONTROL			Working only with the single split series.
	FAN CONTROL ON	○	To control frost prevention, the indoor fan tap is raised.
	FAN CONTROL OFF		
13 DRAIN PUMP LINK	❄💧	○	Drain pump is on during cooling and dry.
	❄💧 AND ☼		Drain pump is on during cooling, dry and heating.
	❄💧 AND ☼ AND ≋		Drain pump is on during cooling, dry, heating and fan.
	❄💧 AND ≋		Drain pump is on during cooling, dry and fan.
14 ❄ FAN REMAINING	NO REMAINING	○	After cooling is stopped the fan does not perform extra operation.
	0.5 HOUR		After cooling is stopped the fan perform extra operation for half an hour.
	1 HOUR		After cooling is stopped the fan perform extra operation for an hour.
	6 HOUR		After cooling is stopped the fan perform extra operation for six hours.
15 ☼ FAN REMAINING	NO REMAINING	○	After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is off, the fan does not perform extra operation.
	0.5 HOUR		After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is off,the fan perform extra operation for half an hour.
	2 HOUR		After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is off,the fan perform extra operation for two hours.
	6 HOUR		After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is off, the fan perform extra operation for six hours.
16 ☼ FAN INTERMITTENCE	NO REMAINING	○	
	20minOFF 5minON		During heating is stopped or heating thermostat is off, the fan perform intermittent operation for five minutes after twenty minutes' off with low airflow.
	5minOFF 5minON		During heating is stopped or heating thermostat is off, the fan perform intermittent operation for five minutes after five minutes' off with low airflow.

ON/OFF button (finished)

Items marked with ★ are not available on the floor standing FDF.
Do not change the initial setting

④Trial operation

The method of trial cooling operation

Operate the remote control unit as follows.

1. Starting a cooling test run.

①Start the system by pressing the ⓘON/OFF button.

②Select " ❄ (Cool)" with the (MODE) button.

③Press the TEST button for 3 seconds or longer.
The screen display will switch to " ❄ TEST RUN ▼ "

④When the (SET) button is pressed while " ❄ TEST RUN ▼ " is indicated, a cooling test run will start.
The screen display will switch to " ❄ TEST RUN ".

2. Ending a cooling test run.

Pressing the ⓘON/OFF button, the (TEMP) button or (MODE) button will end a cooling test run. (Cooling test run will end after 30 minutes pass.)
" ❄ TEST RUN " shown on the screen will go off.

④Trial operation (Continued)

Checking operation data

Operation data can be checked with remote control unit operation.

1. Press the CHECK button.
   The display change " OPER DATA ▼ "
2. Press the (SET) button while
   OPER DATA ▼ " is displayed.
3. When only one indoor unit is connected to remote control, " DATA LOADING " is displayed (blinking indication during data loading).
   Next, operation data of the indoor unit will be displayed. Skip to step 7.
4. When plural indoor units is connected, the smallest address number of indoor unit among all connected indoor unit is displayed.
   [Example]:
   SELECT I/U " (blinking 1 seconds)→
   I/U000 ♟ " blinking.
5. Select the indoor unit number you would like to have data displayed with the ▲ ▼ button.
6. Determine the indoor unit number with the (SET) button.
   (The indoor unit number changes from blinking indication to continuous indication)
   I/U000 " (The address of selected indoor unit is blinking for 2 seconds.)
   ↓
   " DATA LOADING " (A blinking indication appears while data loaded.)
   Next, the operation data of the indoor unit is indicated.
7. Upon operation of the ▲ ▼ button, the current operation data is displayed in order from data number 01.
   The items displayed are in the above table.
   ※Depending on models, the items that do not have corresponding data are not displayed.
8. To display the data of a different indoor unit, press the AIR CON NO. button, which allows you to go back to the indoor unit selection screen.
9. Pressing the ⏻ON/OFF button will stop displaying data.
   Pressing the (RESET) button during remote control unit operation will undo your last operation and allow you to go back to the previous screen.

◎If two (2) remote control are connected to one (1) inside unit, only the master control is available for trial operation and confirmation of operation data. (The slave remote control is not available.)

Number	Data Item	
01	※	(Operation Mode)
02	SET TEMP___℃	(Set Temperature)
03	RETURN AIR___℃	(Return Air Temperature)
04	SENSOR___℃	(Remote Control Thermistor Temperature)
05	THI-R1___℃	(Indoor Unit Heat Exchanger Thermistor / U Bend)
06	THI-R2___℃	(Indoor Unit Heat Exchanger Thermistor /Capillary)
07	THI-R3___℃	(Indoor Unit Heat Exchanger Thermistor /Gas Header)
08	I/U FANSPEED___	(Indoor Unit Fan Speed)
09	DEMAND___Hz	(Frequency Requirements)
10	ANSWER___Hz	(Response Frequency)
11	I/U EEV____P	(Pulse of Indoor Unit Expansion Value)
12	TOTAL I/U RUN____H	(Total Running Hours of The Indoor Unit)
21	OUTDOOR___℃	(Outdoor Air Temperature)
22	THO-R1___℃	(Outdoor Unit Heat Exchanger Thermistor)
23	THO-R2___℃	(Outdoor Unit Heat Exchanger Thermistor)
24	COMP___Hz	(Compressor Frequency)
25	HP___MPa	(High Pressure)
26	LP___MPa	(Low Pressure)
27	Td___℃	(Discharge Pipe Temperature)
28	COMP BOTTOM___℃	(Comp Bottom Temperature)
29	CT___AMP	(Current)
30	TARGET SH___℃	(Target Super Heat)
31	SH___℃	(Super Heat)
32	TDSH___℃	(Discharge Pipe Super Heat)
33	PROTECTION No.___	(Protection State No. of The Compressor)
34	O/U FANSPEED___	(Outdoor Unit Fan Speed)
35	63H1	(63H1 On/Off)
36	DEFROST	(Defrost Control On/Off)
37	TOTAL COMP RUN___H	(Total Running Hours of The Compressor)
38	O/U EEV1____P	(Pulse of The Outdoor Unit Expansion Valve EEVC)
39	O/U EEV2____P	(Pulse of The Outdoor Unit Expansion Valve EEVH)

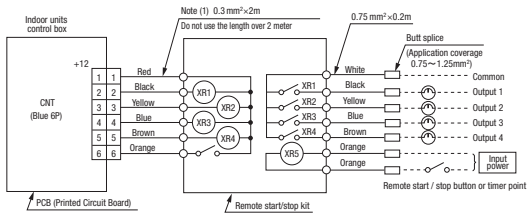
※Depending on outdoor unit model, there are data not shown.

⑤Control mode switching

●The control content of indoor units can be switched in following way.
(is the default setting)

Switch No.	Control Content	
SW2	Indoor unit address (0-Fh)	
SW5-1	Master/Slave Switching (plural /Slave unit Setting)	
SW5-2		
SW6-1～4	Model capacity setting	
SW7－1	ON	Operation check, Drain motor test run
	OFF	Normal operation

⑥Function of CNT connector of indoor printed circuit board



●CNT connector (local) vendor model
Connector : Made by molex 5264 - 06
Terminals : Made by molex 5263T

●Function

Output 1	Operation output (there is output when unit is in operation.)
Output 2	Heating output (there is output when operation MODE is HEATING.)
Output 3	Compressor ON output (there is output when compressor is in operation.)
Output 4	Inspection output (there is output when unit is stopped by error.)
Input 5	Remote operation input (Volt-free contact) (Inputted to operate unit)

⑦Troubleshooting

The operation data is saved when the situation of abnormal operation happen, and the data can be confirmed by remote control.

Error Code of indoor unit

Display on remote control	LED on indoor circuit board		Content
	red (checking)	green (normal)	
Off	Off	Continuous blinking	Normal
	Off	Off	Fault on power, indoor power off or lack phase
E1	Off	Continuous blinking	Fault on the transmission between indoor circuit board and remote control
	Not sure	Not sure	Indoor computer abnormal
E5	Blinking twice	Continuous blinking	Fault on outdoor-indoor transmission
E6	Blinking once	Continuous blinking	Indoor heat exchange sensor interrupted or short-circuit
E7	Blinking once	Continuous blinking	Indoor air inhaling sensor broken or short-circuit
E8	Blinking once	Continuous blinking	The temperature of heat exchange abnormal
E9	Blinking once	Continuous blinking	Float SW actions (only with FS)
E10	Off	Continuous blinking	Excess number of remote control connections
E14	Blinking for three times	Continuous blinking	The communication fault for master/slave indoor units
E16	Blinking once	Continuous blinking	Fan motor abnormal
E19	Blinking once	Continuous blinking	Configuration fault on running checking model
E28	Off	Continuous blinking	Remote control sensor interrupted
Over E30	Off	Continuous blinking	Outdoor unit checking (outdoor circuit board LED checking)

[Operating procedure]
1. Press the CHECK button.
   The display change " OPER DATA ▼ "
2. Once, press the ▼ button, and the display change
   ERROR DATA ♟ ".
3. Press the (SET) button and abnormal operation data mode is started.
4. When only one indoor unit is connected to remote control, following is displayed.
   ①The case that there is history of abnormal operation.
   → Error code and " DATA LOADING " is displayed.
   [Example]: [E8] (ERROR CODE)
   " DATA LOADING" is displayed (blinking indication during data loading).
   Next, the abnormal operation data of the indoor unit will be displayed. Skip to step 8.
   ②The case that there is not history of abnormal operation.
   → " NO ERROR " is displayed for 3 seconds and this mode is closed.
5. When plural indoor units is connected, following is displayed.
   ①The case that there is history of abnormal operation.
   →Error code and the smallest address number of indoor unit among all connected indoor unit is displayed.
   [Example]: [E8] (ERROR CODE)
   " I/U000 ♟ " blinking
   ②The case that there is not history of abnormal operation.
   →Only address number is displayed.
6. Select the indoor unit number you would like to have data displayed with the ▲ ▼ button.
7. Determine the indoor unit number with the (SET) button.
   [Example]: [E8] (ERROR CODE)
   " I/U000 ♟ " (The address of selected indoor unit is blinking for 2 seconds.)
   ↓
   [E8] " DATA LOADING " (A blinking indication appears while data loaded.)
   Next, the abnormal operation data is indicated.
   If the indoor unit doing normal operation is selected, " NO ERROR " is displayed for 3 seconds and address of indoor unit is displayed.
8. By the ▲ ▼ button, the abnormal operation data is displayed.
   Displayed data item is based on ④ Trial operation .
   ※Depending on models, the items that do not have corresponding data are not displayed.
9. To display the data of a different indoor unit, press the AIR CON No. button, which allows you to go back to the indoor unit slection screen.
10. Pressing the ⏻ON/OFF button will stop displaying data.

Pressing the (RESET) button during remote control unit operation will undo your last operation and allow you to go back to the previous screen.

◎If two (2) remote control are connected to one (1) indoor unit, only the master control is available for trial operation and confirmation of operation data. (The slave remote control is not available.)

5.3 Installation of wired remote control (option)

PJA012D730

(1) Model RC-E5

Read together with indoor unit's installation manual.

⚠WARNING

- Fasten the wiring to the terminal securely and hold the cable securely so as not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.
  Loose connection or hold will cause abnormal heat generation or fire.
- Make sure the power supply is turned off when electric wiring work.
  Otherwise, electric shock, malfunction and improper running may occur.

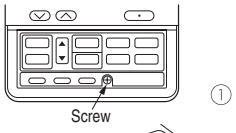
⚠CAUTION

- DO NOT install the remote control at the following places in order to avoid malfunction.
  (1) Places exposed to direct sunlight
  (2) Places near heat devices
  (3) High humidity places
  (4) Hot surface or cold surface enough to generate condensation
  (5) Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly
  (6) Uneven surface
- DO NOT leave the remote control without the upper case.
  In case the upper cace needs to be detached, protect the remote control with a packaging box or bag in order to keep it away from water and dust.

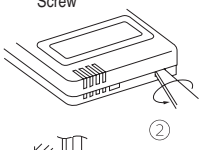
Accessories	Remote control, wood screw (ø3.5×16) 2 pieces
Prepare on site	Remote control cord (2 cores) the insulation thickness in 1mm or more. [In case of embedding cord] Erectrical box, M4 screw (2 pieces) [In case of exposing cord] Cord clamp (if needed)

Installation procedure

① Open the cover of remote control, and remove the screw under the buttons without fail.

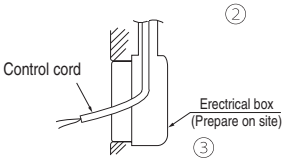


② Remove the upper case of remote control.
Insert a flat-blade screwdriver into the dented part of the upper part of the remote control, and wrench slightly.

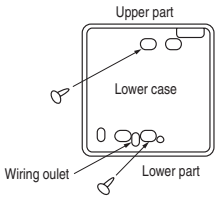


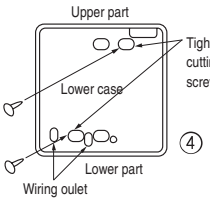
[In case of embedding cord]

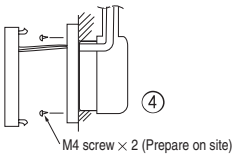
③ Embed the erectrical box and remote control cord beforehand.



④ Prepare two M4 screws (recommended length is 12-16mm) on site, and install the lower case to erectrical box.
Choose either of the following two positions in fixing it with screws.

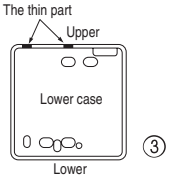






⑤ Connect the remote control cord to the terminal block.
Connect the terminal of remote control (X,Y) with the terminal of indoor unit (X,Y). (X and Y are no polarity)

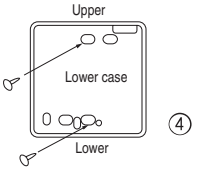
⑥ Install the upper case as before so as not to catch up the remote control cord, and tighten with the screws.



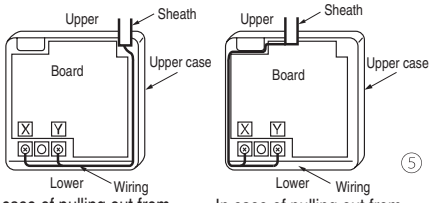
[In case of exposing cord]

③ You can pull out the remote control cord from left upper part or center upper part.
Cut off the upper thin part of remote control lower case with a nipper or knife, and grind burrs with a file etc.

④ Install the lower case to the flat wall with attached two wooden screws.



⑤ Connect the remote control cord to the terminal block.
Connect the terminal of remote control (X,Y) with the terminal of indoor unit (X,Y).
(X and Y are no polarity)
Wiring route is as shown in the right diagram depending on the pulling out direction.

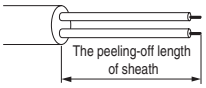


In case of pulling out from upper left

In case of pulling out from upper center

The wiring inside the remote control case should be within 0.3mm^2 (recommended) to 0.5mm^2.
The sheath should be peeled off inside the remote control case.
The peeling-off length of each wire is as below.

Pulling out from upper left	Pulling out from upper center
X wiring : 215mm Y wiring : 195mm	X wiring : 170mm Y wiring : 190mm



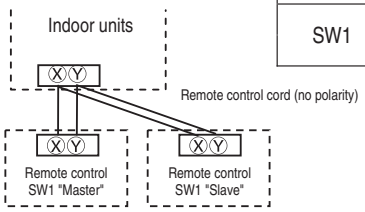
⑥ Install the upper case as before so as not to catch up the remote control cord, and tighten with the screws.
⑦ In case of exposing cord, fix the cord on the wall with cord clamp so as not to slack.

Installation and wiring of remote control

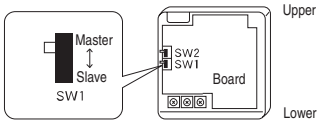
① Wiring of remote control should use 0.3mm^2 × 2 core wires or cables. (on-site configuration)
② Maximum prolongation of remote control wiring is 600 m.
If the prolongation is over 100m, change to the size below.
But, wiring in the remote control case should be under 0.5mm^2 . Change the wire size outside of the case according to wire connecting. Waterproof treatment is necessary at the wire connecting section. Be careful about contact failure.
100 - 200m·····0.5mm^2 × 2 cores
Under 300m·····0.75mm^2 × 2 cores
Under 400m·····1.25mm^2 × 2 cores
Under 600m·····2.0mm^2 × 2 cores

Master/ slave setting when more than one remote controls are used

A maximum of two remote controls can be connected to one indoor unit (or one group of indoor units.)



Switch	Setting	Contents
SW1	M	Master remote control
	S	Slave remote control



Set SW1 to "Slave" for the slave remote control. It was factory set to "Master" for shipment.
Note: The setting "Remote control thermistor enabled" is only selectable with the master remote control in the position where you want to check room temperature.
The air conditioner operation follows the last operation of the remote control regardless of the master/ slave setting of it.

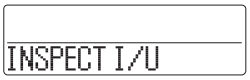
The indication when power source is supplied

When power source is turned on, the following is displayed on the remote control until the communication between the remote control and indoor unit settled.
Master remote control : "WAIT M"
Slave remote control : "WAIT S"

At the same time, a mark or a number will be displayed for two seconds first.
This is the software's administration number of the remote control, not an error cord.

※ The left mark is only an example. Other marks may appear.

When remote control cannot communicate with the indoor unit for half an hour, the below indication will appear.
Check wiring of the indoor unit and the outdoor unit etc.



The range of temperature setting

When shipped, the range of set temperature differs depending on the operation mode as below.

Heating : 16~30˚C (55~86˚F)

Except heating (cooling, fan, dry, automatic) : 18~30˚C (62~86˚F)

●Upper limit and lower limit of set temperature can be changed with remote control.

Upper limit setting: valid during heating operation. Possible to set in the range of 20 to 30˚C (68 to 86˚F).

Lower limit setting: valid except heating (automatic, cooling, fan, dry) Possible to set in the range of 18 to 26°C (62 to 79°F).

When you set upper and lower limit by this function, control as below.

1. When ⑫TEMP RANGE SET, remote control function of function setting mode is "INDN CHANGE" (factory setting),
   【If upper limit value is set】
   During heating, you cannot set the value exceeding the upper limit.

   【If lower limit value is set 】
   During operation mode except heating, you cannot set the value below the lower limit.

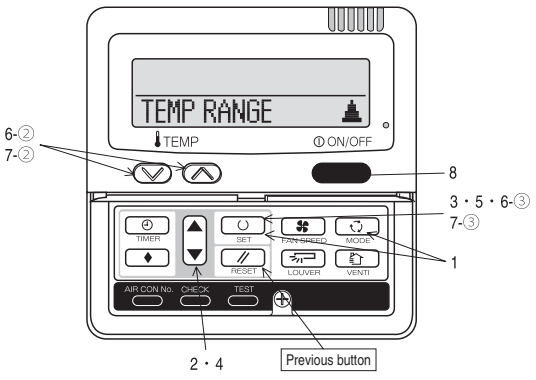
2. When ⑫TEMP RANGE SET, remote control function of function setting mode is "NO INDN CHANGE"
   【If upper limit value is set】
   During heating, even if the value exceeding the upper limit is set, upper limit value will be sent to the indoor unit. But, the indication is the same as the temperature set.

   【If lower limit value is set 】
   During except heating, even if the value lower than the lower limit is set, lower limit value will be sent to the indoor unit. But, the indication is the same as the temperature set.

●How to set upper and lower limit value

1. Stop the air-conditioner, and press (SET) and (MODE) button at the same time for over three seconds.
   The indication changes to "FUNCTION SET ▼".
2. Press ▼ button once, and change to the "TEMP RANGE ▲ " indication.
3. Press (SET) button, and enter the temperature range setting mode.
4. Select "UPPER LIMIT ▼" or "LOWER LIMIT ▲" by using ▲ ▼ button.
5. Press (SET) button to fix.
6. When "UPPER LIMIT ▼" is selected (valid during heating)
   ① Indication: "∨ ∧ SET UP" → "UPPER 30˚C ∨"
   ② Select the upper limit value with temperature setting button ∨ ∧. Indication example: "UPPER 26˚C ∨ ∧" (blinking)
   ③ Press (SET) button to fix. Indication example: "UPPER 26˚C" (Displayed for two seconds)
   After the fixed upper limit value displayed for two seconds, the indication will return to "UPPER LIMIT ▼".
7. When "LOWER LIMIT ▲" is selected (valid during cooling, dry, fan, automatic)
   ① Indication: "∨ ∧ SET UP" → "LOWER 18˚C ∧"
   ② Select the lower limit value with temperature setting button ∨ ∧. Indication example: "LOWER 24˚C ∨ ∧" (blinking)
   ③ Press (SET) button to fix. Indication for example: "LOWER 24˚C" (Displayed for two seconds)
   After the fixed lower limit value displayed for two seconds, the indication will return to "LOWER LIMIT ▼".
8. Press ON/OFF button to finish.

- It is possible to finish by pressing ON/OFF button on the way, but unfinished change of setting is unavailable.
- During setting, if you press (RESET) button, you return to the previous screen.



The functional setting

●The initial function setting for typical using is performed automatically by the indoor unit connected, when remote control and indoor unit are connected.
As long as they are used in a typical manner, there wiil be no need to change the initial settings.
If you would like to change the initial setting marked " ○ ", set your desired setting as for the selected item.
The procedure of functional setting is shown as the following diagram.

[Flow of function setting]

Start : Stop air-conditioner and press "(SET)" (SET) and "(MODE)" (MODE) buttons at the same time for over three seconds.
Finalize : Press "(SET)" (SET) button.
Reset : Press "(RESET)" (RESET) button.
Select : Press ▲ ▼ button.
End : Press ON/OFF button.
It is possible to finish above setting on the way, and unfinished change of setting is unavailable.
" ○ " : Initial settings
" ※ " : Automatic criterion

Record and keep the setting

Consult the technical data etc. for each control details

Stop air-conditioner and press (SET) + (MODE) buttons at the same time for over three seconds.

FUNCTION SET ▼

To next page

FUNCTION ▼ (Remote control function)

Function	setting		
01 ESP SET	ESP VALID	○	Validate setting of ESP:External Static Pressure
	ESP INVALID		Invalidate setting of ESP
02 AUTO RUN SET			
	AUTO RUN ON	※	
	AUTO RUN OFF	※	Automatical operation is impossible
03 TEMP SW			
	VALID	○	
	INVALID		Temperature setting button is not working
04 MODE SW			
	VALID	○	
	INVALID		Mode button is not working
05 ON/OFF SW			
	VALID	○	
	INVALID		On/Off button is not working
06 FAN SPEED SW			
	VALID	※	
	INVALID	※	Fan speed button is not working
07 LOUVER SW			
	VALID	※	
	INVALID	※	Louver button is not working
08 TIMER SW			
	VALID	○	
	INVALID		Timer button is not working
09 SENSOR SET			
	SENSOR OFF	○	Remote thermistor is not working.
	SENSOR ON		Remote thermistor is working.
	SENSOR +3.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing +3.0˚C increase in temperature.
	SENSOR +2.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing +2.0˚C increase in temperature.
	SENSOR +1.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing +1.0˚C increase in temperature.
	SENSOR -1.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing -1.0˚C increase in temperature.
	SENSOR -2.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing -2.0˚C increase in temperature.
	SENSOR -3.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing -3.0˚C increase in temperature.
10 AUTO RESTART			
	INVALID	○	
	VALID		
*11 VENT LINK SET			
	NO VENT	○	
	VENT LINK		In case of Single split series, by connecting ventilation device to CNT of the indoor printed circuit board (in case of VRF series, by connecting it to CND of the indoor printed circuit board), the operation of ventilation device is linked with the operation of indoor unit.
	NO VENT LINK		In case of Single split series, by connecting ventilation device to CNT of the indoor printed circuit board (in case of VRF series, by connecting it to CND of the indoor printed circuit board), you can operate /stop the ventilation device independently by (VENT) button.
12 TEMP RANGE SET			
	INDN CHANGE	○	If you change the range of set temperature, the indication of set temperature will vary following the control.
	NO INDN CHANGE		If you change the range of set temperature, the indication of set temperature will not vary following the control, and keep the set temperature.
13 I/U FAN			
	HI-MID-LO	※	Airflow of fan becomes of ※- ※- ※or the four speed of ※- ※- ※- ※.
	HI-LO	※	Airflow of fan becomes of ※- ※.
	HI-MID		Airflow of fan becomes of ※- ※.
	1 FAN SPEED	※	Airflow of fan is fixed at one speed.
14 POSITION			If you change the remote control function "14 POSITION ", you must change the indoor function "04 POSITION" accordingly.
	4POSITION STOP	○	You can select the louver stop position in the four.
	FREE STOP		The louver can stop at any position.
15 MODEL TYPE			
	HEAT PUMP	※	
	COOLING ONLY	※	
16 EXTERNAL CONTROL SET			
	INDIVIDUAL	○	If you input signal into CNT of the indoor printed circuit board from external, the indoor unit will be operated independently according to the input from external.
	FOR ALL UNITS		If you input into CNT of the indoor printed circuit board from external, all units which connect to the same remote control are operated according to the input from external.
17 ROOM TEMP INDICATION SET			
	INDICATION OFF	○	
	INDICATION ON		In normal working indication, indoor unit temperature is indicated instead of airflow. (Only the master remote control can be indicated.)
18 ※INDICATION			
	INDICATION ON	○	
	INDICATION OFF		Heating preparation indication should not be indicated.
19 ℃/℉ SET			
	℃	○	Temperature indication is by degree C
	℉		Temperature indication is by degree F

To next page

Note (1)*The mark cannot use SRK serles.

ON/OFF button (finished)

Note 1: The initial setting marked "※" is decided by connected indoor and outdoor unit, and is automatically defined as following table.

Function No.	Item	Default	Model
Remote control function02	AUTO RUN SET	AUTO RUN ON	"Auto-RUN" mode selectable indoor unit.
		AUTO RUN OFF	Indoor unit without "Auto-RUN" mode
Remote control function06	FAN SPEED SW	VALID	Indoor unit with two or three step of air flow setting
		INVALID	Indoor unit with only one of air flow setting
Remote control function07	LOUVER SW	VALID	Indoor unit with automatically swing louver
		INVALID	Indoor unit without automatically swing louver
Remote control function13	I/U FAN	HI-MID-LO	Indoor unit with three step of air flow setting
		HI-LO	Indoor unit with two step of air flow setting
		HI-MID	
		1 FAN SPEED	Indoor unit with only one of air flow setting
Remote control function15	MODEL TYPE	HEAT PUMP	Heat pump unit
		COOLING ONLY	Exclusive cooling unit

Note 3: As for plural indoor unit, set indoor functions to each master and slave indoor unit.
But only master indoor unit is received the setting change of indoor unit function "05 EXTERNAL INPUT" and "06 PERMISSION / PROHIBISHION".

From previous page

(Indoor unit function) I/U FUNCTION ▲

Indoor unit No. are indicated only when plural indoor units are connected.

I/U000 ▲
I/U001
I/U002
I/U003
I/U004

To set other indoor unit, press AIRCON NO. button, which allows you to go back to the indoor unit selection screen (for example: I/U 000 ▲).

Function / **setting**

* 02 FAN SPEED SET
- STANDARD ※
- HIGH SPEED 1 ※
- HIGH SPEED 2

* 03 FILTER SIGN SET
- INDICATION OFF
- TYPE 1 ○ — The filter sign is indicated after running for 180 hours.
- TYPE 2 — The filter sign is indicated after running for 600 hours.
- TYPE 3 — The filter sign is indicated after running for 1000 hours.
- TYPE 4 — The filter sign is indicated after running for 1000 hours, then the indoor unit will be stopped by compulsion after 24 hours.

04 POSITION — If you change the indoor function "04 POSITION", you must change the remote control function "14 POSITION" accordingly.
- 4POSITION STOP ○ — You can select the louver stop position in the four.
- FREE STOP — The louver can stop at any position.

05 EXTERNAL INPUT
- LEVEL INPUT ○
- PULSE INPUT

06 OPERATION PERMISSION/PROHIBITION
- INVALID ○
- VALID — Permission/prohibition control of operation will be valid.

* 07 EMERGENCY STOP
- INVALID ○
- VALID — With the VRF series, it is used to stop all indoor units connected with the same outdoor unit immediately. When stop signal is inputed from remote on-off terminal "CNT-6", all indoor units are stopped immediately.

* 08 ※ SP OFFSET
- OFFSET +3.0℃ — To be reset for producing +3.0˚C increase in temperature during heating.
- OFFSET +2.0℃ — To be reset for producing +2.0˚C increase in temperature during heating.
- OFFSET +1.0℃ — To be reset for producing +1.0˚C increase in temperature during heating.
- NO OFFSET ○

* 09 RETURN AIR TEMP
- OFFSET +2.0℃ — To be reset producing +2.0˚C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
- OFFSET +1.5℃ — To be reset producing +1.5˚C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
- OFFSET +1.0℃ — To be reset producing +1.0˚C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
- NO OFFSET ○
- OFFSET -1.0℃ — To be reset producing -1.0˚C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
- OFFSET -1.5℃ — To be reset producing -1.5˚C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
- OFFSET -2.0℃ — To be reset producing -2.0˚C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.

* 10 ※ FAN CONTROL
- LOW FAN SPEED ○ — When heating thermostat is OFF, fan speed is low speed.
- SET FAN SPEED — When heating thermostat is OFF, fan speed is set speed.
- INTERMITTENCE — When heating thermostat is OFF, fan speed is operated intermittently.
- FAN OFF — When heating thermostat is OFF, the fan is stopped. When the remote thermistor is working, "FAN OFF" is set automatically. Do not set "FAN OFF" when the indoor unit's thermistor is working.

* 11 FROST PREVENTION TEMP — Change of indoor heat exchanger temperature to start frost prevention control.
- TEMP HIGH
- TEMP LOW ○

* 12 FROST PREVENTION CONTROL — Working only with the Single split series.
- FAN CONTROL ON ○ — To control frost prevention, the indoor fan tap is raised.
- FAN CONTROL OFF

* 13 DRAIN PUMP LINK
- ❄◇ ○ — Drain pump is run during cooling and dry.
- ❄◇ AND ※ — Drain pump is run during cooling, dry and heating.
- ❄◇ AND ※ AND ≋ — Drain pump is run during cooling, dry, heating and fan.
- ❄◇ AND ≋ — Drain pump is run during cooling, dry and fan.

* 14 ❄ FAN REMAINING
- NO REMAINING ○ — After cooling is stopped, the fan does not perform extra operation.
- 0.5 HOUR — After cooling is stopped, the fan perform extra operation for half an hour.
- 1 HOUR — After cooling is stopped, the fan perform extra operation for an hour.
- 6 HOUR — After cooling is stopped, the fan perform extra operation for six hours.

* 15 ※ FAN REMAINING
- NO REMAINING ○ — After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is OFF, the fan does not perform extra operation.
- 0.5 HOUR — After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is OFF, the fan perform extra operation for half an hour.
- 2 HOUR — After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is OFF, the fan perform extra operation for two hours.
- 6 HOUR — After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is OFF, the fan perform extra operation for six hours.

* 16 ※ FAN INTERMITTENCE
- NO REMAINING ○
- 20minOFF 5minON — During heating is stopped or heating thermostat is OFF, the fan perform intermittent operation for five minutes with low fan speed after twenty minutes' OFF.
- 5minOFF 5minON — During heating is stopped or heating thermostat is OFF, the fan perform intermittent operation for five minutes with low fan speed after five minutes' OFF.

* 17 PRESSURE CONTROL
- STANDARD ※
- TYPE1 ※ — Connected "OA Processing" type indoor unit, and is automatically defined.

From previous page

Note2: Fan setting of "HIGH SPEED"

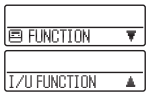
Fan tap		Indoor unit air flow setting			
		❄ - ❄ - ❄ - ❄	❄ - ❄ - ❄	❄ - ❄	❄ - ❄
FAN SPEED SET	STANDARD	UH - Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Lo	Hi - Me
	HIGH SPEED1, 2	UH - UH - Hi - Me	UH - Hi - Me	UH - Me	UH - Hi

Initial function setting of some indoor unit is "HIGH SPEED".
4 speed is not able to be set with wireless remote control.

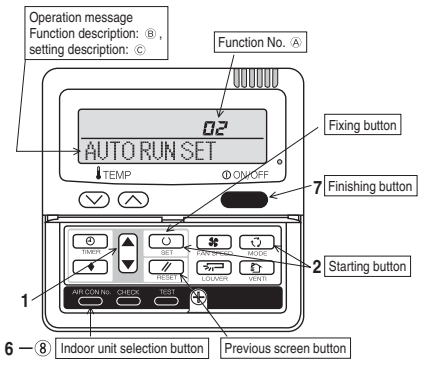
How to set function

1. **Stop air-conditioner and press (SET) (MODE) buttons at the same time for over three seconds, and the "FUNCTION SET ▼" will be displayed.**

2. **Press (SET) button.**
3. **Make sure which do you want to set, "FUNCTION ▼" (remote control function) or "I/U FUNCTION▲ " (indoor unit function).**
4. **Press ▲ or ▼ button.**
   Selecct "FUNCTION ▼" (remote control function) or "I/U FUNCTION ▲" (indoor unit function).



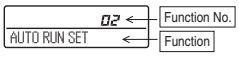
5. **Press (SET) button.**



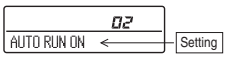
6. **【On the occasion of remote control function selection】**

① "DATA LOADING" (Indication with blinking)
↓
Display is changed to "01 ECO SET".

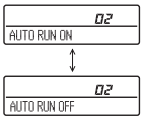
② Press ▲ or ▼ button.
"No. and function"are indicated by turns on the remote control function table, then you can select from them.
(For example)



③ Press (SET) button.
The current setting of selected function is indicated.
(for example) "AUTO RUN ON" ← If "02 AUTO RUN SET" is selected



④ Press ▲ or ▼ button.
Select the setting.



⑤ Press (SET)
"SET COMPLETE" will be indicated, and the setting will be completed.
Then after "No. and function" indication returns, Set as the same procedure if you want to set continuously ,and if to finish, go to 7.

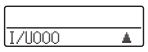
7. **Press ON/OFF button.**
   Setting is finished.

【On the occasion of indoor unit function selection】

① "DATA LOADING" (Blinking for 2 to 23 seconds to read the data)
↓
Indication is changed to "02 FAN SPEED SET".
Go to ②.

[Note]

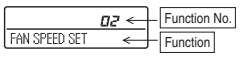
(1) If plural indoor units are connected to a remote control, the indication is "I/U 000" (blinking) ← The lowest number of the indoor unit connected is indicated.



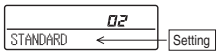
(2) Press ▲ or ▼ button.
Select the number of the indoor unit you are to set
If you select "ALL UNIT ▼", you can set the same setting with all unites.

(3) Press (SET) button.

② Press ▲ or ▼ button.
"No. and function" are indicated by turns on the indoor unit function table, then you can select from them.
(For example)



③ Press (SET) button.
The current setting of selected function is indicated.
(For example) "STANDARD" ← If "02 FAN SPEED SET" is selected.



④ Press ▲ or ▼ button.
Select the setting.

⑤ Press (SET) button.
"SET COMPLETE" will be indicated, and the setting will be completed.
Then after "No. and function" indication returns, set as the same procedure if you want to set continuously , and if to finish, go to 7.

※ When plural indoor units are connected to a remote control, press the AIRCON NO. button, which allows you to go back to the indoor unit selection screen. (example "I/U 000 ▲")

- It is possible to finish by pressing ON/OFF button on the way, but unfinished change of setting is unavailable.
- During setting, if you press (RESET) button, you return to the previous screen.
- Setting is memorized in the control and it is saved independently of power failure.

【How to check the current setting】

When you select from "No. and funcion" and press set button by the previous operation, the "Setting" displayed first is the current setting.
(But, if you select "ALL UNIT ▼", the setting of the lowest number indoor unit is displayed.)

(2) Model RC-EX1A

PJZ012D077 B

eco touch REMOTE CONTROL RC-EX1A
INSTALLATION MANUAL

1 . Safety precautions

This installation manual describes the installation methods and precautions related to the remote control. Use this manual together with the user's manuals for the indoor unit, outdoor unit and other optional equipment. Please read this manual carefully before starting the installation work to install the unit properly.

Safety precautions

●Please read this manual carefully before starting installation work to install the unit properly.
Every one of the followings is important information to be observed strictly.

⚠**WARNING**	Failure to follow these instructions properly may result in serious consequences such as death, severe injury, etc..
⚠**CAUTION**	Failure to follow these instructions properly may cause injury or property damage.

It could have serious consequences depending on the circumstances.

●The following pictograms are used in the text.

	Never do.		Always follow the instructions given.

●Keep this manual at a safe place where you can consult with whenever necessary. Show this manual to installers when moving or repairing the unit. When the ownership of the unit is transferred, the "Installation Manual" should be given to a new owner.

⚠WARNING

Ask a professional contractor to carry out installation work according to the installation manual.
Improper installation work may result in electric shocks, fire or break-down.

Shut OFF the main power supply before starting electrical work.
Otherwise, it could result in electric shocks, break-down or malfunction.

Do not install the unit in appropriate environment or where inflammable gas could generate, flow in, accumulate or leak.
If the unit is used at places where air contains dense oil mist, steam, organic solvent vapor, corrosive gas (ammonium, sulfuric compound, acid, etc) or where acidic or alkaline solution, special spray, etc. are used, it could cause electric shocks, break-down, smoke or fire as a result of significant deterioration of its performance or corrosion.

Do not install the unit where water vapor is generated excessively or condensation occurs.
It could cause electric shocks, fire or break-down.

Use the specified cables for wiring, and connect them securely with care to protect electronic parts from external forces.
Improper connections or fixing could cause heat generation, fire, etc.

Seal the inlet hole for remote control cable with putty.
If dew, water, insect, etc. enters through the hole, it could cause electric shocks, fire or break-down.

When installing the unit at a hospital, telecommunication facility, etc., take measures to suppress electric noises.

It could cause malfunction or break-down due to hazardous effects on the inverter, private power generator, high frequency medical equipment, radio communication equipment, etc.

The influences transmitted from the remote control to medical or communication equipment could disrupt medical activities, video broadcasting or cause noise interference.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not install the remote control at following places.

It could cause break-down or deformation of remote control.

(1) Where it is exposed to direct sunlight
(2) Near the equipment to generate heat
(3) Where the surface is not flat

Do not leave the remote control with its upper case removed.

When the upper case is removed, put it in a packing box or packing bag to protect internal PCBs or other parts from dust, moisture, etc.

2 . Accessories & precare on site

Accessories	R/C main unit, wood screw (ø3.5 x 16) 2 pcs User's Manual, Installation Manual

Parts procured at site

Item name	Q'ty	Remark
Switch box For 1 piece or 2 pieces (JIS C8340 or equivalent)	1	These are not required when installing directly on a wall.
Thin wall steel pipe for electric appliance (JIS C8305 or equivalent)	As required	
Lock nut, bushing (JIS C8330 or equivalent)	As required	
Lacing (JIS C8425 or equivalent)	As required	Necessary to run R/C cable on the wall.
Putty	Suitably	For sealing gaps
Molly anchor	As required	
R/C cable (0.3 mm^2 x 2 pcs)	As required	See right table when longer than 100 m

When the cable length is longer than 100 m, the max size for wires used in the R/C case is 0.5 mm^2 . Connect them to wires of larger size near the outside of R/C. When wires are connected, take measures to prevent water, etc. from entering inside.

< 200 m	0.5 mm^2 x 2-core
< 300 m	0.75 mm^2 x 2-core
< 400 m	1.25 mm^2 x 2-core
< 600 m	2.0 mm^2 x 2-core

3. Remote control installation procedure

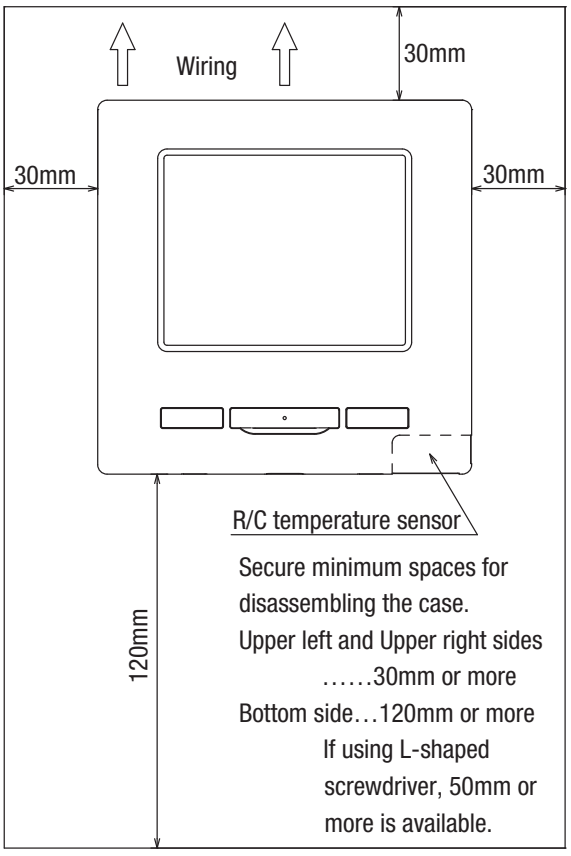
Determine where to install the remote control

Installation "Using a switch box"
"Installed directly on a wall"
Wiring direction "Backward"
"Upper center", "Upper left"

Cautions for selecting installation place

(1) Installation surface must be flat and sufficiently strong. R/C case must not be deformed.
(2) Where the R/C can detect room temperatures accurately. This is a must when detecting room temperatures with the temperature sensor of R/C.
· Install the R/C where it can detect the average temperature in the room.
· Install the R/C separated from a heat source sufficiently.
· Install the R/C where it will not be influenced by the turbulence of air when the door is opened or closed.
Select a place where the R/C is not exposed to direct sunlight or blown by winds from the air conditioner or temperatures on the wall surface will not deviate largely from actual room temperature.

Installation space



Request

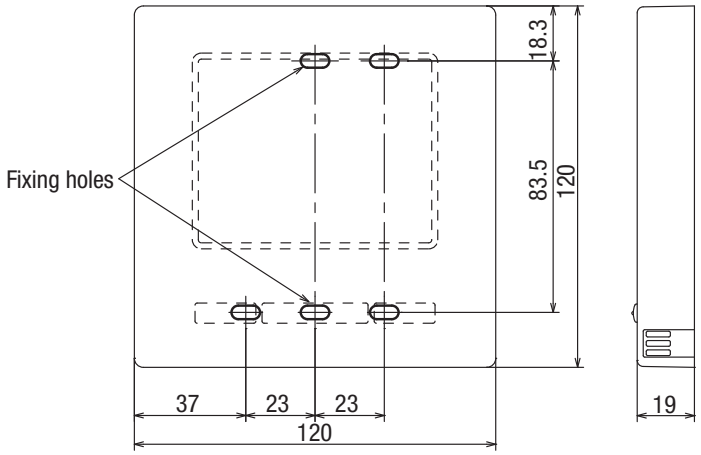
Be sure not to install R/C at a place where temperatures around the installation surface of R/C may differ largely from actual room temperature.
Difference between detected temperature and actual room temperature could cause troubles.
The correction for detected temperature by the R/C cannot offset such temperature difference because it corrects the detected temperatures itself.

Request

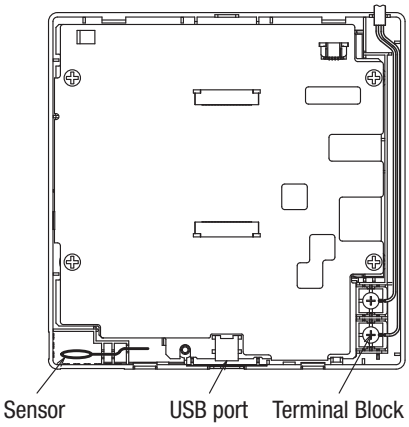
Do not install the R/C at a place where it is exposed to direct sunlight or where surrounding air temperature exceeds 40°C or drops below 0°C.
It could cause discoloration, deformation, malfunction or breakdown.

Installation procedure

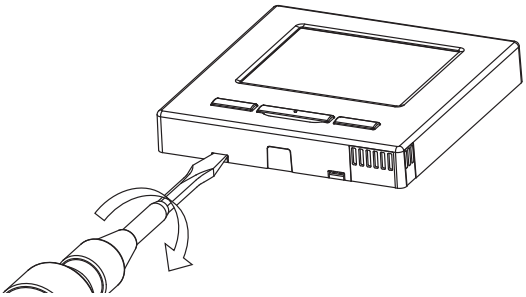
Dimensions (Viewed from front)



PCB side (Viewed from rear)



① To remove the upper case from the bottom cases of R/C
· Insert the tip of flat head screwdriver or the like in the recess at the lower part of R/C and twist it lightly to remove.

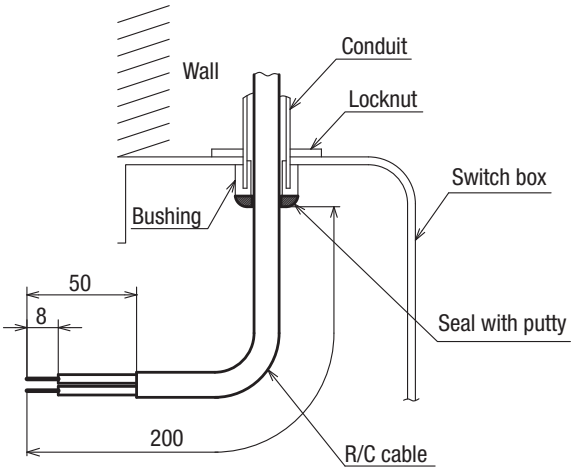


Take care to protect the removed upper case from moisture or dust.

② Connect wires from X and Y terminals of R/C to X and Y terminals of indoor unit.
R/C wires (X, Y) have no polarity.

In case of embedding wiring (When the wiring is retrieved "Backward")

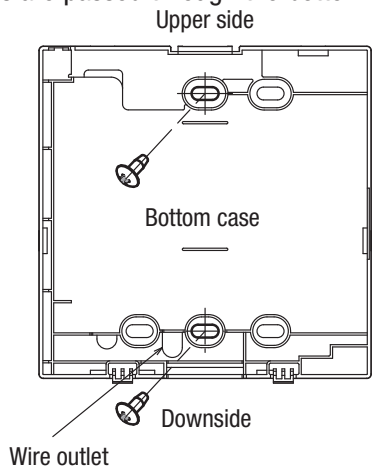
③ Embed the switch box and the R/C wires beforehand.



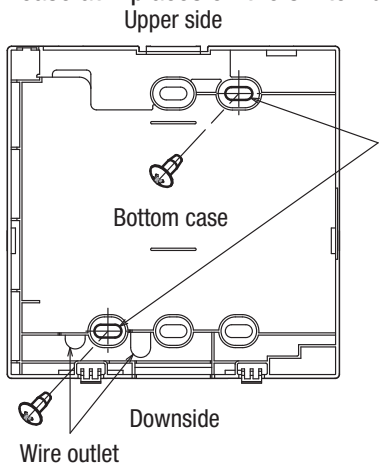
Seal the inlet hole for the R/C wiring with putty.
● If dust or insect enters, it could cause electric shocks, fire or breakdown.

④ When wires are passed through the bottom case, fix the bottom case at 2 places on the switch box.

Switch box for 1 pc



Switch box for 2 pcs



Cut out the thin wall part at the screw mounting section with a knife or the like before tightening the screw.

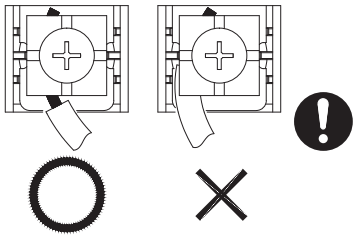
⑤ When fixing the bottom case diagonally at 2 places, cut out the thin wall section on the case.

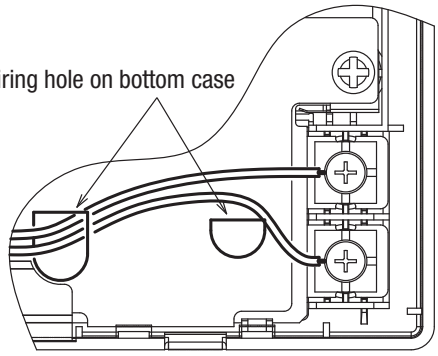
⑥ Fix wires such that the wires will run around the terminal screws on the top case of R/C.

Cautions for wire connection

Use wires of no larger than 0.5 mm^2 for wiring running through the remote control case, Take care not to pinch the sheath.

Tighten by hand (0.7 N·m or less) the wire connection. If the wire is connected using an electric driver, it may cause failure or deformation.

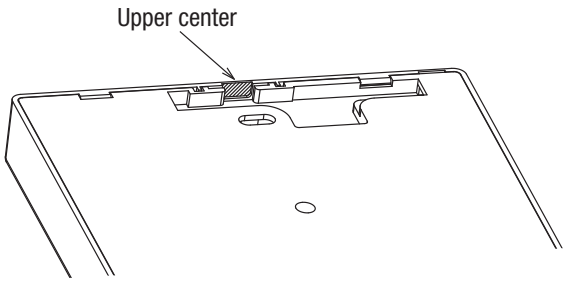




⑦ Install the upper case with care not to pinch wires of R/C.

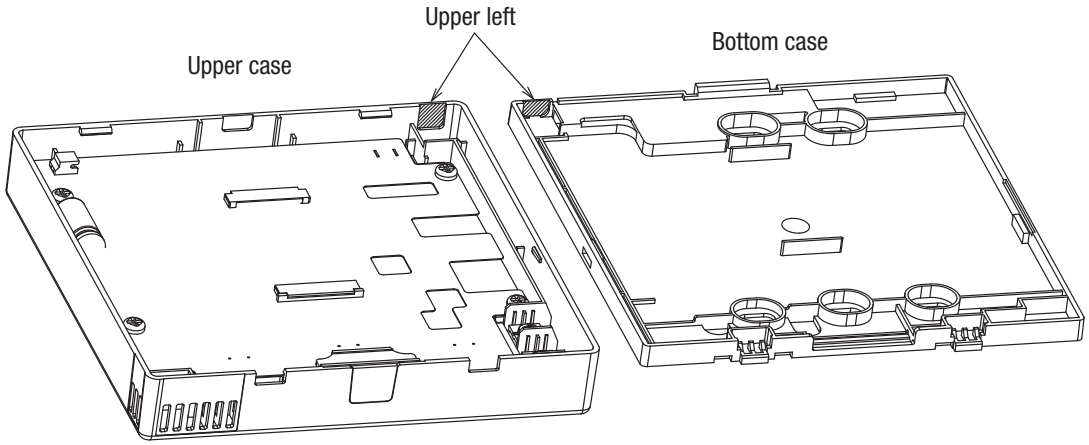
In case of exposing wiring (When the wiring is taken out from the “upper center” or “upper left” of R/C)

③ Cut out the thin wall sections on the cases for the size of wire.



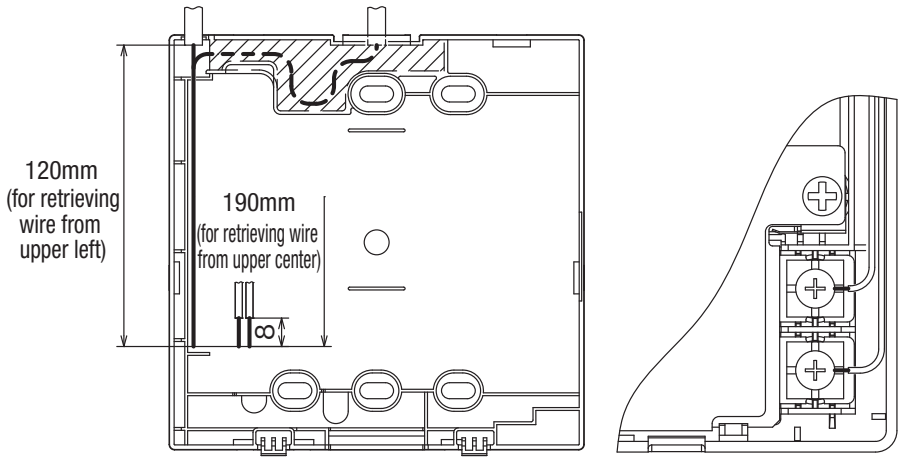
When taking the wiring out from the upper center, open a hole before separating the upper and bottom cases. This will reduce risk of damaging the PCB and facilitate subsequent work.

When taking the wiring out from the upper left, take care not to damage the PCB and not to leave any chips of cut thin wall inside.



If the hole is cut too large, moisture, dust or insects may enter.
Seal gaps with putty or the like.

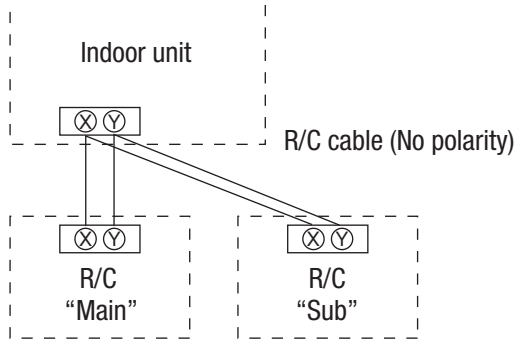
④ Fix the bottom R/C case on a flat surface with wood screws.
⑤ In case of the upper center, pass the wiring behind the bottom case. (Hatched section)
⑥ Fix wires such that the wires will run around the terminal screw of the top case of R/C.
⑦ Install the top case with care not to pinch wires of R/C.



Main/Sub setting when more than one remote control are used

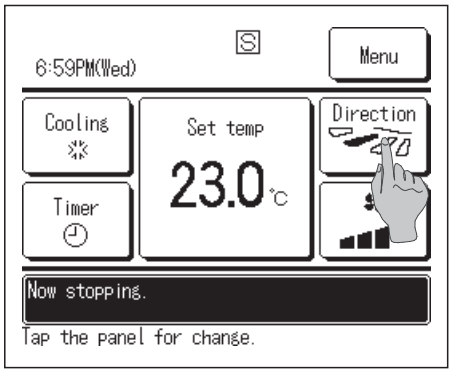
Main-Sub setting for use of two or more R/C

Up to two units of R/C can be used at the maximum for 1 indoor unit or 1 group.
One is main R/C and the other is sub R/C.
Operating range is different depending on the main or sub R/C.



Set the "Main" and "Sub" as described at Section 7 of installtion manual attached to the remote control.

R/C function	Main	Sub
Run/Stop, setting temperature, fan speed and flap direction operations	○	○
High power and energy-saving operations	○	○
Energy-saving setting	○	—
R/C sensor	○	—
Test run menu operation	○	—
Room temperature range setting	○	—
Indoor unit settings	○	—
Individual flap control	○	—
Operation data display	○	—
Error history display	○	○



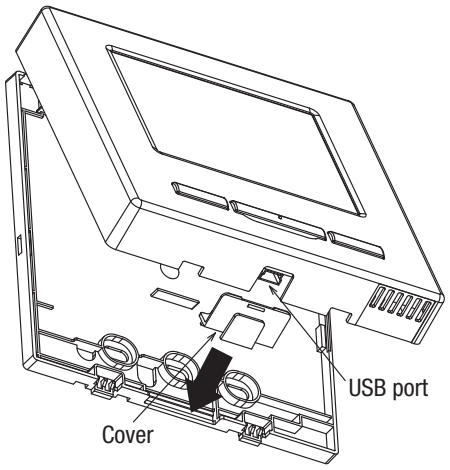
Note: Connection to personal computer

It can be set from a personal computer via the USB port (mini-B).
Connect after removing the cover for USB port of upper case.

Replace the cover after use.
If dust, insect, etc. enters, it could cause electric shocks or breakdown.

Special software is necessary for the connection.
For details, view the web site or refer to the engineering data.

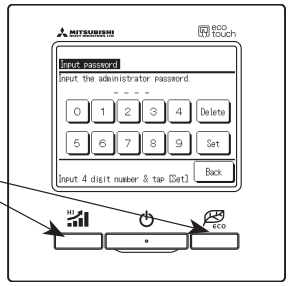
Do not connect to a personal computer without using the special software.
Do not connect the personal computer to the USB simultaneously with other USB devices.
It could cause malfunction or breakdown of R/C or personal computer.



Note: Initializing of password

Administrator password (for daily setting items) and service password (for installation, test run and maintenance) are used.

- The administrator password at factory default is “0000”. This setting can be changed (Refer to User's Manual). When the administrator password is forgotten, it can be initialized, if the [Highpower] and the [Energy-saving] buttons are pushed simultaneously for 5 seconds on the administrator password input screen.
- Service password is “9999”, which cannot be changed.
  When the administrator password is input, the service password is also accepted.



PCA012D057B

R410A REFRIGERANT USED

5.4 Installation of outdoor unit

Model FDC71VNP

• This installation manual deals with outdoor units and general installation specifications only. For indoor units, refer to page 138.
• When install the unit, be sure to check whether the selection of installation place, power supply specifications, usage limitation (piping length, height differences between indoor and outdoor units, power supply voltage and etc.) and installation spaces.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.
- The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠**WARNING** and ⚠**CAUTION**.
  ⚠**WARNING** : Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠**CAUTION** : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
- Be sure to confirm no anomaly on the equipment by commissioning after completed installation and explain the operating methods as well as the maintenance methods of this equipment to the user according to the owner's manual.
- Keep the installation manual together with owner's manual at a place where any user can read at any time. Moreover if necessary, ask to hand them to a new user.
- For installing qualified personnel, take precautions in respect to themselves by using suitable protective clothing, groves, etc., and then perform the installation works.
- Please pay attention not to fall down the tools, etc. when installing the unit at the high position.
- If unusual noise can be heard during operation, consult the dealer.
- The meanings of "Marks" used here are shown as follows:

⊘	Never do it under any circumstances.	❗ ⏚	Always do it according to the instruction.

⚠ WARNING

• Installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.
If you install the system by yourself, it may cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire and personal injury, as a result of a system malfunction. Do not carry out the installation and maintenance work except by the qualified installer.

• Install the system in full accordance with the installation manual.
Incorrect installation may cause bursts, personal injury, water leaks, electric shocks and fire.

• Be sure to use only for household and residence.
If this appliance is installed in inferior environment such as machine shop and etc., it can cause malfunction.

• When installing in small rooms, take prevention measures not to exceed the density limit of refrigerant in the event of leakage, referred by the formula (accordance with ISO5149).
If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit, please consult the dealer and install the ventilation system, otherwise lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accident.

• Use the original accessories and the specified components for installation.
If parts other than those prescribed by us are used, It may cause water leaks, electric shocks, fire and personal injury.

• Install the unit in a location with good support.
Unsuitable installation locations can cause the unit to fall and cause material damage and personal injury.

• Ensure the unit is stable when installed, so that it can withstand earthquakes and strong winds.
Unsuitable installation locations can cause the unit to fall and cause material damage and personal injury.

• Ventilate the working area well in the event of refrigerant leakage during installation.
If the refrigerant comes into contact with naked flames, poisonous gas is produced.

• Use the prescribed pipes, flare nuts and tools for R410A.
Using existing parts (for R22 or R407C) can cause the unit failure and serious accidents due to burst of the refrigerant circuit.

• Tighten the flare nut by torque wrench with specified method.
If the flare nut were tightened with excess torque, this may cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period.

• Do not open the operation valves for liquid line and gas line until completed refrigerant piping work, air tightness test and evacuation.
If the compressor is operated in state of opening operation valves before completed connection of refrigerant piping work, air can be sucked into refrigerant circuit, which can cause bust or personal injury due to anomalously high pressure in the refrigerant.

• The electrical installation must be carried out by the qualified electrician in accordance with "the norm for electrical work" and "national wiring regulation", and the system must be connected to the dedicated circuit.
Power supply with insufficient capacity and incorrect function done by improper work can cause electric shocks and fire.

• Be sure to shut off the power before starting electrical work.
Failure to shut off the power can cause electric shocks, unit failure or incorrect function of equipment.

• Be sure to use the cables conformed to safety standard and cable ampacity for power distribution work.
Unconformable cables can cause electric leak, anomalous heat production or fire.

• This appliance must be connected to main power supply by means of a circuit breaker or switch (fuse:20A) with a contact separation of at least 3mm.

• Arrange the wiring in the control box so that it cannot be pushed up further into the box. Install the service panel correctly.
Incorrect installation may result in overheating and fire.

• Use the prescribed cables for electrical connection, tighten the cables securely in terminal block and relieve the cables correctly to prevent overloading the terminal blocks.
Loose connections or cable mountings can cause anomalous heat production or fire.

• Be sure to fix up the service panels.
Incorrect fixing can cause electric shocks or fire due to intrusion of dust or water.

• Be sure to switch off the power supply in the event of installation, inspection or servicing.
If the power supply is not shut off, there is a risk of electric shocks, unit failure or personal injury due to the unexpected start of fan.

• Stop the compressor before removing the pipe after shutting the service valve on pump down work.
If the pipe is removed when the compressor is in operation with the service valve open, air would be mixed in the refrigeration circuit and it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the cooling cycle.

• Only use prescribed optional parts. The installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.
If you install the system by yourself, it can cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire.

• Be sure to wear protective goggles and gloves while at work.

• Earth leakage breaker must be installed.
If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it can cause electric shocks.

• Appliance is not to be used by children or persons with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities, or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they have been given supervision or instruction.
Children being supervised not to play with appliance.

• Ensure that no air enters in the refrigerant circuit when the unit is installed and removed.
If air enters in the refrigerant circuit, the pressure in the refrigerant circuit becomes too high, which can cause burst and personal injury.

• Do not processing, splice the power cord, or share a socket with other power plugs.
This may cause fire or electric shock due to defecting contact, defecting insulation and over-current etc.

• Do not bundling, winding or processing for the power cord. Or, do not deforming the power plug due to tread it.
This may cause fire or heating.

• Do not run the unit with removed panels or protections.
Touching rotating equipments, hot surfaces or high voltage parts can cause personal injury due to entrapment, burn or electric shocks.

• Do not perform any change of protective device itself or its setup condition.
The forced operation by short-circuiting protective device of pressure switch and temperature controller or the use of non specified component can cause fire or burst.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Carry out the electrical work for ground lead with care.**
  Do not connect the ground lead to the gas line, water line, lightning conductor or telephone line's ground lead. Incorrect grounding can cause unit faults such as electric shocks due to short-circuiting.

- **Use the circuit breaker for all pole correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect circuit breaker, it can cause the unit malfunction and fire.
- **Install isolator or disconnect switch on the power supply wiring in accordance with the local codes and regulations.**
  The isolator should be locked in OFF state in accordance with EN60204-1.
- **After maintenance, all wiring, wiring ties and the like, should be returned to their original state and wiring route, and the necessary clearance from all metal parts should be secured.**
- **Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual.**
  Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place.
- **Take care when carrying the unit by hand.**
  If the unit weights more than 20kg, it must be carried by two or more persons. Do not carry by the plastic straps, always use the carry handle when carrying the unit by hand. Use gloves to minimize the risk of cuts by the aluminum fins.
- **Dispose of any packing materials correctly.**
  Any remaining packing materials can cause personal injury as it contains nails and wood. And to avoid danger of suffocation, be sure to keep the plastic wrapper away from children and to dispose after tear it up.
- **Be sure to insulate the refrigerant pipes so as not to condense the ambient air moisture on them.**
  Insufficient insulation can cause condensation, which can lead to moisture damage on the ceiling, floor, furniture and any other valuables.
- **When perform the air conditioner operation (cooling or drying operation) in which ventilator is installed in the room. In this case, using the air conditioner in parallel with the ventilator, there is the possibility that drain water may backflow in accordance with the room lapse into the negative pressure status. Therefore, set up the opening port such as incorporate the air into the room that may appropriate to ventilation (For example; Open the door a little). In addition, just as above, so set up the opening port if the room lapse into negative pressure status due to register of the wind for the high rise apartment etc.**

- **Do not install the unit in the locations listed below.**
  - Locations where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floating.
  - Locations where any substances that can affect the unit such as sulphide gas, chloride gas, acid and alkaline can occur.
  - Vehicles and ships.
  - Locations where cosmetic or special sprays are often used.
  - Locations with direct exposure of oil mist and steam such as kitchen and machine plant.
  - Locations where any machines which generate high frequency harmonics are used.
  - Locations with salty atmospheres such as coastlines.
  - Locations with heavy snow (If installed, be sure to provide base flame and snow hood mentioned in the manual).
  - Locations where the unit is exposed to chimney smoke.
  - Locations at high altitude (more than 1000m high).
  - Locations with ammonic atmospheres.
  - Locations where heat radiation from other heat source can affect the unit.
  - Locations without good air circulation.
  - Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit.
  - Locations where short circuit of air can occur (in case of multiple units installation).
  - Locations where strong air blows against the air outlet of outdoor unit.
  - Locations where something located above the unit could fall.

  It can cause remarkable decrease in performance, corrosion and damage of components, malfunction and fire.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit in the locations listed below.**
  - Locations where discharged hot air or operating sound of the outdoor unit can bother neighborhood.
  - Locations where outlet air of the outdoor unit blows directly to an animal or plants. The outlet air can affect adversely to the plant etc.
  - Locations where vibration can be amplified and transmitted due to insufficient strength of structure.
  - Locations where vibration and operation sound generated by the outdoor unit can affect seriously (on the wall or at the place near bed room).
  - Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 5m).
  - Locations where drainage cannot run off safely.

  It can affect surrounding environment and cause a claim.
- **Do not install the unit near the location where leakage of combustible gases can occur.**
  If leaked gases accumulate around the unit, it can cause fire.
- **Do not install the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfurous acid gas etc.) or combustible gas (such as thinner and petroleum gases) can accumulate or collect, or where volatile combustible substances are handled.**
  Corrosive gas can cause corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts and etc. And combustible gas can cause fire.
- **Do not install nor use the system close to the equipment that generates electromagnetic fields or high frequency harmonics.**
  Equipment such as inverters, standby generators, medical high frequency equipments and telecommunication equipments can affect the system, and cause malfunctions and breakdowns. The system can also affect medical equipment and telecommunication equipment, and obstruct its function or cause jamming.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit in a location where insects and small animals can inhabit.**
  Insects and small animals can enter the electric parts and cause damage or fire. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **Do not use the base flame for outdoor unit which is corroded or damaged due to long periods of operation.**
  Using an old and damage base flame can cause the unit falling down and cause personal injury.
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse with the correct rating in the location where fuses are to be used.**
  Connecting the circuit with copper wire or other metal thread can cause unit failure and fire.
- **Do not touch any buttons with wet hands.**
  It can cause electric shocks.
- **Do not touch any refrigerant pipes with your hands when the system is in operation.**
  During operation the refrigerant pipes become extremely hot or extremely cold depending the operating condition, and it can cause burn injury or frost injury.
- **Do not touch the suction or aluminum fin on the outdoor unit.**
  This may cause injury.
- **Do not put anything on the outdoor unit and operating unit.**
  This may cause damage the objects or injury due to falling to the object.
- **Do not use the unit for special purposes such as storing foods, cooling precision instruments and preservation of animals, plants or art.**
- **Do not clean up the unit with water.**

Notabilia as a unit designed for R410A

- Do not use any refrigerant other than R410A. R410A will rise to pressure about 1.6 times higher than that of a conventional refrigerant. A cylinder containing R410A has a pink indication mark on the top.
- A unit designed for R410A has adopted a different size indoor unit operation valve charge port and a different size check joint provided in the unit to prevent the charging of a wrong refrigerant by mistake. The processed dimension of the flared part of a refrigerant pipe and a flare nut's parallel side measurement have also been altered to raise strength against pressure. Accordingly, you are required to arrange dedicated R410A tools listed in the table on the left before installing or servicing this unit.
- Do not use a charge cylinder. The use of a charge cylinder will cause the refrigerant composition to change, which results in performance degradation.
- In charging refrigerant, always take it out from a cylinder in the liquid phase.
- All indoor units must be models designed exclusively for R410A. Check connectable indoor unit models in a catalog, etc. (A wrong indoor unit, if connected into the system, will impair proper system operation)

Check before installation work

- Model name and power source
- Refrigerant piping length
- Piping, wiring and miscellaneous small parts
- Indoor unit installation manual

Accessories for outdoor unit		Q'ty
①	Grommet (Heat pump type only)	4
②	Drain elbow (Heat pump type only)	1
③	Reducer set ø9.52→ø6.35	1
④	Reducer set ø15.88→ø12.7	1

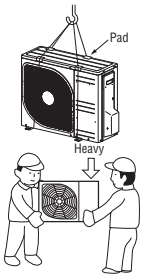
Option parts		Q'ty
ⓐ	Sealing plate	1
ⓑ	Sleeve	1
ⓒ	Inclination plate	1
ⓓ	Putty	1
ⓔ	Drain hose (extension hose)	1
ⓕ	Piping cover (for insulation of connection piping)	1

Necessary tools for the installation work			
1	Plus headed driver	9	Wrench key (Hexagon) [4m/m]
2	Knife	10	Vacuum pump
3	Saw	11	Vacuum pump adapter (Anti-reverse flow type) (Designed specifically for R410A)
4	Tape measure	12	Gauge manifold (Designed specifically for R410A)
5	Hammer	13	Charge hose (Designed specifically for R410A)
6	Spanner wrench	14	Flaring tool set (Designed specifically for R410A)
7	Torque wrench [14.0～82.0N·m (1.4～8.2kgf·m)]	15	Gas leak detector (Designed specifically for R410A)
8	Hole core drill (65mm in diameter)	16	Gauge for projection adjustment (Used when flare is made by using conventional flare tool)

1. HAULAGE AND INSTALLATION (Take particular care in carrying in or moving the unit, and always perform such an operation with two or more persons.)

⚠CAUTION When a unit is hoisted with slings for haulage, take into consideration the offset of its gravity center position. If not properly balanced, the unit can be thrown off-balance and fall.

1) Delivery



- Deliver the unit as close as possible to the installation site before removing it from the packaging.
- When you have to unpack the unit for a compelling reason before you haul it to the installation point, hoist the unit with nylon slings or ropes and protection pads so that you may not damage the unit.

2) Portage

- The right hand side of the unit as viewed from the front (diffuser side) is heavier. A person carrying the right hand side must take heed of this fact. A person carrying the left hand side must hold with his right hand the handle provided on the front panel of the unit and with his left hand the corner column section.

3) Selection of installation location for the outdoor unit

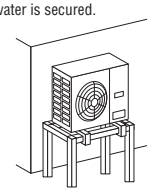
Be sure to select a suitable installation place in consideration of following conditions.

- ○ A place where it is horizontal, stable and can endure the unit weight and will not allow vibration transmittance of the unit.
- ○ A place where it can be free from possibility of bothering neighbors due to noise or exhaust air from the unit.
- ○ A place where the unit is not exposed to oil splashes.
- ○ A place where it can be free from danger of flammable gas leakage.
- ○ A place where drain water can be disposed without any trouble.
- ○ A place where the unit will not be affected by heat radiation from other heat source.
- ○ A place where snow will not accumulate.
- ○ A place where the unit can be kept away 5m or more from TV set and/or radio receiver in order to avoid any radio or TV interference.
- ○ A place where good air circulation can be secured, and enough service space can be secured for maintenance and service of the unit safely.
- ○ A place where the unit will not be affected by electromagnetic waves and/or high-harmonic waves generated by other equipment.
- ○ A place where chemical substances like sulfuric gas, chloric gas, acid and alkali (including ammonia), which can harm the unit, will not be generated and not remain.
- ○ If a operation is conducted when the outdoor air temperature is -5℃ lower, the outdoor unit should be installed at a place where it is not influenced by natural wind.
- ○ A place where strong wind will not blow against the outlet air blow of the unit.

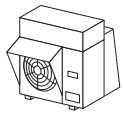
4) Caution about selection of installation location

(1) If the unit is installed in the area where the snow will accumulate, following measures are required.
The bottom plate of unit and intake, outlet may be blocked by snow.

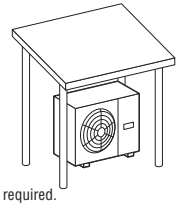
1 Install the unit on the base so that the bottom is higher than snow cover surface, and draining water is secured.



2 Provide a snow hood to the outdoor unit on site.



3 Install the unit under eaves or provide the roof on site.

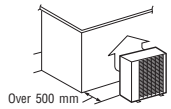


Since drain water generated by defrost control may freeze, following measures are required.

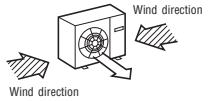
- Don't execute drain piping work by using a drain elbow and drain grommets (accessories). [Refer to Drain piping work.]
- Attached heater on a base plate on site, if there is possibility to freeze drain water. In case that the product has a corrective drainage system, the drainage paths should have suitable threatment against freezing but be sure not to melt the material of drainage paths with heat.

(2) If the unit can be affected by strong wind, following measures are required.
Strong wind can cause damage of fan (fan motor), or can cause performance degradation, or can trigger anomalous stop of the unit due to rising of high pressure.

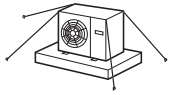
1.Install the outlet air blow side of the unit to face a wall of building, or provide a fence or a windbreak screen.



2.Install the outlet air blow side of the unit in a position perpendicular to the direction of wind.



3.The unit should be installed on the stable and level foundation. If the foundation is not level, the down the unit with wires.

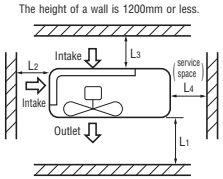


5) Installation space

- Walls surrounding the unit in the four sides are not acceptable.
- There must be a 1-meter or larger space in the above.
- When more than one unit are installed side by side, provide a 250mm or wider interval between them as a service space. In order to facilitate servicing of controllers, please provide a sufficient space between units so that their top plates can be removed easily.
- Where a danger of short-circuiting exists, install guide louvers.
- When more than one unit are installed, provide sufficient intake space consciously so that short-circuiting may not occur.
- Where piling snow can bury the outdoor unit, provide proper snow guards.

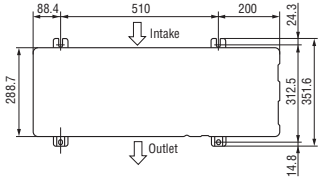
(mm)

Size \ Example installation	Ⅰ	Ⅱ	Ⅲ	Ⅳ
L1	Open	280	280	180
L2	100	75	Open	Open
L3	100	80	80	80
L4	250	Open	250	Open

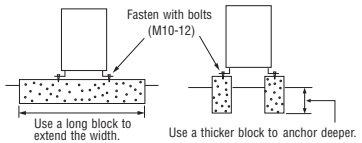


6) Installation

① Anchor bolt fixed position



② Notabilia for installation



- In installing the unit, fix the unit's legs with bolts specified on the above.
- The protrusion of an anchor bolt on the front side must be kept within 15 mm.
- Securely install the unit so that it does not fall over during earthquakes or strong winds, etc.
- Refer to the above illustrations for information regarding concrete foundations.
- Install the unit in a level area. (With a gradient of 5 mm or less.) Improper installation can result in a compressor failure, broken piping within the unit and abnormal noise generation.

7) To run the unit for a cooling operation, when the outdoor temperature is –5°C or lower.

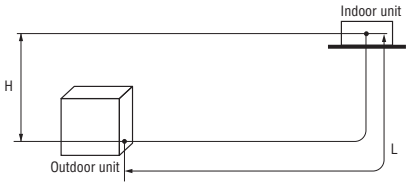
- When the outdoor air temperature is –5°C or lower, provide a snow hood to the outdoor unit on site. So that strong wind will not blow against the outdoor heat exchanger directly.

2. REFRIGERANT PIPING WORK

1) Restrictions on unit installation and use

- Check the following points in light of the indoor unit specifications and the installation site.
- Observe the following restrictions on unit installation and use. Improper installation can result in a compressor failure or performance degradation.

Restrictions			Dimensional restrictions	Marks appearing in the drawing on the right
Indoor unit	FDT, FDEN, FDU, FDUM, SRK	Main pipe length	30m or less	L
	FDF		23m or less	L
Elevation difference between indoor and outdoor units	When the outdoor unit is positioned higher		20m or less	H
	When the outdoor unit is positioned lower		20m or less	H



⚠CAUTION

- The use restrictions appearing in the table above are applicable to the standard pipe size combinations shown in the table below. Where an existing pipe system is utilized, different one-way pipe length restrictions should apply depending on its pipe size. For more information, please see " 5. UTILIZATION OF EXISTING PIPING."

2) Determination of pipe size

- Determine refrigerant pipe size pursuant to the following guidelines based on the indoor unit specifications.

		Gas pipe	Liquid pipe
Outdoor unit connected		ø12.7 Flare	ø6.35 Flare
Refrigerant piping (branch pipeL)		ø12.7	ø6.35
Indoor unit connected	FDT, FDEN, FDU, FDUM, FDF	ø15.88	ø9.52
	SRK	ø15.88	ø6.35

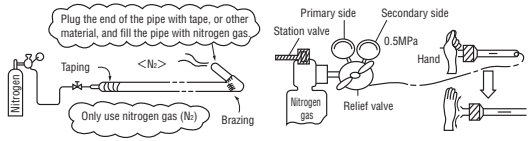
When pipe is brazing.

About brazing

Brazing must be performed under a nitrogen gas flow.

Without nitrogen gas, a large quantity of foreign matters (oxidized film) are created, causing a critical failure from capillary tube or expansion valve clogging.

If the refrigerant is existing in the pipe at brazing, poisonous gas is produced.



3) Refrigerant pipe wall thickness and material

- Select refrigerant pipes of the table shown on the right wall thickness and material as specified for each pipe size.

NOTE ● Select pipes having a wall thickness larger than the specified minimum pipe thickness.

Pipe diameter [mm]	ø6.35	ø12.7
Minimum pipe wall thickness [mm]	0.8	0.8
Pipe material*	O-type pipe	O-type pipe

*Phosphorus deoxidized seamless copper pipe ICS 23.040.15, ICS 77.150.30

4) On-site piping work

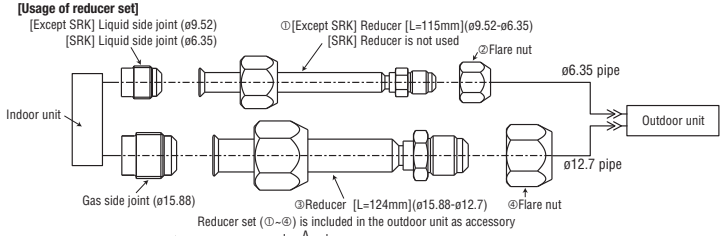
⚠ IMPORTANT Take care so that installed pipes may not touch components within a unit. If touching with an internal component, it will generate abnormal sounds and/or vibrations.

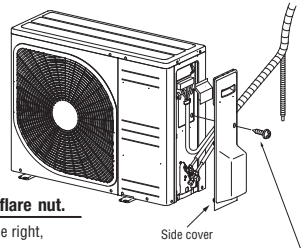
- [Except SRK] Regarding the change in the size of liquid/gas pipe; Use the reducer at indoor unit side. Reducer set is available in the outdoor unit as accessory.
- [SRK] Regarding the change in the size of gas pipe; Use the reducer at indoor unit side. Reducer set is available in the outdoor unit as accessory.

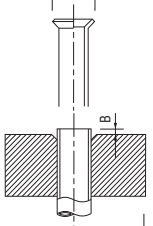
How to remove the side cover Please remove the screw of a side cover and remove to the front.

- Carry out the on site piping work with the operation valve fully closed.
- Give sufficient protection to a pipe end (compressed and blazed, or with an adhesive tape) so that water or foreign matters may not enter the piping.
- Bend a pipe to a radius as large as practical.(R100~R150) Do not bend a pipe repeatedly to correct its form.
- Flare connection is used between the unit and refrigerant pipe. Flare a pipe after engaging a flare nut onto it. Flare dimensions for R410A are different from those for conventional R407C. Although we recommend the use of flaring tools designed specifically for R410A, conventional flaring tools can also be used by adjusting the measurement of protrusion B with a protrusion control gauge.
- The pipe should be anchored every 1.5m or less to isolate the vibration.
- Tighten a flare joint securely with a double spanner.

[Usage of reducer set]







Flared pipe end : A (mm)

Copper pipe outer diameter	A $^{0}_{-0.4}$
ø6.35	9.1
ø12.7	16.6

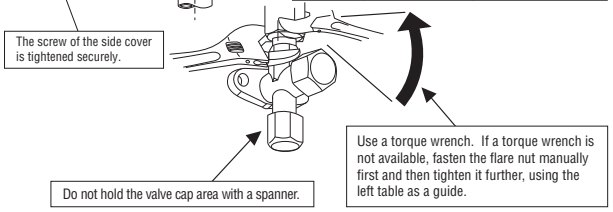
Copper pipe protrusion for flaring : B (mm)

Copper pipe outer diameter	In the case of a rigid (clutch) type	
	With an R410A tool	With a conventional tool
ø6.35	0~0.5	1.0~1.5
ø12.7		

⚠ CAUTION **Do not apply force beyond proper fastening torque in tightening the flare nut.**

Fix both liquid and gas operation valves at the valve main bodies as illustrated on the right, and then fasten them, applying appropriate fastening torque.

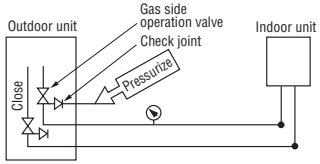
Operation valve size (mm)	Tightening torque (N·m)	Tightening angle (°)	Recommended length of a tool handle (mm)
ø6.35	14~18	45~60	150
ø9.52	34~42	30~45	200
ø12.7	49~61	30~45	250
ø15.88	68~82	15~20	300



5) Air tightness test

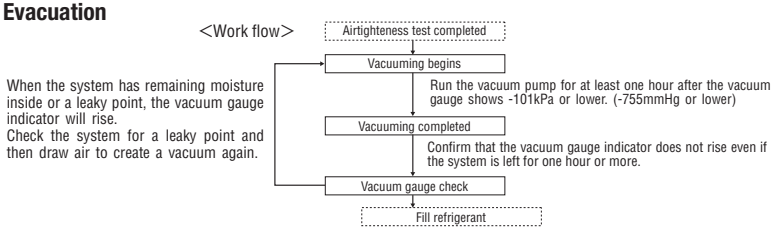
① Although outdoor and indoor units themselves have been tested for air tightness at the factory, check the connecting pipes after the installation work for air tightness from the operation valve's check joint equipped on the outdoor unit side. While conducting a test, keep the operation valve shut all the time.
a) Raise the pressure to 0.5 MPa, and then stop. Leave it for five minutes to see if the pressure drops.
b) Then raise the pressure to 1.5 MPa, and stop. Leave it for five more minutes to see if the pressure drops.
c) Then raise the pressure to the specified level (4.15 MPa), and record the ambient temperature and the pressure.
d) If no pressure drop is observed with an installation pressurized to the specified level and left for about one day, it is acceptable. When the ambient Temperature fall 1℃, the pressure also fall approximately 0.01 MPa. The pressure, if changed, should be compensated for.
e) If a pressure drop is observed in checking e) and a) – d), a leak exists somewhere. Find a leak by applying bubble test liquid to welded parts and flare joints and repair it. After repair, conduct an air-tightness test again.

② In conducting an air-tightness test, use nitrogen gas and pressurize the system with nitrogen gas from the gas side. Do not use a medium other than nitrogen gas under any circumstances.

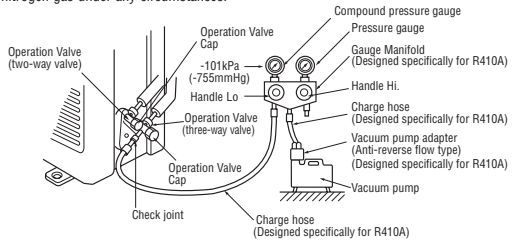


6) Evacuation

<Work flow>



When the system has remaining moisture inside or a leaky point, the vacuum gauge indicator will rise.
Check the system for a leaky point and then draw air to create a vacuum again.



Pay attention to the following points in addition to the above for the R410A and compatible machines.

○To prevent a different oil from entering, assign dedicated tools, etc. to each refrigerant type. Under no circumstances must a gauge manifold and a charge hose in particular be shared with other refrigerant types (R22, R407C, etc.).
○Use a counterflow prevention adapter to prevent vacuum pump oil from entering the refrigerant system.

Securely tighten the operation valve cap and the check joint blind nut after adjustment.

Operation valve size (mm)	Operation valve cap tightening torque (N·m)	Check joint blind nut tightening torque (N·m)
ø6.35 (1/4")	20～30	10～12
ø12.7 (1/2")	25～35	

7) Additional refrigerant charge

(1) Calculate a required refrigerant charge volume from the following table.

Indoor unit	Additional charge volume (kg) per meter of refrigerant piping (liquid pipe ø6.35)	Refrigerant volume charged for shipment at the factory (kg)	Installation's pipe length (m) covered without additional refrigerant charge
FDT, FDEN FDU, FDUM, SRK	0.02	1.6	15
FDF	0.02	1.6	8

●This unit contains factory charged refrigerant covering 15m/8m of refrigerant piping and additional refrigerant charge on the installation site is not required for an installation with up to 15m/8m refrigerant piping.
When refrigerant piping exceeds 15m/8m, additionally charge an amount calculated from the pipe length and the above table for the portion in excess of 15m/8m.
●If an existing pipe system is used, a required refrigerant charge volume will vary depending on the liquid pipe size. For further information, please see "5. UTILIZATION OF EXISTING PIPING."

Formula to calculate the volume of additional refrigerant required

Additional charge volume (kg) = (Main length (m) – Factory charged volume) x 0.02 (kg/m)

*When an additional charge volume calculation result is negative, it is not necessary to charge refrigerant additionally.

● For an installation measuring 15m/8m or shorter in pipe length, please charge the refrigerant volume charged for shipment at the factory, when you recharge refrigerant after servicing etc.

(2) Charging refrigerant

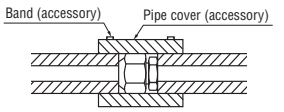
●Since R410A refrigerant must be charged in the liquid phase, you should charge it, keeping the container cylinder upside down or using a refrigerant cylinder equipped with a siphon tube.
●Charge refrigerant always from the liquid side service port with the operation valve shut. When you find it difficult to charge a required amount, fully open the outdoor unit valves on both liquid and gas sides and charge refrigerant from the gas (suction) side service port, while running the unit in the cooling mode. In doing so, care must be taken so that refrigerant may be discharged from the cylinder in the liquid phase all the time. When the cylinder valve is throttled down or a dedicated conversion tool to change liquid-phase refrigerant into mist is used to protect the compressor, however, adjust charge conditions so that refrigerant will gasify upon entering the unit.
●In charging refrigerant, always charge a calculated volume by using a scale to measure the charge volume.
●When refrigerant is charged with the unit being run, complete a charge operation within 30 minutes. Running the unit with an insufficient quantity of refrigerant for a long time can cause a compressor failure.

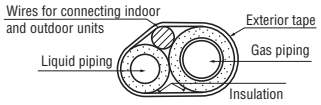
NOTE Put down the refrigerant volume calculated from the pipe length onto the caution label attached on the back side of the service panel.

8) Heating and condensation prevention

(1) Dress refrigerant pipes (both gas and liquid pipes) for heat insulation and prevention of dew condensation.
· Improper heat insulation/anti-dew dressing can result in a water leak or dripping causing damage to household effects, etc.

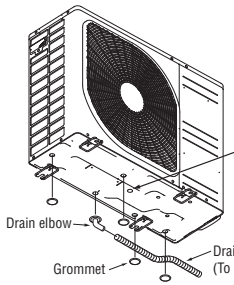
(2) Use a heat insulating material that can withstand 120℃ or a higher temperature. Poor heat insulating capacity can cause heat insulation problems or cable deterioration.
· All gas pipes must be securely heat insulated in order to prevent damage from dripping water that comes from the condensation formed on them during a cooling operation or personal injury from burns because their surface can reach quite a high temperature due to discharged gas flowing inside during a heating operation.
· Wrap indoor units' flare joints with heat insulating parts (pipe cover) for heat insulation (both gas and liquid pipes).
· Give heat insulation to both gas and liquid side pipes. Bundle a heat insulating material and a pipe tightly together so that no gaps may be left between them and wrap them together with a connecting cable by a dressing tape.
· **Both gas and liquid pipes need to be dressed with 20 mm or thicker heat insulation materials above the ceiling where relative humidity exceeds 70%.**





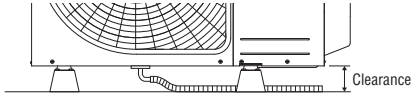
3. DRAIN PIPING WORK

- Execute drain piping by using a drain elbow and drain grommets supplied separately as accessories, where water drained from the outdoor unit is a problem.
- Water may drip where there is a larger amount of drain water. Seal around the drain elbow and drain grommets with putty or adequate caulking material.
- Condensed water may flow out from vicinity of operation valve or connected pipes.
- Where you are likely to have several days of sub-zero temperatures in a row, do not use a drain elbow and drain grommets. (There is a risk of drain water freezing inside and blocking the drain.)



⚠ CAUTION

Do not put a grommet on this hole.
This is a supplementary drain hole to discharge drain water, when a large quantity of it is gathered.



- When condensed water needs to be led to a drain, etc., install the unit on a flat base or concrete blocks.
  (prepared on site)
  Then, please secure space for the drain elbow and the drain hose.

4. ELECTRICAL WIRING WORK

For details of electrical cabling, refer to the indoor unit installation manual.

Electrical installation work must be performed by an electrical installation service provider qualified by a power provider of the country.
Electrical installation work must be executed according to the technical standards and other regulations applicable to electrical installations in the country.

- Do not use any supply cord lighter than one specified in parentheses for each type below.
  · braided cord (code designation 60245 IEC 51),
  · ordinary tough rubber sheathed cord (code designation 60245 IEC 53)
  · flat twin tinsel cord (code designation 60227 IEC 41);
  Use polychloroprene sheathed flexible cord (code designation 60245 IEC57) for supply cords of parts of appliances for outdoor use.
- Ground the unit. Do not connect the grounding wire to a gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod or telephone grounding wire.
  If improperly grounded, an electric shock or malfunction may result.
- A grounding wire must be connected before connecting the power cable. Provide a grounding wire longer than the power cable.
- The installation of an impulse withstanding type earth leakage breaker is necessary. A failure to install an earth leakage breaker can result in an acccident such as an electric shock or a fire.
- Do not turn on the power until the electrical work is completeted .
- Do not use a condensive capacitor for power factor improvement under any circumstances. (It dose not improve power factor, while it can cause an abnormal overheat accident)
- For power supply cables, use conduits.
- Do not lay electronic control cables (remote control and signaling wires) and other cables together outside the unit. Laying them together can result in the malfunctioning or a failure of the unit due to electric noises.
- Fasten cables so that may not touch the piping, etc.
- When cables are connected, make sure that all electrical components within the electrical component box are free of loose connector coupling or terminal connection and then attach the cover securely. (Improper cover attachment can result in malfunctioning or a failure of the unit, if water penetrates into the box.)
- Always use a three-core cable for an indoor-outdoor connecting cable. Never use a shield cable.

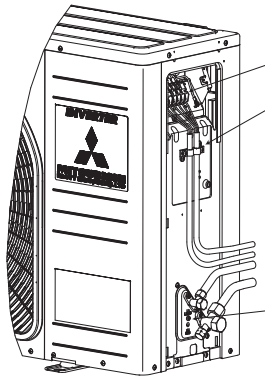
⚠ CAUTION

In case of faulty wiring connection, the indoor unit stops, and then the run lamp turns on and the timer lamp blinks.

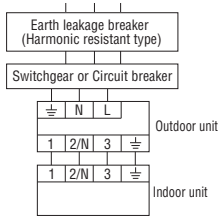
Use cables for interconnection wiring to avoid loosening of the wires.
CENELEC code for cables Required field cables.

H05RNR4G1.5 (Example) or 245IEC57

H	Harmonized cable type
05	300/500 volts
R	Natural-and/or synth. rubber wire insulation
N	Polychloroprene rubber conductors insulation
R	Stranded core
4or5	Number of conductors
G	One conductor of the cable is the earth conductor (yellow/green)
1.5	Section of copper wire (mm^2)



Power cable, indoor-outdoor connecting wires



- Always perform grounding system installation work with the power cord unplugged.
- Connect a pair bearing a common terminal number with an indoor-outdoor connecting wire.
- In cabling, fasten cables securely with cable clamps so that no external force may work on terminal connections.
- Grounding terminals are provided in the control box.

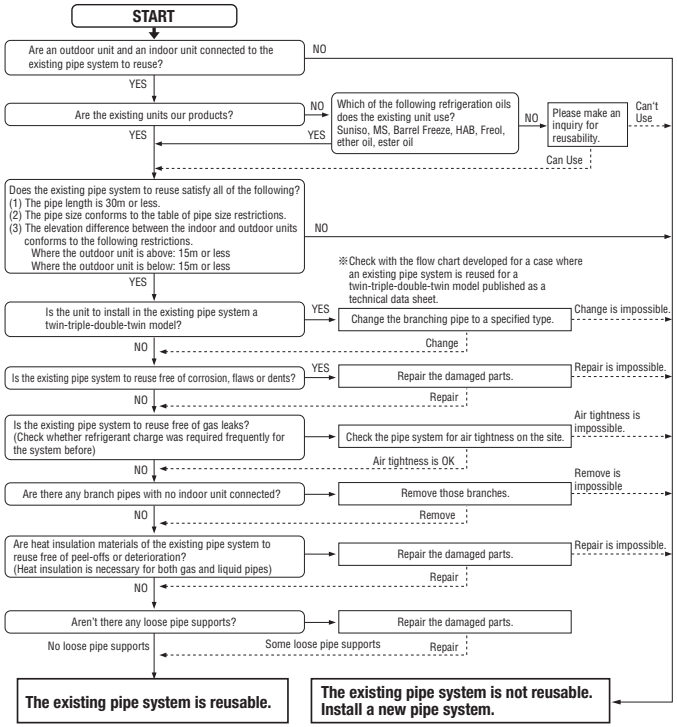
⚠ CAUTION Always use an earth leakage circuit breaker designed for inverter circuits to prevent a faulty operation.

Phase	Earth leakage breaker	Switchgear or Circuit Breaker		Power souce (minimum)	Interconnecting and grounding wires (minimum)
		Switch breaker	Over current protector rated capacity		
Single-phase	20A,30mA, 0.1sec or less	30A	20A	2.0mm^2	1.5mm×4

- The specifications shown in the above table are for units without heaters. For units with heaters, refer to the installation instructions or the construction instructions of the indoor unit.
- Switchgear or Circuit breaker capacity which is calculated from MAX. over current should be chosen along the regulations in each country.
- The cable specifications are based on the assumption that a metal or plastic conduit is used with no more than three cables contained in a conduit and a voltage drop is 2%. For an installation falling outside of these conditions, please follow the internal cabling regulations. Adapt it to the regulation in effect in each country.

5. UTILIZATION OF EXISTING PIPING

Check whether an existing pipe system is reusable or not by using the following flow chart.



<Table of pipe size restrictions>

◎:Standard pipe size○:Usable △:Restricted to shorter pipe length limits

Additional charge volume per meter of pipe			0.02kg/m	0.025kg/m	0.06kg/m	
Indoor unit	Pipe size	Liquid pipe	ø6.35	ø6.35	ø9.52	ø9.52
		Gas pipe	ø12.7	ø15.88	ø12.7	ø15.88
FDT, FDEN FDU, FDUM, SRK	Usability		◎	○	△	△
	Maximum one-way pipe length		30	24	10	10
	Length covered without additional charge		15	12	5	5
FDF	Usability		◎	○	△	△
	Maximum one-way pipe length		23	18	8	8
	Length covered without additional charge		8	6	3	3

- **Please consult with our distributor in the area, if you need to recover refrigerant and charge it again.**
- Any combinations of pipe sizes not listed in the table are not usable.

Formula to calculate additional charge volume

Additional charge volume (kg) = {Main pipe length (m) – Length covered without additional charge shown in the table (m)} × Additional charge volume per meter of pipe shown in the table (kg/m)

※ If you obtain a negative figure as a result of calculation, no additional refrigerant needs to be charged.

Example) When FDT is installed in a 10m long existing pipe system (liquid ø9.52, gas ø12.7), the quantity of refrigerant to charge additionally should be (10m-5m) x 0.06kg/m = 0.3 kg.

⚠ WARNING

<Where the existing unit can be run for a cooling operation.>

Carry out the following steps with the excising unit (in the order of (1), (2), (3) and (4))

(1) Run the unit for 30 minutes for a cooling operation.
(2) Stop the indoor fan and run the unit for 3 minutes for a cooling operation (returning liquid)
(3) Close the liquid side operation valve of the outdoor unit and pump down (refrigerant recovery)
(4) Blow with nitrogen gas. ※ If discolored refrigeration oil or any foreign matters is discharged by the blow, wash the pipe system or install a new pipe system.
- For the flare nut, do not use the old one, but use the one supplied with the outdoor unit. Process a flare to the dimensions specified for R410A.

<Where the existing unit cannot be run for a cooling operation.>

Wash the pipe system or install a new pipe system.
- If you choose to wash the pipe system, please contact our distributor in the area.

INSTALLATION TEST CHECK POINTS

Check the following points again after completion of the installation, and before turning on the power. Conduct a test run again and ensure that the unit operates properly.
Explain to the customer how to use the unit and how to take care of the unit following the instruction manual.

After installation

- ☐ Power cables and connecting wires are securely fixed to the terminal block.
- ☐ The power supply voltage is correct as the rating.
- ☐ The drain hose is fixed securely.
- ☐ Operation valve is fully open.
- ☐ No gas leaks from the joints of the operation valve and joint.
- ☐ The pipe joints for indoor and outdoor pipes have been insulated.
- ☐ The reverse flow check cap is attached.
- ☐ The cover of the pipe cover (A) faces downward to prevent rain from entering.
- ☐ Gaps are properly sealed between the pipe covers (A) (B) and the wall surface / pipes.
- ☐ The screw of the side cover is tightened securely.

PCA012D058A

Model FDC90VNP

R410A REFRIGERANT USED

• This installation manual deals with outdoor units and general installation specifications only. For indoor units, refer to page 138.
• When install the unit, be sure to check whether the selection of installation place, power supply specifications, usage limitation (piping length, height differences between indoor and outdoor units, power supply voltage and etc.) and installation spaces.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.
- The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠**WARNING** and ⚠**CAUTION**.
  ⚠**WARNING** : Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠**CAUTION** : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
- Be sure to confirm no anomaly on the equipment by commissioning after completed installation and explain the operating methods as well as the maintenance methods of this equipment to the user according to the owner's manual.
- Keep the installation manual together with owner's manual at a place where any user can read at any time. Moreover if necessary, ask to hand them to a new user.
- For installing qualified personnel, take precautions in respect to themselves by using suitable protective clothing, groves, etc., and then perform the installation works.
- Please pay attention not to fall down the tools, etc. when installing the unit at the high position.
- If unusual noise can be heard during operation, consult the dealer.
- The meanings of "Marks" used here are shown as follows:

⃠	Never do it under any circumstances.	❗ ⏚	Always do it according to the instruction.

⚠ WARNING

• Installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.
If you install the system by yourself, it may cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire and personal injury, as a result of a system malfunction. Do not carry out the installation and maintenance work except by the qualified installer.

• Install the system in full accordance with the installation manual.
Incorrect installation may cause bursts, personal injury, water leaks, electric shocks and fire.

• Be sure to use only for household and residence.
If this appliance is installed in inferior environment such as machine shop and etc., it can cause malfunction.

• When installing in small rooms, take prevention measures not to exceed the density limit of refrigerant in the event of leakage, referred by the formula (accordance with ISO5149).
If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit, please consult the dealer and install the ventilation system, otherwise lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accident.

• Use the original accessories and the specified components for installation.
If parts other than those prescribed by us are used, It may cause water leaks, electric shocks, fire and personal injury.

• Install the unit in a location with good support.
Unsuitable installation locations can cause the unit to fall and cause material damage and personal injury.

• Ensure the unit is stable when installed, so that it can withstand earthquakes and strong winds.
Unsuitable installation locations can cause the unit to fall and cause material damage and personal injury.

• Ventilate the working area well in the event of refrigerant leakage during installation.
If the refrigerant comes into contact with naked flames, poisonous gas is produced.

• Use the prescribed pipes, flare nuts and tools for R410A.
Using existing parts (for R22 or R407C) can cause the unit failure and serious accidents due to burst of the refrigerant circuit.

• Tighten the flare nut by torque wrench with specified method.
If the flare nut were tightened with excess torque, this may cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period.

• Do not open the operation valves for liquid line and gas line until completed refrigerant piping work, air tightness test and evacuation.
If the compressor is operated in state of opening operation valves before completed connection of refrigerant piping work, air can be sucked into refrigerant circuit, which can cause bust or personal injury due to anomalously high pressure in the refrigerant.

• The electrical installation must be carried out by the qualified electrician in accordance with "the norm for electrical work" and "national wiring regulation", and the system must be connected to the dedicated circuit.
Power supply with insufficient capacity and incorrect function done by improper work can cause electric shocks and fire.

• Be sure to shut off the power before starting electrical work.
Failure to shut off the power can cause electric shocks, unit failure or incorrect function of equipment.

• Be sure to use the cables conformed to safety standard and cable ampacity for power distribution work.
Unconformable cables can cause electric leak, anomalous heat production or fire.

• This appliance must be connected to main power supply by means of a circuit breaker or switch (fuse:20A) with a contact separation of at least 3mm.

• Arrange the wiring in the control box so that it cannot be pushed up further into the box. Install the service panel correctly.
Incorrect installation may result in overheating and fire.

• Use the prescribed cables for electrical connection, tighten the cables securely in terminal block and relieve the cables correctly to prevent overloading the terminal blocks.
Loose connections or cable mountings can cause anomalous heat production or fire.

• Be sure to fix up the service panels.
Incorrect fixing can cause electric shocks or fire due to intrusion of dust or water.

• Be sure to switch off the power supply in the event of installation, inspection or servicing.
If the power supply is not shut off, there is a risk of electric shocks, unit failure or personal injury due to the unexpected start of fan.

• Stop the compressor before removing the pipe after shutting the service valve on pump down work.
If the pipe is removed when the compressor is in operation with the service valve open, air would be mixed in the refrigeration circuit and it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the cooling cycle.

• Only use prescribed optional parts. The installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.
If you install the system by yourself, it can cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire.

• Be sure to wear protective goggles and gloves while at work.

• Earth leakage breaker must be installed.
If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it can cause electric shocks.

• Appliance is not to be used by children or persons with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities, or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they have been given supervision or instruction.
Children being supervised not to play with appliance.

• Ensure that no air enters in the refrigerant circuit when the unit is installed and removed.
If air enters in the refrigerant circuit, the pressure in the refrigerant circuit becomes too high, which can cause burst and personal injury.

• Do not processing, splice the power cord, or share a socket with other power plugs.
This may cause fire or electric shock due to defecting contact, defecting insulation and over-current etc.

• Do not bundling, winding or processing for the power cord. Or, do not deforming the power plug due to tread it.
This may cause fire or heating.

• Do not run the unit with removed panels or protections.
Touching rotating equipments, hot surfaces or high voltage parts can cause personal injury due to entrapment, burn or electric shocks.

• Do not perform any change of protective device itself or its setup condition.
The forced operation by short-circuiting protective device of pressure switch and temperature controller or the use of non specified component can cause fire or burst.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Carry out the electrical work for ground lead with care.**
  Do not connect the ground lead to the gas line, water line, lightning conductor or telephone line's ground lead. Incorrect grounding can cause unit faults such as electric shocks due to short-circuiting.

- **Use the circuit breaker for all pole correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect circuit breaker, it can cause the unit malfunction and fire.
- **Install isolator or disconnect switch on the power supply wiring in accordance with the local codes and regulations.**
  The isolator should be locked in OFF state in accordance with EN60204-1.
- **After maintenance, all wiring, wiring ties and the like, should be returned to their original state and wiring route, and the necessary clearance from all metal parts should be secured.**
- **Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual.**
  Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place.
- **Take care when carrying the unit by hand.**
  If the unit weights more than 20kg, it must be carried by two or more persons. Do not carry by the plastic straps, always use the carry handle when carrying the unit by hand. Use gloves to minimize the risk of cuts by the aluminum fins.
- **Dispose of any packing materials correctly.**
  Any remaining packing materials can cause personal injury as it contains nails and wood. And to avoid danger of suffocation, be sure to keep the plastic wrapper away from children and to dispose after tear it up.
- **Be sure to insulate the refrigerant pipes so as not to condense the ambient air moisture on them.**
  Insufficient insulation can cause condensation, which can lead to moisture damage on the ceiling, floor, furniture and any other valuables.
- **When perform the air conditioner operation (cooling or drying operation) in which ventilator is installed in the room. In this case, using the air conditioner in parallel with the ventilator, there is the possibility that drain water may backflow in accordance with the room lapse into the negative pressure status. Therefore, set up the opening port such as incorporate the air into the room that may appropriate to ventilation (For example; Open the door a little). In addition, just as above, so set up the opening port if the room lapse into negative pressure status due to register of the wind for the high rise apartment etc.**

- **Do not install the unit in the locations listed below.**
  - Locations where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floating.
  - Locations where any substances that can affect the unit such as sulphide gas, chloride gas, acid and alkaline can occur.
  - Vehicles and ships.
  - Locations where cosmetic or special sprays are often used.
  - Locations with direct exposure of oil mist and steam such as kitchen and machine plant.
  - Locations where any machines which generate high frequency harmonics are used.
  - Locations with salty atmospheres such as coastlines.
  - Locations with heavy snow (If installed, be sure to provide base flame and snow hood mentioned in the manual).
  - Locations where the unit is exposed to chimney smoke.
  - Locations at high altitude (more than 1000m high).
  - Locations with ammonic atmospheres.
  - Locations where heat radiation from other heat source can affect the unit.
  - Locations without good air circulation.
  - Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit.
  - Locations where short circuit of air can occur (in case of multiple units installation).
  - Locations where strong air blows against the air outlet of outdoor unit.
  - Locations where something located above the unit could fall.

  It can cause remarkable decrease in performance, corrosion and damage of components, malfunction and fire.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit in the locations listed below.**
  - Locations where discharged hot air or operating sound of the outdoor unit can bother neighborhood.
  - Locations where outlet air of the outdoor unit blows directly to an animal or plants. The outlet air can affect adversely to the plant etc.
  - Locations where vibration can be amplified and transmitted due to insufficient strength of structure.
  - Locations where vibration and operation sound generated by the outdoor unit can affect seriously (on the wall or at the place near bed room).
  - Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 5m).
  - Locations where drainage cannot run off safely.

  It can affect surrounding environment and cause a claim.
- **Do not install the unit near the location where leakage of combustible gases can occur.**
  If leaked gases accumulate around the unit, it can cause fire.
- **Do not install the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfurous acid gas etc.) or combustible gas (such as thinner and petroleum gases) can accumulate or collect, or where volatile combustible substances are handled.**
  Corrosive gas can cause corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts and etc. And combustible gas can cause fire.
- **Do not install nor use the system close to the equipment that generates electromagnetic fields or high frequency harmonics.**
  Equipment such as inverters, standby generators, medical high frequency equipments and telecommunication equipments can affect the system, and cause malfunctions and breakdowns. The system can also affect medical equipment and telecommunication equipment, and obstruct its function or cause jamming.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit in a location where insects and small animals can inhabit.**
  Insects and small animals can enter the electric parts and cause damage or fire. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **Do not use the base flame for outdoor unit which is corroded or damaged due to long periods of operation.**
  Using an old and damage base flame can cause the unit falling down and cause personal injury.
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse with the correct rating in the location where fuses are to be used.**
  Connecting the circuit with copper wire or other metal thread can cause unit failure and fire.
- **Do not touch any buttons with wet hands.**
  It can cause electric shocks.
- **Do not touch any refrigerant pipes with your hands when the system is in operation.**
  During operation the refrigerant pipes become extremely hot or extremely cold depending the operating condition, and it can cause burn injury or frost injury.
- **Do not touch the suction or aluminum fin on the outdoor unit.**
  This may cause injury.
- **Do not put anything on the outdoor unit and operating unit.**
  This may cause damage the objects or injury due to falling to the object.
- **Do not use the unit for special purposes such as storing foods, cooling precision instruments and preservation of animals, plants or art.**
- **Do not clean up the unit with water.**

Notabilia as a unit designed for R410A

- Do not use any refrigerant other than R410A. R410A will rise to pressure about 1.6 times higher than that of a conventional refrigerant.
  A cylinder containing R410A has a pink indication mark on the top.
- A unit designed for R410A has adopted a different size indoor unit operation valve charge port and a different size check joint provided in the unit to prevent the charging of a wrong refrigerant by mistake.
  The processed dimension of the flared part of a refrigerant pipe and a flare nut's parallel side measurement have also been altered to raise strength against pressure.
  Accordingly, you are required to arrange dedicated R410A tools listed in the table on the left before installing or servicing this unit.
- Do not use a charge cylinder. The use of a charge cylinder will cause the refrigerant composition to change, which results in performance degradation.
- In charging refrigerant, always take it out from a cylinder in the liquid phase.
- All indoor units must be models designed exclusively for R410A. Check connectable indoor unit models in a catalog, etc. (A wrong indoor unit, if connected into the system, will impair proper system operation)

Check before installation work

- Model name and power source
- Refrigerant piping length
- Piping, wiring and miscellaneous small parts
- Indoor unit installation manual

Accessories for outdoor unit		Q'ty
①	Grommet (Heat pump type only)	2
②	Drain elbow (Heat pump type only)	1
③	Reducer set ø9.52→ø6.35	1

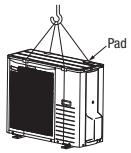
Option parts		Q'ty
ⓐ	Sealing plate	1
ⓑ	Sleeve	1
ⓒ	Inclination plate	1
ⓓ	Putty	1
ⓔ	Drain hose (extension hose)	1
ⓕ	Piping cover (for insulation of connection piping)	1

Necessary tools for the installation work			
1	Plus headed driver	9	Wrench key (Hexagon) [4m/m]
2	Knife	10	Vacuum pump
3	Saw	11	Vacuum pump adapter (Anti-reverse flow type) (Designed specifically for R410A)
4	Tape measure	12	Gauge manifold (Designed specifically for R410A)
5	Hammer	13	Charge hose (Designed specifically for R410A)
6	Spanner wrench	14	Flaring tool set (Designed specifically for R410A)
7	Torque wrench [14.0～82.0N·m (1.4～8.2kgf·m)]	15	Gas leak detector (Designed specifically for R410A)
8	Hole core drill (65mm in diameter)	16	Gauge for projection adjustment (Used when flare is made by using conventional flare tool)

1. HAULAGE AND INSTALLATION (Take particular care in carrying in or moving the unit, and always perform such an operation with two or more persons.)

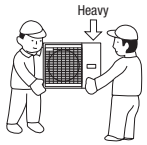
⚠CAUTION When a unit is hoisted with slings for haulage, take into consideration the offset of its gravity center position. If not properly balanced, the unit can be thrown off-balance and fall.

1) Delivery



- Deliver the unit as close as possible to the installation site before removing it from the packaging.
- When you have to unpack the unit for a compelling reason before you haul it to the installation point, hoist the unit with nylon slings or ropes and protection pads so that you may not damage the unit.

2) Portage



- The right hand side of the unit as viewed from the front (diffuser side) is heavier. A person carrying the right hand side must take heed of this fact. A person carrying the left hand side must hold with his right hand the handle provided on the front panel of the unit and with his left hand the corner column section.

3) Selection of installation location for the outdoor unit

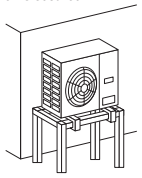
Be sure to select a suitable installation place in consideration of following conditions.

- ○ A place where it is horizontal, stable and can endure the unit weight and will not allow vibration transmittance of the unit.
- ○ A place where it can be free from possibility of bothering neighbors due to noise or exhaust air from the unit.
- ○ A place where the unit is not exposed to oil splashes.
- ○ A place where it can be free from danger of flammable gas leakage.
- ○ A place where drain water can be disposed without any trouble.
- ○ A place where the unit will not be affected by heat radiation from other heat source.
- ○ A place where snow will not accumulate.
- ○ A place where the unit can be kept away 5m or more from TV set and/or radio receiver in order to avoid any radio or TV interference.
- ○ A place where good air circulation can be secured, and enough service space can be secured for maintenance and service of the unit safely.
- ○ A place where the unit will not be affected by electromagnetic waves and/or high-harmonic waves generated by other equipment.
- ○ A place where chemical substances like sulfuric gas, chloric gas, acid and alkali (including ammonia), which can harm the unit, will not be generated and not remain.
- ○ If a operation is conducted when the outdoor air temperature is -5℃ lower, the outdoor unit should be installed at a place where it is not influenced by natural wind.
- ○ A place where strong wind will not blow against the outlet air blow of the unit.

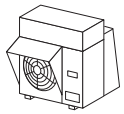
4) Caution about selection of installation location

(1) If the unit is installed in the area where the snow will accumulate, following measures are required.
The bottom plate of unit and intake, outlet may be blocked by snow.

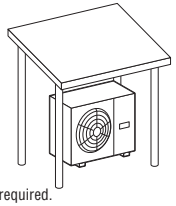
1 Install the unit on the base so that the bottom is higher than snow cover surface, and draining water is secured.



2 Provide a snow hood to the outdoor unit on site.



3 Install the unit under eaves or provide the roof on site.

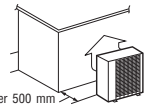


Since drain water generated by defrost control may freeze, following measures are required.

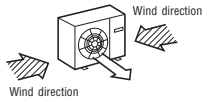
- Don't execute drain piping work by using a drain elbow and drain grommets (accessories). [Refer to Drain piping work.]
- Attached heater on a base plate on site, if there is possibility to freeze drain water. In case that the product has a corrective drainage system, the drainage paths should have suitable threatment against freezing but be sure not to melt the material of drainage paths with heat.

(2) If the unit can be affected by strong wind, following measures are required.
Strong wind can cause damage of fan (fan motor), or can cause performance degradation, or can trigger anomalous stop of the unit due to rising of high pressure.

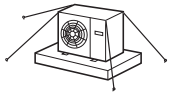
1.Install the outlet air blow side of the unit to face a wall of building, or provide a fence or a windbreak screen.



2.Install the outlet air blow side of the unit in a position perpendicular to the direction of wind.



3.The unit should be installed on the stable and level foundation. If the foundation is not level, the down the unit with wires.

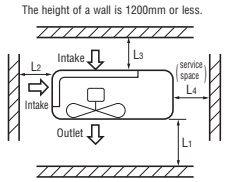


5) Installation space

- Walls surrounding the unit in the four sides are not acceptable.
- There must be a 1-meter or larger space in the above.
- When more than one unit are installed side by side, provide a 250mm or wider interval between them as a service space. In order to facilitate servicing of controllers, please provide a sufficient space between units so that their top plates can be removed easily.
- Where a danger of short-circuiting exists, install guide louvers.
- When more than one unit are installed, provide sufficient intake space consciously so that short-circuiting may not occur.
- Where piling snow can bury the outdoor unit, provide proper snow guards.

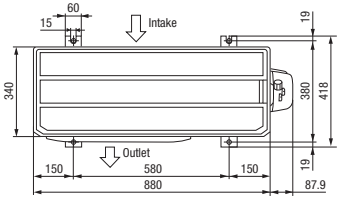
(mm)

Size \ Example installation	I	II	III
L1	Open	Open	500
L2	300	250	Open
L3	100	150	100
L4	250	250	250

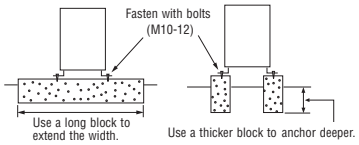


6) Installation

① Anchor bol tfixed position



② Notabilia for installation



- In installing the unit, fix the unit's legs with bolts specified on the above.
- The protrusion of an anchor bolt on the front side must be kept within 15 mm.
- Securely install the unit so that it does not fall over during earthquakes or strong winds, etc.
- Refer to the above illustrations for information regarding concrete foundations.
- Install the unit in a level area. (With a gradient of 5 mm or less.) Improper installation can result in a compressor failure, broken piping within the unit and abnormal noise generation.

7) To run the unit for a cooling operation, when the outdoor temperature is –5°C or lower.

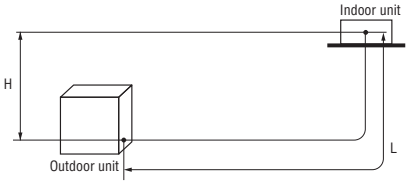
- When the outdoor air temperature is –5°C or lower, provide a snow hood to the outdoor unit on site. So that strong wind will not blow against the outdoor heat exchanger directly.

2. REFRIGERANT PIPING WORK

1) Restrictions on unit installation and use

- Check the following points in light of the indoor unit specifications and the installation site.
- Observe the following restrictions on unit installation and use. Improper installation can result in a compressor failure or performance degradation.

Restrictions			Dimensional restrictions	Marks appearing in the drawing on the right
Indoor unit	FDT, FDEN, FDU, FDUM	Main pipe length	30m or less	L
	FDF		23m or less	L
Elevation difference between indoor and outdoor units	When the outdoor unit is positioned higher		20m or less	H
	When the outdoor unit is positioned lower		20m or less	H



⚠CAUTION

- The use restrictions appearing in the table above are applicable to the standard pipe size combinations shown in the table below. Where an existing pipe system is utilized, different one-way pipe length restrictions should apply depending on its pipe size. For more information, please see " 5. UTILIZATION OF EXISTING PIPING."

2) Determination of pipe size

- Determine refrigerant pipe size pursuant to the following guidelines based on the indoor unit specifications.

	Gas pipe	Liquid pipe
Outdoor unit connected	ø15.88 Flare	ø6.35 Flare
Refrigerant piping (branch pipeL)	ø15.88	ø6.35
Indoor unit connected	ø15.88	ø9.52

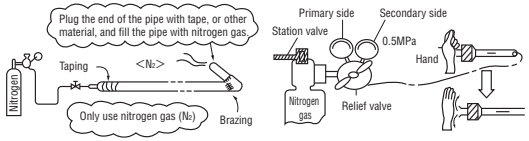
When pipe is brazing.

About brazing

Brazing must be performed under a nitrogen gas flow.

Without nitrogen gas, a large quantity of foreign matters (oxidized film) are created, causing a critical failure from capillary tube or expansion valve clogging.

If the refrigerant is existing in the pipe at brazing, poisonous gas is produced.



3) Refrigerant pipe wall thickness and material

- Select refrigerant pipes of the table shown on the right wall thickness and material as specified for each pipe size.

NOTE ● Select pipes having a wall thickness larger than the specified minimum pipe thickness.

Pipe diameter [mm]	ø6.35	ø15.88
Minimum pipe wall thickness [mm]	0.8	1.0
Pipe material*	O-type pipe	O-type pipe

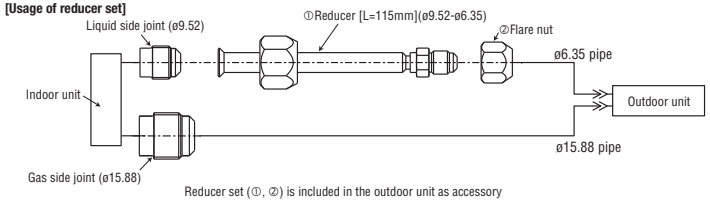
*Phosphorus deoxidized seamless copper pipe ICS 23.040.15, ICS 77.150.30

4) On-site piping work

⚠IMPORTANT Take care so that installed pipes may not touch components within a unit. If touching with an internal component, it will generate abnormal sounds and/or vibrations.

- Regarding the change in the size of liquid pipe; Use the reducer at indoor unit side. Reducer set is available in the outdoor unit as accessory.

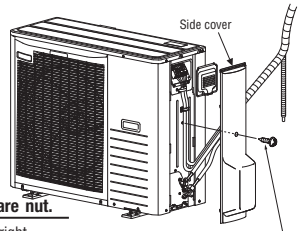
[Usage of reducer set]

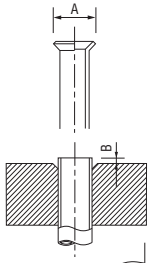


Reducer set (①, ②) is included in the outdoor unit as accessory

How to remove the side cover Please remove the screw of a side cover and remove to the front.

- Carry out the on site piping work with the operation valve fully closed.
- Give sufficient protection to a pipe end (compressed and blazed, or with an adhesive tape) so that water or foreign matters may not enter the piping.
- Bend a pipe to a radius as large as practical.(R100~R150) Do not bend a pipe repeatedly to correct its form.
- Flare connection is used between the unit and refrigerant pipe. Flare a pipe after engaging a flare nut onto it. Flare dimensions for R410A are different from those for conventional R407C. Although we recommend the use of flaring tools designed specifically for R410A, conventional flaring tools can also be used by adjusting the measurement of protrusion B with a protrusion control gauge.
- The pipe should be anchored every 1.5m or less to isolate the vibration.
- Tighten a flare joint securely with a double spanner.





Flared pipe end : A (mm)

Copper pipe outer diameter	A $^{0}_{-0.4}$
ø6.35	9.1
ø15.88	19.7

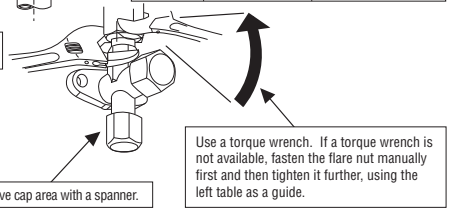
Copper pipe protrusion for flaring : B (mm)

Copper pipe outer diameter	In the case of a rigid (clutch) type	
	With an R410A tool	With a conventional tool
ø6.35	0~0.5	1.0~1.5
ø15.88		

⚠CAUTION **Do not apply force beyond proper fastening torque in tightening the flare nut.**

Fix both liquid and gas operation valves at the valve main bodies as illustrated on the right, and then fasten them, applying appropriate fastening torque.

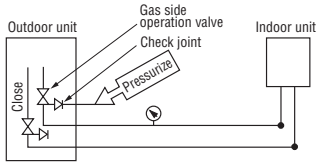
Operation valve size (mm)	Tightening torque (N·m)	Tightening angle (°)	Recommended length of a tool handle (mm)
ø6.35	14~18	45~60	150
ø9.52	34~42	30~45	200
ø12.7	49~61	30~45	250
ø15.88	68~82	15~20	300



5) Air tightness test

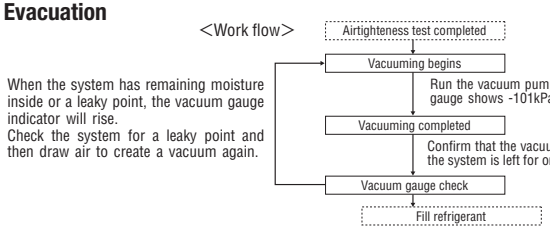
① Although outdoor and indoor units themselves have been tested for air tightness at the factory, check the connecting pipes after the installation work for air tightness from the operation valve's check joint equipped on the outdoor unit side. While conducting a test, keep the operation valve shut all the time.
a) Raise the pressure to 0.5 MPa, and then stop. Leave it for five minutes to see if the pressure drops.
b) Then raise the pressure to 1.5 MPa, and stop. Leave it for five more minutes to see if the pressure drops.
c) Then raise the pressure to the specified level (4.15 MPa), and record the ambient temperature and the pressure.
d) If no pressure drop is observed with an installation pressurized to the specified level and left for about one day, it is acceptable. When the ambient Temperature fall 1℃, the pressure also fall approximately 0.01 MPa. The pressure, if changed, should be compensated for.
e) If a pressure drop is observed in checking e) and a) – d), a leak exists somewhere. Find a leak by applying bubble test liquid to welded parts and flare joints and repair it. After repair, conduct an air-tightness test again.

② In conducting an air-tightness test, use nitrogen gas and pressurize the system with nitrogen gas from the gas side. Do not use a medium other than nitrogen gas under any circumstances.

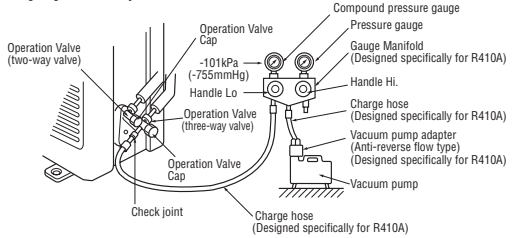


6) Evacuation

<Work flow>



When the system has remaining moisture inside or a leaky point, the vacuum gauge indicator will rise.
Check the system for a leaky point and then draw air to create a vacuum again.



Pay attention to the following points in addition to the above for the R410A and compatible machines.

○To prevent a different oil from entering, assign dedicated tools, etc. to each refrigerant type. Under no circumstances must a gauge manifold and a charge hose in particular be shared with other refrigerant types (R22, R407C, etc.).

○Use a counterflow prevention adapter to prevent vacuum pump oil from entering the refrigerant system.

Securely tighten the operation valve cap and the check joint blind nut after adjustment.

Operation valve size (mm)	Operation valve cap tightening torque (N-m)	Check joint blind nut tightening torque (N-m)
ø6.35 (1/4")	20～30	10～12
ø15.88 (5/8")	30～40	

7) Additional refrigerant charge

(1) Calculate a required refrigerant charge volume from the following table.

Indoor unit	Additional charge volume (kg) per meter of refrigerant piping (liquid pipe ø6.35)	Refrigerant volume charged for shipment at the factory (kg)	Installation's pipe length (m) covered without additional refrigerant charge
FDT, FDEN FDU, FDUM	0.025	2.1	15
FDF	0.025	2.1	8

●This unit contains factory charged refrigerant covering 15m/8m of refrigerant piping and additional refrigerant charge on the installation site is not required for an installation with up to 15m/8m refrigerant piping.
When refrigerant piping exceeds 15m/8m, additionally charge an amount calculated from the pipe length and the above table for the portion in excess of 15m/8m.

●If an existing pipe system is used, a required refrigerant charge volume will vary depending on the liquid pipe size. For further information, please see "5. UTILIZATION OF EXISTING PIPING."

Formula to calculate the volume of additional refrigerant required

Additional charge volume (kg) = (Main length (m) – Factory charged volume) x 0.025 (kg/m)

*When an additional charge volume calculation result is negative, it is not necessary to charge refrigerant additionally.

● For an installation measuring 15m/8m or shorter in pipe length, please charge the refrigerant volume charged for shipment at the factory, when you recharge refrigerant after servicing etc.

(2) Charging refrigerant

●Since R410A refrigerant must be charged in the liquid phase, you should charge it, keeping the container cylinder upside down or using a refrigerant cylinder equipped with a siphon tube.

●Charge refrigerant always from the liquid side service port with the operation valve shut. When you find it difficult to charge a required amount, fully open the outdoor unit valves on both liquid and gas sides and charge refrigerant from the gas (suction) side service port, while running the unit in the cooling mode. In doing so, care must be taken so that refrigerant may be discharged from the cylinder in the liquid phase all the time. When the cylinder valve is throttled down or a dedicated conversion tool to change liquid-phase refrigerant into mist is used to protect the compressor, however, adjust charge conditions so that refrigerant will gasify upon entering the unit.

●In charging refrigerant, always charge a calculated volume by using a scale to measure the charge volume.

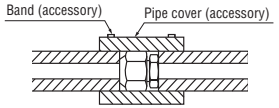
●When refrigerant is charged with the unit being run, complete a charge operation within 30 minutes. Running the unit with an insufficient quantity of refrigerant for a long time can cause a compressor failure.

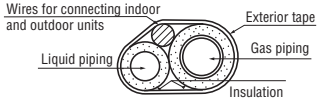
NOTE Put down the refrigerant volume calculated from the pipe length onto the caution label attached on the back side of the service panel.

8) Heating and condensation prevention

(1) Dress refrigerant pipes (both gas and liquid pipes) for heat insulation and prevention of dew condensation.
· Improper heat insulation/anti-dew dressing can result in a water leak or dripping causing damage to household effects, etc.

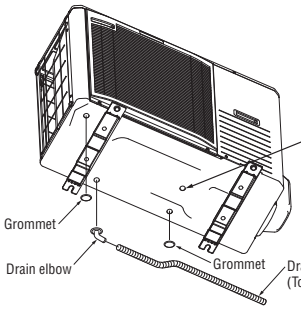
(2) Use a heat insulating material that can withstand 120℃ or a higher temperature. Poor heat insulating capacity can cause heat insulation problems or cable deterioration.
· All gas pipes must be securely heat insulated in order to prevent damage from dripping water that comes from the condensation formed on them during a cooling operation or personal injury from burns because their surface can reach quite a high temperature due to discharged gas flowing inside during a heating operation.
· Wrap indoor units' flare joints with heat insulating parts (pipe cover) for heat insulation (both gas and liquid pipes).
· Give heat insulation to both gas and liquid side pipes. Bundle a heat insulating material and a pipe tightly together so that no gaps may be left between them and wrap them together with a connecting cable by a dressing tape.
· **Both gas and liquid pipes need to be dressed with 20 mm or thicker heat insulation materials above the ceiling where relative humidity exceeds 70%.**





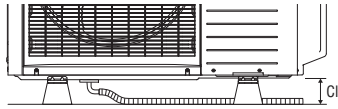
3. DRAIN PIPING WORK

- Execute drain piping by using a drain elbow and drain grommets supplied separately as accessories, where water drained from the outdoor unit is a problem.
- Water may drip where there is a larger amount of drain water. Seal around the drain elbow and drain grommets with putty or adequate caulking material.
- Condensed water may flow out from vicinity of operation valve or connected pipes.
- Where you are likely to have several days of sub-zero temperatures in a row, do not use a drain elbow and drain grommets. (There is a risk of drain water freezing inside and blocking the drain.)



⚠ CAUTION

Do not put a grommet on this hole.
This is a supplementary drain hole to discharge drain water, when a large quantity of it is gathered.



- When condensed water needs to be led to a drain, etc., install the unit on a flat base or concrete blocks.
  (prepared on site)
  Then, please secure space for the drain elbow and the drain hose.

4. ELECTRICAL WIRING WORK

For details of electrical cabling, refer to the indoor unit installation manual.

Electrical installation work must be performed by an electrical installation service provider qualified by a power provider of the country.
Electrical installation work must be executed according to the technical standards and other regulations applicable to electrical installations in the country.

- Do not use any supply cord lighter than one specified in parentheses for each type below.
  · braided cord (code designation 60245 IEC 51),
  · ordinary tough rubber sheathed cord (code designation 60245 IEC 53)
  · flat twin tinsel cord (code designation 60227 IEC 41);
  Use polychloroprene sheathed flexible cord (code designation 60245 IEC57) for supply cords of parts of appliances for outdoor use.
- Ground the unit. Do not connect the grounding wire to a gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod or telephone grounding wire.
  If impropery grounded, an electric shock or malfunction may result.
- A grounding wire must be connected before connecting the power cable. Provide a grounding wire longer than the power cable.
- The installation of an impulse withstanding type earth leakage breaker is necessary. A failure to install an earth leakage breaker can result in an acccident such as an electric shock or a fire.
- Do not turn on the power until the electrical work is completeted .
- Do not use a condensive capacitor for power factor improvement under any circumstances. (It dose not improve power factor, while it can cause an abnormal overheat accident)
- For power supply cables, use conduits.
- Do not lay electronic control cables (remote control and signaling wires) and other cables together outside the unit. Laying them together can result in the malfunctioning or a failure of the unit due to electric noises.
- Fasten cables so that may not touch the piping, etc.
- When cables are connected, make sure that all electrical components within the electrical component box are free of loose connector coupling or terminal connection and then attach the cover securely. (Improper cover attachment can result in malfunctioning or a failure of the unit, if water penetrates into the box.)
- Always use a three-core cable for an indoor-outdoor connecting cable. Never use a shield cable.

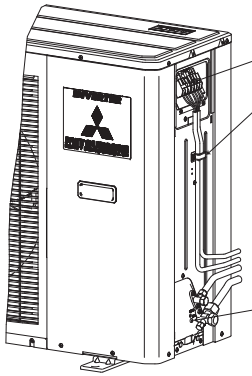
⚠ CAUTION

In case of faulty wiring connection, the indoor unit stops, and then the run lamp turns on and the timer lamp blinks.

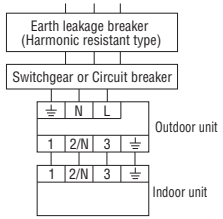
Use cables for interconnection wiring to avoid loosening of the wires.
CENELEC code for cables Required field cables.

H05RNR4G1.5 (Example) or 245IEC57

H	Harmonized cable type
05	300/500 volts
R	Natural-and/or synth. rubber wire insulation
N	Polychloroprene rubber conductors insulation
R	Stranded core
4or5	Number of conductors
G	One conductor of the cable is the earth conductor (yellow/green)
1.5	Section of copper wire (mm^2)



Power cable, indoor-outdoor connecting wires



- Always perform grounding system installation work with the power cord unplugged.
- Connect a pair bearing a common terminal number with an indoor-outdoor connecting wire.
- In cabling, fasten cables securely with cable clamps so that no external force may work on terminal connections.
- Grounding terminals are provided in the control box.

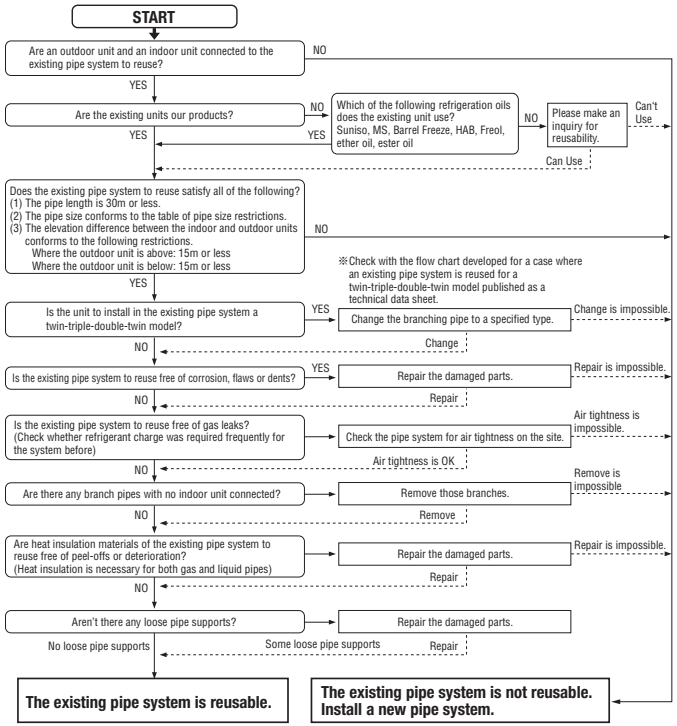
⚠ CAUTION Always use an earth leakage circuit breaker designed for inverter circuits to prevent a faulty operation.

Phase	Earth leakage breaker	Switchgear or Circuit Breaker		Power souce (minimum)	Interconnecting and grounding wires (minimum)
		Switch breaker	Over current protector rated capacity		
Single-phase	20A,30mA, 0.1sec or less	30A	20A	2.5 mm^2	1.5mm×4

- The specifications shown in the above table are for units without heaters. For units with heaters, refer to the installation instructions or the construction instructions of the indoor unit.
- Switchgear or Circuit breaker capacity which is calculated from MAX. over current should be chosen along the regulations in each country.
- The cable specifications are based on the assumption that a metal or plastic conduit is used with no more than three cables contained in a conduit and a voltage drop is 2%. For an installation falling outside of these conditions, please follow the internal cabling regulations. Adapt it to the regulation in effect in each country.

5. UTILIZATION OF EXISTING PIPING

Check whether an existing pipe system is reusable or not by using the following flow chart.



<Table of pipe size restrictions>

◎:Standard pipe size○:Usable △:Restricted to shorter pipe length limits

Additional charge volume per meter of pipe			0.025kg/m	0.06kg/m	
Indoor unit	Pipe size	Liquid pipe	ø6.35	ø9.52	ø9.52
		Gas pipe	ø15.88	ø12.7	ø15.88
FDT, FDEN FDU, FDUM	Usability		◎	△	△
	Maximum one-way pipe length		30	12	12
	Length covered without additional charge		15	6	6
FDF	Usability		◎	△	△
	Maximum one-way pipe length		23	10	10
	Length covered without additional charge		8	3	3

- **Please consult with our distributor in the area, if you need to recover refrigerant and charge it again.**
- Any combinations of pipe sizes not listed in the table are not usable.

Formula to calculate additional charge volume

Additional charge volume (kg) = {Main pipe length (m) – Length covered without additional charge shown in the table (m)} × Additional charge volume per meter of pipe shown in the table (kg/m)

※ If you obtain a negative figure as a result of calculation, no additional refrigerant needs to be charged.

Example) When FDT is installed in a 10m long existing pipe system (liquid ø9.52, gas ø12.7), the quantity of refrigerant to charge additionally should be (10m-6m) x 0.06kg/m = 0.24 kg.

⚠ WARNING

<Where the existing unit can be run for a cooling operation.>

Carry out the following steps with the excising unit (in the order of (1), (2), (3) and (4))

(1) Run the unit for 30 minutes for a cooling operation.
(2) Stop the indoor fan and run the unit for 3 minutes for a cooling operation (returning liquid)
(3) Close the liquid side operation valve of the outdoor unit and pump down (refrigerant recovery)
(4) Blow with nitrogen gas. ※ If discolored refrigeration oil or any foreign matters is discharged by the blow, wash the pipe system or install a new pipe system.
- For the flare nut, do not use the old one, but use the one supplied with the outdoor unit. Process a flare to the dimensions specified for R410A.

<Where the existing unit cannot be run for a cooling operation.>

Wash the pipe system or install a new pipe system.
- If you choose to wash the pipe system, please contact our distributor in the area.

INSTALLATION TEST CHECK POINTS

Check the following points again after completion of the installation, and before turning on the power. Conduct a test run again and ensure that the unit operates properly.
Explain to the customer how to use the unit and how to take care of the unit following the instruction manual.

After installation

- ☐ Power cables and connecting wires are securely fixed to the terminal block.
- ☐ The power supply voltage is correct as the rating.
- ☐ The drain hose is fixed securely.
- ☐ Operation valve is fully open.
- ☐ No gas leaks from the joints of the operation valve and joint.
- ☐ The pipe joints for indoor and outdoor pipes have been insulated.
- ☐ The reverse flow check cap is attached.
- ☐ The cover of the pipe cover (A) faces downward to prevent rain from entering.
- ☐ Gaps are properly sealed between the pipe covers (A) (B) and the wall surface / pipes.
- ☐ The screw of the side cover is tightened securely.

Commissioning check sheet of FDC71VNP and FDC90VNP

Ver.: 1.3 Date:30/Sep/2013

1. Project information

Project/Site reference:	
Address:	
Installer:	
Commissioning date:	Inspected by:

2. System information

(1) Outdoor unit	
Model:	Serial number:
(2) Indoor unit	
Model:	Serial number:

3. Installation

3-1. Location	Notes	Checked
(1) Air circulation space		☐
(2) Service space		☐
(3) Installation place		☐
3-2. Piping work	**Notes**	**Checked**
(1) Piping limitation		☐
(2) Use pipe reducer kit		☐
(3) Air tightness test		☐
(4) Evacuation		☐
(5) Refrigerant charge		☐
(6) Drain condition		☐
3-3. Electrical wiring	**Notes**	**Checked**
(1) Power supply voltage		☐
(2) Size of circuit breakers		☐
(3) Wiring (Power - O/U)		☐
(4) Wiring between I/U and O/U		☐

(Reference)

		Connected I/U	FDC71VNP	FDC90VNP
Max. Piping length		I/U: FDT,FDEN,FDU,FDUM	30m	30m
		I/U: SRK	30m	N/A
		I/U: FDF	23m	23m
Elevation differnece between I/U and O/U	I/U is above O/U	ALL	Max. 20m	Max. 20m
	O/U is above I/U			

	Connected I/U	FDC71VNP	FDC90VNP
Factory refrigerant charge amount	-	1.6kg	2.1kg
Piping length without additional charge	I/U: FDT,FDEN,FDU,FDUM	15m	15m
	I/U: SRK	15m	N/A
	I/U: FDF	8m	8m
Additional refrigerant charge amount for piping (kg/m)	ALL	0.02 [kg/m]	0.025 [kg/m]

Additional refrigerant charge amount calculation

[ ][kg] = ([ ][m] - 15 [m]) x [ ][kg/m]

※1: Piping length ※2: Select for each model

4. Operation data

4-1. Error/Protection ✓: Good, △: Required detail investigation

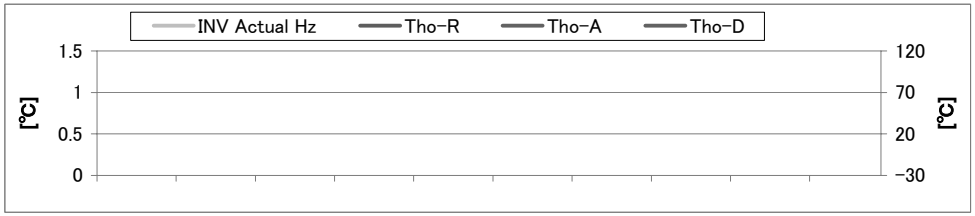
Item	Notes	Result
(1) Error counter	No error counter was accumulated	
(2) Protection control	Which protection control was activated?	

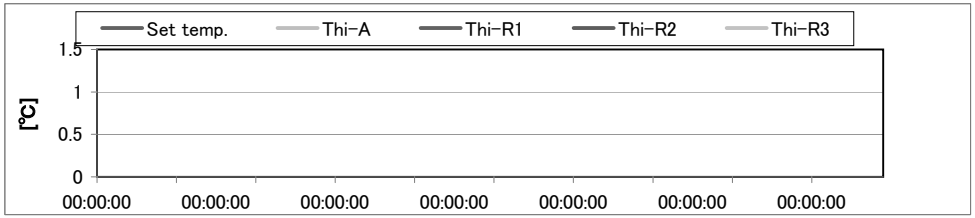
4-2. Operation data (No test run switch)

Item	Cooling	Heating	Item	Cooling	Heating
Set/Target temp.(TS)	℃	℃	Ambient temp.(Tho-A)	℃	℃
Supply Air temp.(Thi-o)	℃	℃	Room temp.(Thi-A)	℃	℃
Discharge temp.(Tho-D)	℃	℃	I/U Heat exch.(Thi-R1)	℃	℃
O/U Heat exch.(Tho-R1)	℃	℃	I/U Heat exch.(Thi-R2)	℃	℃
Compressor(CM)	Hz	Hz	I/U Heat exch.(Thi-R3)	℃	℃
Current (CT)	A	A	EEV opening(EEV)	Pulse	Pulse
O/U fan speed(FMo)	rpm	rpm	I/U Fan speed		

4-3. Operation data by Mente PC ✓: Good, △: Required detail investigation

[Cooling]Check item	Criteria	[Heating]check item	Criteria
(1) Thi-A - TS	< 3 deg	(1) TS - Thi-A	< 3 deg
(2)Thi-A - Thi-O	> 10 deg	(2)Thi-O - Thi-A	> 10 deg
(3) Thi-A - Thi-R1	> 5 deg	(3)Tho-A - Tho-R1	> 5 deg
(4) Tho-R1 - Tho-A	< 30 deg	(4)Thi-R1 - Thi-A	< 30 deg
(5) TdSH(Target - Actual)	< ±3 deg	(5) TdSH(Target - Actual)	< ±3 deg
(6) EEV opening	< 470 Pulse	(6) EEV opening	< 470 Pulse
(7) CM	< 120 Hz	(7) CM	< 120 Hz
(8) O/U fan	> 0 rpm	(8) O/U fan	> 0 rpm





[Remark]
Operation data should be collected after 1 hour or more from a system start up and becoming a stable condition.

[Caution] Items not stipulated in this check sheet, please refer the technical manual 13-PAC-DB-194 and 13-PAC-SM-195.

STANDARD INVERTER PACKAGED AIR-CONDITIONERS

MITSUBISHI HEAVY INDUSTRIES

MITSUBISHI HEAVY INDUSTRIES THERMAL SYSTEMS, LTD.
16-5 Konan 2-chome, Minato-ku, Tokyo, 108-8215, Japan
http://www.mhi-mth.co.jp/